GEORGE R.

EORGE, by the Grace of God, King of Great Britain, France and Ireland, Defender of the Faith, &c. To all to whom these Presents shall come, Greeting. Whereas Our Trusty and Well-beloved Samuel Buckley, Citizen and Stationer of Our City of Lon-

don, has humbly represented unto Us, that he is now printing a Book written by Our Trusty and Well-beloved Humphrey Bland, Esq; Lieutenant-Colonel of Our own Regiment of Horse, Intitled, A Treatise of Military Discipline; in which is laid down and explain'd the Duty of the Officer and Soldier, thro' the several Branches of the Service: And whereas the faid Samuel Buckley has informed Us, that he has been at a great Expence in carrying on the faid Work, and that the fole Right and Title of the Copy of the faid Book is vested in the faid Samuel Buckley; he has therefore humbly befought Us to grant him Our Royal Privilege and License for the fole Printing and Publishing thereof, for the Term of Fourteen Years: We, being willing to give Encouragement to fo ufeful a Work, are pleased to condescend to his Request, and do therefore hereby, fo far as may be agreeable to the Statute in that Behalf made and provided, grant unto the faid Samuel Buckley our Royal License for the sole Printing and Publishing the faid Book, for and during the Term of Fourteen Years, to be computed from the Day of the Date hereof; ftrictly prohibiting all Our Subjects within Our Kingdoms and Dominions to reprint or abridge the same, either in the like or in any other Volume or Volumes whatfoever; or to import, buy, yend, utter or distribute any Copies of the same, or any Part thereof, reprinted beyond the Seas, within the said Term of Fourteen Years, without the Confent and Approbation of the faid Samuel Buckley, his Heirs, Executors, and Affigns, by Writing under his or their Hands and Seals first had and obtained, as they and every of them offending herein will anfwer the contrary at their Perils. Whereof the Master, Wardens, and Company of Stationers of Our City of London, Commissioners and other Officers of Our Customs, and all other Our Officers and Ministers whom it may concern, are to take Notice, that due Obedience be given to Our Plean fure herein fignified. Given at Our Court at St. James's the twenty-fourth Day of April 1727, in the Thirteenth Year of Our Reign.

By His Majesty's Command,

HOLLES NEWCASTLE.

TREATISE

OF

Military Discipline;

In which is Laid down and Explained

The Duty of the Officer and Soldier,

Thro' the several Branches of the SERVICE.

By HUMPHREY BLAND, Elq;

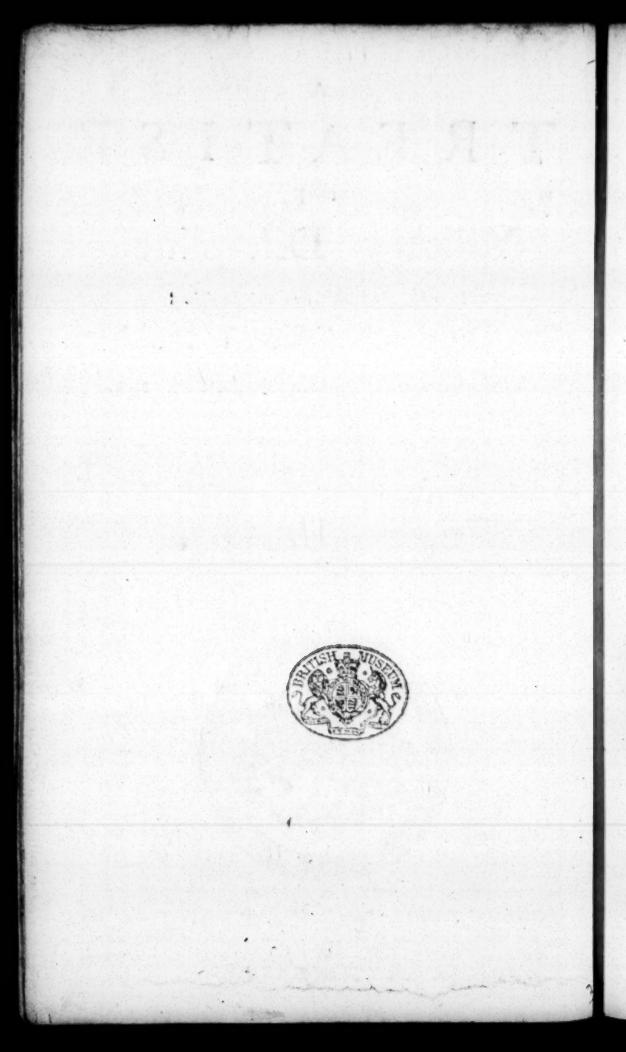
Lieutenant-Colonel of His MAJESTY'S
Own Regiment of Horse.

The THIRD EDITION.

In omni Prælio non tam Multitudo & Virtus indocta, quam Ars & Exercitium solent præstare Victoriam. Vegetius, Lib. 1.



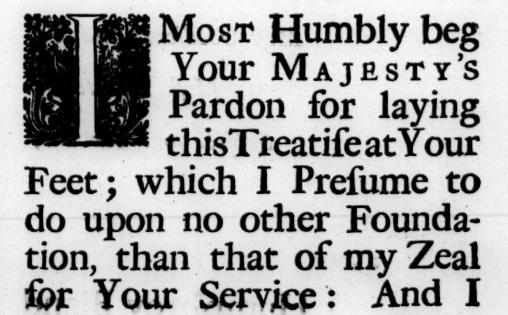
LONDON, Printed for Sam. Buckley; and Sold by James, John and Paul Knapton, in Ludgate-Street; Dan. Midwinter, in St. Paul's Church-yard; and John Osborn and Tho. Longman in Pater-Nofter-Row. MDCC XXXIV.



TO THE

KING.

SIR,



hope,

DEDICATION.

hope, from Your Majesty's known Goodness, that You will be pleased to excuse its Errors, since the only Motive I had for Writing it, was the Desire I have every way to approve my self,

May it please Your Most Sacred Majesty,

Your Majesty's Most Humble,

Most Obedient, and

Most Devoted

Subject and Servant,

Humphrey Bland.



ROM the great Reputation of the British Arms, Men would be apt to Imagine, that several Treatises, of the Art of

War, were to be met with in our Language; but when they come to enquire, they will be strangely surprized to find nothing of this Kind of our Native Growth, that I know of, except what has been left by the Earl of Orrery, who wrote fifty Years ago: And tho his Writings might have been very Instructive at that Time, yet so many Improvements have been since made, (several Instances of which I could easily produce, were there an Occasion) that they can be but of very little use, at present, to young Officers, for whose Sake, thiesly, this Book is Published.

A 4

As

As the Nation has abounded with Officers, whose Services leave no Doubt of their Abilities to perform a Work of this Nature, it must be supposed that their Indolence, or their imagining no Want of it, was the Reason that nothing of this Kind bas bitherto appeared: But considering how few old Officers remain, and that they are diminishing every Day, I hope I shall not be censured for having ventured to commit to Writing the little Knowledge I bave acquired in Military Matters, for the Instruction of those who are yet to learn; who, in a little time longer, if they bave no Opportunity of going Abroad, and wanting the Example of old Officers to Guide them, may not think it useless to bave Recourse to this Account of their Duty, however imperfect it may be.

I am well aware how little Thanks some People may think I deserve for this Attempt; and am very sensible that Standing Armies, and consequently the Modelling of them, are little relished in time of Peace in this Kingdom: and, I must own, as much a Soldier as I am, not to be desired,

red, if we can preserve our King, our Trade, (and, I had almost said, our Givil Government) without them: But such is the State of the World at present, that, I doubt, it will be in vain to flatter ourselves with the Hopes of opposing our Militia (whatever Hearts they may have in their Bellies) to Troops who have the Advantage of Discipline on their Side: Neither are our Treaties, nor Alliances (as appears by Proofs too recent) Sufficient without the Ratio Ultima: And, I believe, it is a true Observation, that, First or Last, Force has been the Conclusive Argument of most Treaties, and those have been found the best, which have been supported by the best Troops.

I have, throughout my Book, taken every Occasion to inculcate the Necessity of Legal Military Subordination. It has been the Practice of all Nations, Ancient and Modern, even where the People have been bleffed with the highest Liberty, never to admit of a Military Independance upon their Military Superiors: I look upon it as the Band which ties the Whole together, and without

without it all our Rules and Forms to be of no Use. Perhaps it is the great Distin-Etion between Regular Troops and Militia, and the Cause why the Former have always had the Advantage over the Latter.

I know it will be objected, that the better our Troops are, the more dangerous they may be; and I confess the Objection to be of so great Weight, that it fits not me to enter into the Question: All that I am pleading for, is, that as long as it shall be thought necessary to keep up a Body of Regular Troops, those Troops may be put upon such a Foot as may answer the End, and the sole End, which is expected from them by the Publick. Give me leave to add, to the Honour of the Officers, that more Instances than One might be given, when, instead of being those servile Tools, (which is so much apprehended) of bringing their Country into Slavery, they have Behaved themselves with a Zeal for its Liberty, equal, I think, with the best Englishman; if exposing themselves and Families to the Hazard of Starving, may be allowed to be an Instance of it.

3 AU71

CON-



CHAP. I.

Directions for the Forming of Battalions, Posting of Officers, &c.

ARTICLE I.

Irections to the Officers and Soldiers about Parading	of
Companies. Page	e I
About the Sizing of Men, and Method of doing it.	2
In what Manner the Companies are to march to the Gene Parade.	oid.
How the Companies are to Draw up in Battalion, with a P	-
of the same.	2
The old Way of Compleating of Files rejected, and a new i	Me-
thod proposed.	bid.
Directions for the Drawing up of the Company of Granadiers.	4
Directions for the Drawing up of the Company of Granadiers. ARTICLE II. How the Officers take their Posts in Battali	ion.
How the Serjeants, Hautboys and Drummers are to be posted. How the Colonel and Lieutenant-Colonel are to post themsel- ib	ves.
No Officer to be absent without Leave when the Batta	
draws out.	oid.
ARTICLE III. Method of sending for the Colours.	6
Compliment paid to the Colours.	oid.
	m-
panies.	8
	oid.
The Battalion told off into Divisions, and the Officers appoin	ted
to them.	9
ARTICLE IV. Directions for the Opening of Files, w	ith
proper Rules for the doing of it both for the Officers and P	ri-
Distances of Ranks and Files.	10
	the
ARTICLE V. How the Officers are to take their Posts in Rear by Beat of Drum.	14
는 사람들은 사람들이 보면 생각이 있다면 보다 되었다면 한다면 보다 되었다면 보다 되었다면 보다 되었다면 보다는 사람들이 되었다면 보다 되었다면 보다 되었다면 보다 되었다면 보다 보다 되었다면 보다	ew

How they are to return to the Front by Beat of Drum. P. How it is to be performed by Word of Command.	age 15
ARTICLE VI. Directions for the Closing of Files.	ibid.
Manner of dismissing of the Battalion after Exercise.	17
How the Officers are to March the Companies with Arms.	Club'd ibid.
The Major and Adjutant to exercise the Regiment on back.	Horse-
Other Officers, when order'd, to exercise it on Foot.	ibid.
Directions to those who exercise the Regiment.	18
Instructions for delivering of the Words of Command.	ibid.
Position of a Soldier under Arms.	ibid.

CHAP. II.

Of	the	Wo	rds	of	Com	man	ıd	of	the	Manual	Exercise
					with						19

CHAP. III.

Manual	Exercise	of	the	Granadiers,	with	an	Expla-
nati							34

CHAP. IV.

Evolutions	of	the	Foot	, with	an	Explanation,	and
Gener	al	Rules	for	Wheeling	g.		41

CHAP. V.

Of Passing in Review.

ARTICLE	I. The Companies	to be inspected	before the Re-
ARTICLE fary to be d	II. When the Reg	rat comes to rev	what is necef-
Compliment to	be faid the Genera	who Reviews.	ibid.
Directions for	the Facing of the	Regiment.	Officers

Officers to remain in the Front, when the General passes along the Rear. Page 58
ARTICLE III. After the Regiment has been review'd Stand- ing, what further Ceremonies are commonly perform'd. ibid.
ARTICLE IV. How the Colonel and Lieutenant-Colonel are to post themselves during the Exercise.
The Major to exercise the Regiment on Horseback though he should command it. ibid.
When a Captain commands the Regiment, how he is to proceed.
How the Hauthoys, Drummers and Serjeants on the Flanks are to post themselves during the Exercise. ibid.
Officer who exercises not to find fault before the General. 60
ARTICLE V. After the Exercise, how they are to march by the General. ibid:
What Grand and Sub-Divisions are. How they are to march by Grand and Sub-Divisions. 61
Manner of posting the Officers to them. ibid.
Directions about Saluting. ibid.
How they are to pass by in Companies. When they have pass'd by the General, to draw up on their former Ground. 63
ARTICLE VI. When the Regiment marches off from the
Left, how the Colonel and Lieutenant-Colonel are to post themselves. ibid.

CHAP. VI.

Consisting of Directions for the different Firings of the Foot.

ARTICLE I. How the Battalion is to be Form'd to go the the Firing.	0
Bayonete may be fird on not at common Francis	56
Telling off the Platoons, and what Number of Files they confift of.	n-d.
Officers to command the Platoons, and Manner of Postin	A
The rest of the Officers fall in the Rear, and Reason subv. ibi	d
The rest of the Officers fall in the Rear, and Reason why. ibit Platoons divided into several Firings, and Number each First commonly consists of.	ng 67
Platoons of each placed in different Parts of the Battalion, at Reasons for it.	nd id.

ARTICLE II. Manner of dividing the Platoons in different Parts of the Battalion. Page 68
Three Plans (bewing bow it is generally done. 60.75 77
Words of Command of the Platoon Exercise, with an Explana-
Necessary Care in the making up of the Cartridges
Necessary Care in the making up of the Cartridges. 73 Inconveniencies that may attend their not being ramm'd down. ibid.
The Major to be exact in the telling off the Platoons, and the Officers to be thoroughly informed of their Firing and Number.
Method to try if they know it, to prevent Mistakes in the Execution.
The Whole to be inform'd in what Manner they are to Fire. ibid.
Whether Standing, Advancing or Retiring, or all three; and if
the Platoons of each Firing are to Fire in their Order (and what is meant by their Order) or together. ibid.
If to proceed by Beat of Drum, what Beatings the Major will use. ibid.
Common Beatings used, and what is generally perform'd at each.
ARTICLE III. Directions to Fire Standing, which is per-
Directions to the Officers who command the Platoons in giving
How to go thro' the Firings Advancing, and to vary it from the other, in which the Major is to give the Words of Com-
Directions to Fire Retiring, and to finish with the Whole 78
ARTICLE IV. Method of going thro' the Firings without
Danger which may attend it, particularly in Retiring.
For what Number of Men the Plans are calculated. 81
ARTICLE V. Directions for the Firing by Ranks, with Re-
ARTICLE VI. Parapet Firing, on what Occasion used, with the Methods of performing it.
ARTICLE VII. Street-Firing, when used, and how perform'd at Exercise.
ARTICLE VIII. Running-Fire, or Feu de joye, bow per-
form'd in Camp and Garison. 87

CHAP. VII.

Containing Directions bow a Battalion of Foot is to Defend it self when Attack'd by Horse.

ARTICLE I. Directions for their Telling off, that they act either in Battalion or in the Square. Page	
	ibid.
Apprehensions from Horse, proceed from the Fost not know	
their own Strength.	91
A Situation suppos'd, where they can be only attack'd in F	ibid.
Directions for the Management of their Fire in that Situa	ibid.
In this Case, the Front Rank to Fire with the rest, and Refor it.	92
How to judge of real or feint Attacks by the Disposition of	f the ibid.
Proposal to Advance small Platoons to disappoint their	Feint ibid.
그 마음을 가지 않는데 그렇게 하는데 되는데 되었다. 그는 그 그는 그들은 그들은 그들은 그들은 그들은 그들은 그를 가지 않는데 그를 가지 않는데 그를 가지 않는데 그를 하는데 그를 하는데 그를 다 그를 다 살아 있다.	their
Platoons of the First Firing to make ready when those Advido, and when to give their Fire.	anced 94
A Situation suppos'd where one Flank is expos'd.	ibid.
Manner of securing that Flank.	ibid.
ARTICLE II. Directions for the Forming of the Square	from
Three deep, according to the Dutch Manner. Two Plans shewing how it is done.	95
Directions for the reducing of the Square into Battalion.	99
ARTICLE III. Directions for the forming of the Squa	re by
four Grand Divisions, commonly practised by the En	ginn,
with a Plan of the same.	101
How it is reduced into Battalion.	104
Remarks on the different Ways of Forming the Square.	105
ARTICLE IV. Directions for Firing and Marching in Square.	ibid.
The Platoons of each Face divided into different Firings.	106
Figures on the Inside shew what Firings they belong to,	ibid.
How they are to Fire in their Order.	107
How they are to Face in Marching towards the different Po	
	ibid.
	Hoest

How they are to Fire marching towards each Front. Page 108
To end with the Fire of the whole Square. 113

CHAP. VIII.

General Rules for the Marching of a Battalion, or a Detachment of Men, where there is a Possibility of meeting with the Enemy.

ARTICLE I. An Officer's Character hardly retrievable	
	14
	oid.
No Military Man above the Knowledge of the minutest Part the Service.	t of
Confirm'd by the Practice of the Germans, and the late Gle	ri-
ARTICLE II. Method propos'd to march by Platoons inft	ead 116
Van and Rear-Guards, what Numbers they generally confift	of.
General Instructions to the Van and Rear-Guards, and Adv.	
	18
ARTICLE III. Directions for the Marching of the Regime	nt,
	20
	oid.
	oid.
	21
	id.
Reflections on the Said Miscarriage, by way of Precaution	
	22
ARTICLE IV. In inclosed Countries, to have small Part	
on the Flanks: Design and Use of them.	23
	JQ.
How to be relieved, with Directions to those who are fent. I	24
How to be relieved, with Directions to those who are sent. I Young Officers apt to exceed their Orders, from a mistal Zeal.	ken id.
Reflections on the Consequences of that, and the contrary Bell	

When

08

a of

if 14, ce, id. of 15, ri-d. ad 16, 17, 18

it,

id.

d.

to

.2 ies

3 m. d. 24 en d. a-d.

n

When the Van-Guard discovers any Troops, necessary Precautions to be taken. Page 125
Tolon Sions to the Officers who hall be commanded from the
Instructions to the Officers who shall be commanded from the Body to attack a Partizan Party, for fear of being drawn into an Ambuscade. ibid.
Necessary Precautions of the Commanding Officer, if his March is obstructed.
His Orders must determine him in these Cases. 126
ARTICLE V. Necessary Precautions, and Disposition of the
Regiment, in Marching through an Open or Champain
When proper to March in four Grand-Divisions, and Method of
doing it upon the March.
Directions to form the Square from Grand-Divisions on the March.
Necessary Precautions on the Appearance of the Enemy's Horse, and not to form the Square, but march in Grand-Divisions, 'till there's a Necessity for it.
'till there's a Necessity for it. 129
When in Danger, not to be follicitous about their Baggage.
Van and Rear-Guards drawn in, and to be divided into the Platoons. ibid.
If the Enemy Retires, or keeps at a Distance, to pursue their March.
Directions for reducing the Square into Grand-Divisions. 130

CHAP. IX.

General Rules for Battalions of Foot, when they Engage in the Line.

ARTICLE I. Necessary Inspection into the Arms and Ammunition the Day before the Action. 132 Regiments to be as strong as possible when they go on Service. ibid.
To be Told off into Platoons, and the Officers Divided to them. ibid.
Inspection of those Officers, and Reason why it is Necessary.
A profound Silence in marching up to, and during the Action with the Enemy. 1 ibid. The

The Commanding Officer to give the Words of Command for all Movements. Page 133
Drummers to regulate their Beatings according to the said Words of Command. ibid.
ARTICLE II. The Line to move flow in Marching up to the Enemy.
The Battalions to march up close before they Fire, and then fall upon the Enemy with their Bayonets, with the Advantage which may arise from it.
But if deferr'd how Dangerous.
ARTICLE III. When the Enemy gives way, the Soldiers not to break in the Pursuit of them. ibid.
No Battalion to Advance before the Line in Pursuit of the Enemy.
Granadiers to Advance and Fire on them to keep up their Ter- ror. 135
Directions to the said Granadiers in Advancing. ibid.
Danger in Battalions Advancing before the Line. ibid.
ARTICLE IV. An Article of War quoted against the Sol-
diers leaving their Ranks to Plunder and Pillage, before the
Confequences on its not being tunffuelly Obov?
Consequences on its not being punctually Obey'd. Two Instances related, wherein it appear'd, by way of Precaution to others. ibid.
1 도입시에 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10
ARTICLE V. Field-Officers to observe what Regiments they are to sustain, or who sustains them.
They are to remark the Cloathing and Colours of their own Troops, that they may distinguish them from the Enemy. ibid.
ARTICLE VI. When the Enemy have Men posted in the Front of their Line, to annoy yours in Marching up, the Gra-
nadiers should be order'd to dislodge them. ibid.
ARTICLE VII. When a Battalion is order'd to retire, what Precautions are Necessary for the Performing of it, with the
Reasons why they may be order'd.
When the greatest Part of the Line Retires, the rest to do the same. ibid.
The Battalions in the Line to act in concert with one another. ibid.
ARTICLE VIII. When the first Line gives way, bow they
are to retire.
How the Officers are to act on this Occasion. ibid.

0 0 21 2 2 21 2 01
Danger which the Second Line runs of being broke by the First.
Officers of the First Time to we their utmost Diligence to and
Officers of the First Line to use their utmost Diligence to prevent it.
ARTICLE IX. An Expedient offer'd, in order to prevent it.
141
ARTICLE X. Directions to the second Line, on the First giving way.
giving way.
If follow'd, how easy to repulse the Enemy. Danger which the Men of the second Line apprehend, on their
Danger which the Men of the Jecona Line apprehena, on their
seeing those of the First give way, more Imaginary than Real. ibid.
Reasons shewing them to be so, in order to remove them. 143 The second Line's moving on briskly, will, in some measure, re-
move them.
ARTICLE XI. A Remark, that the Private Men form
ARTICLE XI. A Remark, that the Private Men form their Notion of the Danger from the Appearance of their Officers.
To prequent had Impressions, the Officers should appear Serene
To prevent bad Impressions, the Officers should appear Serene and Chearful.
Which will have a good Effect, if they have an Opinion of their Military Capacity.
Young or Unexperienced Officers can't influence them in the same Manner.
ARTICLE XII. When a Battalion in the Line is press'd for
Room, what they are to do. ibid.
ARTICLE XIII. If attack'd in the Line, or in Brigade, by
Horse, how they are to act.
ARTICLE XIV. The alternate Firing, practifed by the Dutch described.
Advantage and Disadvantage which may attend it. 146
The Dutch, by the Excellency of their Discipline, have sur- mounted the Danger. ibid.
Common Notion, that the Sang Froid of the Dutch is owing
Advanced only to excuse our own Neglect of Discipline. ibid.
The French look upon us in the same Light, the they have had
reason to be convinced of the contrary. ibid
Foreigners have a Notion that we can't be brought into Disci-
pline. ibid
Our Neglect of it has produced that Notion. ibid

11 3dd. ed. 11 ed. - 51.1. - e61. - 1. y8 m. . 1. be - d. the 9bet. r.d. ey. od.

er

CHAP. X.

Duty of the Infantry in Garison.

ARTICLE I. Upon marching to Garison the Quarter-Master
to be sent before. Page 148
Directions to him on his taking of Quarters. ibid.
ARTICLE II. When the Caserns or Barracks can't contain
the Troops, Manner of Quartering of them on the Inhabi-
tants, which is call'd Cantoning. 149
ARTICLE III. Directions to the Quarter-Master about
meeting the Regiment, and what is proper to be done be- fore they enter the Town. ibid.
fore they enter the Town. ibid.
ARTICLE IV. Ceremony at the Barrier before they enter,
and how conducted to the Parade. 150
When Drawn up on the Parade, the Colonel to wait on the
Governor. 151
Town-Major to read the general Orders of the Garison to the
Regiment. 1DIG.
Then to conduct them to their Regimental Parade, Alarum-
Posts and Quarters, where they are dismised.

CHAP. XI.

Usual Guards in a Garison, and Manner of Forming the Parade.

ARTICLE I. How the Guards are compos'd.	153
	in Garison
	ibid.
'Method commonly observ'd in it.	ibid.
Method commonly observed in it. Number each Guard generally consists of.	ibid.
The Citadel, generally a Garison of its own.	ibid.
The Guards Mount in the Morning.	154
ARTICLE II. Directions about viewing the Men	who mount
the Guard.	ibid.
ARTICLE III. Directions for the Beating of the	be Affembly
or Troop.	155.

How

ter

48 oid. ain bi49 out beoid. er, 50 the

51 the id. m-52

g

53 (on

id. id.

id.

id.
54

bly

55.

ישים

The Detechments and to draw up on the Donale Don	
How the Detachments are to draw up on the Parade. Page	e 155
ARTICLE IV. Manner of forming the Guards, and	olting
the Serjeants to them.	156
Officers to draw for their Guards, and their Names to	be en-
ter d.	ibid.
Manner of Drawing up the Reserve and Horse Guards.	157
Manner of Drawing up the Reserve and Horse Guards. When the Guards are to Exercise together, how perf	form'd.
	ibid.
How the Guards are to march off.	
How the Guards are to march off. Horse-Guard to march last. Reason supposed for that C	ultom.
	158
Adjutants to attend the Town-Major 'till dismis'd.	ibid.
Adjutants to attend the Town-Major 'till dismis'd. Orderly Serjeants and Corporals to attend their Adju	tants
orally conjumes on Francisco and their Estign	ibid.
French Governors oblig'd to see the Guards March off.	ibid.
Dutch Governors not, but often do.	ibid.
Garisons Remote from the Enemy, the Orders deliver'd	ibid
Merning.	ibid.
In Frontiers, not 'till the Gates are shut.	159
Upon the Arrival of a Person entitled to a Guard, the	
Regiment in Garison is to furnish it.	ibid.
ARTICLE V. Directions for the Mounting and Diffi	
ing of Guards.	ibid.
Corporals of Guards to inspect into the Things committed	to the
Charge of their Sentries.	160
How they are to proceed when any of those Things are da	mag'd
or loft.	ibid.
ARTICLE VI. Manner of relieving Sentries.	162
Directions how Sentries are to behave on their Posts.	ibid.

CHAP. XII.

Instructions to the Officers on Guard 'till they are Relieved.

ARTICLE I. The Officers to keep their Guards, and how they may give their Men leave. 166 Officers on the Port-Guards to examine all Strangers, and how they are to proceed with suspected Persons. ibid.

ARTI-

ARTICLE II. Officers of the Port Guards to fend their Re- ports to the Captain of the Main-Guard, with the Time and Manner of doing it. Page 167
Directions to the Captain of the Main-Guard, about entering of the several Reports, and Time of delivering them to the Go- vernor.
Reserve-Guard, only under the Direction of the Governor.
ARTICLE III. Time the Draw-Bridges are kept up, and
Port-Guards to be under Arms, when Troops enter the Town, Reasons for it,
Upon a Fire, the Port-Guards to be under Arms, and the Gates shut.
Reason for it. The same Precaution when a Riot happens near a Port-Guard.
170
'Main-Guard to quell those in the middle of the Town. ibid. In Frontier Garisons the Guards to be doubled on Market-days. Reasons for it. ibid.
ARTICLE IV. Port-Guards to send for the Keys at Sun- set, and the Drummers to beat the Retreat on the Ram- parts.
The Gates to be then closed, and the Wickets only left open. ibid.
No Soldier to have Port-Liberty then. ibid.
The Keys brought to the Main-Guard, and deliver'd to the
Port-Guards, how they receive the Keys, and Ceremony of shutting the Gates.
How Guards are to be posted in the Out-works during the Night.
When they are numerous, a Method propos'd for the doing of it.
When the Gates are lock'd, how the Keys are to be return'd. ibid.
Manner of delivering of the Night-Orders. 172
Rounds. Captain of the Main-Guard to distribute the Tickets for the ibid.
Additional visiting Rounds, on what Occasions appointed. ibid.
Manner of doing it, and by whom. ibid.
(BENEFIT MENTER) [18] (BENEFIT MENTER)
All Soldiers to retire to their Quarters at Tat-too. ibid.

Burghers to carry Lights with them, when they go out aft	er
Tat-too. Page 17	13
Penalty if they don't. ibi	d.
ARTICLE V. Patrols to go every Hour after Tat-too, as	nd
Duty of the Patrols.	d.
Proper Districts to be assign'd for the Patrols of each Guar	
ibi	d.
What Places are most proper for the Horse to patrol in. 19	74
Serjeants of the Patrol make a Report to their Officers. ibi	
ARTICLE VI. Ordinary and Extraordinary Rounds. 19	75
Town-Major's Round to go first, with the Design of it. ibi	
Manner of going and receiving of Rounds. ibi	
Reason for the said Ceremonies, to shew the Necessity of keepi	
Town-Major to make a Report to the Governor after his Roun	1
	-
In France the Officers give the Parole to the Town-Major.	78
	79
	id.
When the Rounds or Sentries discover any Men from the Ran	
parts, what they are to do.	80
How the Officers, who command the Guards, are to act on fu	
	81
The Design and Duty of Rounds.	
ARTICLE VII. At Reveille the Keys to be carried to t	he
Main-Guard, and deliver'd to the Serjeants from the Por	ts.
	82
Patrols of Horse to be sent with the Keys. ib	id.
Precaution in letting the Patrols of Horse out of the Gates.	
ibi	d.
	id.
When the Patrols return, the Gates to be opened, and the Ke	ys
	83
Port-Guards to remain under Arms while the Horse are patr	
ling.	

of 7 of od. r. 8 dd. n. 9 bed. id. od. s.d. n.d. d. bed. of 1 bed. dd. 2 bed. dd. 3d.

14



CHAP. XIII.

Of Detachments, visiting the Soldiers Quarters and the Hospital.

ARTICLE I. Upon what Occasion Detachments are order'd.
Page 184
A separate Duty from the Town-Guards. ibid.
Manner of appointing Officers and Serjeants for those Com-
mands. ibid.
Every Battalion to furnish an equal Proportion. ibid.
Every Battalion to furnish an equal Proportion. ibid. When Officers are detach'd, their ordinary Complement of Men, 185
Contrary to the Rules of War to fend less than 19 Men. ibid.
ARTICLE II. Not to pass for a Duty unless they march be-
yond the Barrier. ibid.
How an Officer is to mount Guard when he returns from a Party.
Less than an Officer and 25 Men should not be detach'd but on
Necessity. ibid.
All Detachments to have Passports from the Governor. ibid.
All Detachments to have Passports from the Governor. ibid. Consequence if they have not, or consist of less than 19 Men.
1D1G.
Reason, suppos'd, for this Custom, and how far it should be ad- ber'd to. ibid.
How an Officer on Party is to act, when he fends a Detachment from him.
All Parties to return at the Time limited, unless prevented by
the Enemy. ibid.
ARTICLE III. Orderly Serjeants and Corporals, their Duty. ibid.
The Soldiers divided into Messes, and manner of doing it. 189
Necessary to see their Victuals dress'd. Reason for it. Consequence if neglected.
Directions about visiting the Soldiers Quarters. 190
ARTICLE IV. Directions about visiting the sick Soldiers.
Incumbent on the Captains to affift their own Men, and not
let them remain too long in the Hospital. ibid.
Where there is no Hospital, an Infirmary to be appointed. 191

CHAP. XIV.

Command of the Governor. Compliment due to him, and the other Officers, from the Troops in Garison.

ARTICLE I. The Governor has the Chief Command Troops in his Garison, the Officers of a Superior Rank	Should
	ge 192
Who the Command falls to in the Absence of the Go &c.	vernor, ibid.
His Power over the Civil, determin'd by the Constitution	and the same of th
Country.	193
That over the Military much more extensive.	194
Officers and Soldiers not to lie out of the Garison with	
Leave.	ibid.
General Method of granting his Leave of Absence.	ibid.
His Power not limited in this, Consequences if it was.	195
How Officers and Soldiers are to apply for leave of Absence	
ARTICLE II. Soldiers who have Leave must have P	
Sign'd by the Governor.	196
Those who go without, to be taken up and try'd as De	
Office and the Boat County to an amine all Saldian and	ibid.
Officers on the Port-Guards to examine all Soldiers who en	ibid.
Officers on Party to examine all Soldiers they meet.	ibid.
Regiments can't hold Courts-Martial without Leave for	
Governor.	ibid.
Non abbeen under Anne but by the Caid Teams and ment	من آد اسما
Nor appear under Arms but by the Said Leave, and ment	108 4 18
Orders.	197
Reason, suppos d, for this Custom.	ibid.
ARTICLE III. On an Alarm, all the Troops to R. their Alarm-Posts.	19 8
How the Colours are to be conducted there.	ibid.
	4.0
On what Occasions the Troops may be order'd to their Posts.	ibid.
When Assembled, none can Dismiss them but the Ge	vermor.
	ibid.
ARTICLE IV. Compliment paid the Governor	by the
Guards,	199

?.

입상을 했다면 하는 사람들이 하는 것이 하는 하는 사람이 있다. 하는 것이 하는 것이 없는 것이 없는 것이 없는 것이 없다면 하다.
Compliment due to General Officers and others, in Camp and Garison. Page 199
Compliment paid to a Marshal of France in the French Gari- fons.
His Authority Superior to all Governors, even in their own Garisons.
A Copy of the late Duke of Marlborough's Commission of Captain-General.
Word from the Governor of the Town.
Governor of a Citadel, his Power over his own Garison. ibid.
Not to suffer above one Third of his Garison to go out at a time
ibid
Governors of Towns and Citadels in France, their Command
Common to find it so there, and Reason alledged for it. ibid
ARTICLE VI. Town-Major and his Adjutants to View the
Fortifications, &c. frequently. ibid
Inhabitants to give in the Names of those who lodge with them
&c. ibid
A Table for the several Duties in a Garison. 20

CHAP. XV.

Duty of the Infantry in Camp.

Of Guards Ordinary.

ARTICLE I. What is generally meant by Camp Duty. 2	06
Guards Ordinary, what they are, and Numbers they general confift of.	elly oid.
ARTICLE II. Method of Mounting and Dismounting of	the
	07
ARTICLE III. Directions for the Parading the Men of	the
ARTICLE IV. How the Guards are form'd on the Gra	and
	011-
Time of Drawing out, with the Captain's Directions to Men.	the 14 Ien

Men of the Picquet not to be changed, and Reasons why. Page 214 How far the Picquet is to March when it passes for a Duty.
Council Officers of the Day house the immediate Comment of it
General Officers of the Day have the immediate Command of it.
Dulan for the Marching of the Picquet to be Cout to the Line
Order for the Marching of the Picquet, to be fent to the Lieu-
tenant-General of the Day. ibid.
According to the Number of Regiments, Field-Officers are ap-
pointed for the Picquet. 216
Infantry divided into Wings for the Ease of appointing them.
ibid.
When the Army is large, each Wing furnishes its own Field-
Officers.
Manner of appointing them to their several Commands. ibid.
A Plan of a Body of Foot form'd into two Lines, divided into
Wings and Brigades, to shew how the Field-Officers are ap- pointed for the Picquet.
Colonels of the Picquet go the Grand Round, the other Field-
Officers go theirs, as they shall direct, and when to make
their Reports. 218
General Officers of the Day always received as Grand Rounds.
ibid.
None but the Lieutenant-General of the Day can draw out the
Picquet by Night ibid
Upon an Alarm, a Method propos'd of joining the Picquet. 219
Upon an Alarm, a Method propos'd of joining the Picquet. 219 ARTICLE VI. In what the German and French Picquets
differ from ours.
Method of the Foot Picquet of the Germans, with Reflections on
1E. 1DId.
Method of their Horse Picquet, preferable to that of the Foot.
222
Reason why, and how it may be improved. 223
When follow'd, the necessary Precautions which should be taken.
ibid.
Method of the Foot Picquet of the French. 226

and
199
ari201
rwn
bid.
capbid.
ime.
bid.
and
bid.
and
bid.
and
bid.
and
bid.
and

of elly id. the of the and 12 m-

14 len



CHAP. XVI.

Guards Ordinary of the Cavalry, and Guards Extraordinary of the Foot.

ARTICLE I. Guards Ordinary, Standard-Guard, Number
they consist of. Page 22
Remarks on their Mounting in Boots. 22
ARTICLE II. Grand-Guard, Number unfix'd, divided int
Captains Commands. How pested. ibid
Design and Duty of the Grand-Guard. 22
Manner of Relieving it. 23
Day and Night Posts of the Grand-Guard, and Reason why
ibio
To whom the posting of the Grand-Guards belong. ibid
In Proportion to the Number of the Grand-Guard, Field-Offe
cers are appointed.
Directions to the Officer who Commands it, when the Enem approaches.
To whom he is to make his Report when Reliev'd. 23
ARTICLE III. Guards Extraordinary of the Foot, on wha
Occasions order'd. ibid
What is meant by Out-Posts, and Reason for them, ibid
Usual time of Relieving Out-Posts. ibid
Adjutants to fee the Men who Mount, Supplied with Bread an
Pay. ibid
Out-Posts, necessary Precautions for their Security. 23
Their Orderly Men to attend the Major of Brigade of the Day. Reason subv
Day. Reason why.
Out-Posts, bow they are to receive the Generals who Vis
them. ibid
Those near the Camp to have the Parole which is given to the
Army, ibid
Those at a Distance to have one of their own, and by whom sent.
Necessary Conduct of an Officer who Commands an Out-Pos
ibio
How far be is to maintain bis Post, must depend on bis Order
and Situation.
Custom of War in these Cases:

ARTICLE IV. Foraging Parties, Design and Duty of them.
Page 235
ARTICLE V. Convoys, or Escorts, on what Occasions order'd.
ARTICLE VI. Expeditions, Nature and Design of them.
237

-

7

7

to

d.

0

y.

d. d.

i-

1

zy

id.

12

at

d.

d.

d.

nd

d.

33

be

id.

fit

id.

be

d:

ft. id.

275

35 id.

E

CHAP. XVII.

General Rules for Incamping an Army, &c.

ARTICLE I. Distance of the Lines, with the Ground allowed to a Battalion and Squadron. 238 The Ground allowed to a Squadron not sufficient, with the Reafon why. ibid. To Remedy this, a new Method proposed to Incamp a Regiment of Horse or Dragoons, with the Advantage it has over the old way. 239 ARTICLE II. Common Proportion of a Trooper's Tent, with Directions for Incamping a Regiment of Horse, or Dragoons, of nine Troops, and a Plan of the same. 241 Ulual Proportion of Officers Tents. 244 Method of making Kitchens for the Private Men, with the Conveniency of them. ibid. ARTICLE III. Directions for Incamping a Regiment of 13 Companies, with a Plan of the same. 246 Duty of the Quarter-Master, and Camp-Colour-Men. 248 ARTICLE IV. The several Beatings used the Day the Army Marches, and what is to be done at each. ARTICLE V. Duty of the Quarter-Master-General, with the Method of Drawing out an Incampment, or Line of Battel. 250

CHAP. XVIII.

Duty of the Troops at a Siege.

ARTICLE I. The Foot employed in making the Trenches, but paid for the same.

256
The

Dif

Nu

Ma

DIA

A

Pl

The Prices paid during the late War.	Page 256
Time the Men work in the Trenches.	257
Fascines, Gabions, &c. made by the Foot, with a the Proportion of them, and Method of carr	Description and
Magazine.	258
ARTICLE II. Directions to the Covering-P. men, at the Opening of the Trenches.	Party and Work
Manner of making Trenches, with the common feweral Parts.	
When the Workmen leave off, the Covering-Pa fion of the Trenches.	
Directions to the Officers who Command the W Sortie is made.	Forkmen, when a
ARTICLE III. Guard of the Trenches, don talions, and Commanded by General Officers.	
Manner of Relieving the Guard of the Trench ons to those who Mount, and the necessary taken.	es, with Directi
Practice of the French Battalions when t	
ARTICLE IV. A Guard of Horse comman tack, but remain at the Queue of the Tren	ded to each A
When a Sally is made, the Horse are to assist pulsing the Enemy.	
Method of the French Governors, by making Retard the Progress of the Besiegers.	Small Sorties t
When any little Attack is to be made, it is t	
Guard of the Trenches, and the Battalions equal Number of Men for that Service.	27
ARTICLE V. General Rules for a confideral	ble Attack, wit

CHAP. XIX.

Manner of Receiving and Distributing the Daily Orders, with the General Detail of Duty, according to the Method in Flanders.

ARTICLE I. General Officers of Horse and Foot, separate
Commands and Duty.

281

Distinct

256

and the

258 ork-

260 the

263 Tej-265 n a 266

Bat-

267 etti-

bid.

the

272 At-

273 Re-

oid.

to to

274 the

an

275 pith

177

rs, the

ate 81 nct

Distinct General Officers of the Day for the Horse and	Foot.
	281 ibid.
Number of each, and time they remain on that Duty.	
Generals of the Day Command the Picquet, and Vil	-0-
Grand-Guard and Out-Posts.	282
Majors of Brigade Roll for the Day, and Duty of him	who is
of the Day.	ibid.
Duty of the Adjutant-General.	283
ARTICLE II. How the Orders are Received and Di	
ted.	284
ARTICLE III. How the Duty of General Officer	
others is Regulated; as also that of entire Battalions.	286
Plan of a Roster, or Table, by which the Duty of Field O	fficers.
Captains, Subalterns, entire Battalions and Squadrons	is Re-
gulated, with an Explanation of the Roster.	
Table of Proportion for the Detaching of Private Men, w	nio an
Explanation of the Table.	292

CHAP. XX.

Manual Exercise and Evolutions of the Cavelry Explained.

ARTICLE 1. Proper Arms of a Trooper, and Manner of
placing them.
Directions for the Forming and Drawing up of Squadrons. 314
The several Distances of Ranks and Files. 315
How the Officers Post themselves at the Head of the Squadrons.
ibid.
How the Standards are brought to the Regiment and returned.
ibid.
How the Squadrons are to be Told off, or divided for the Ex-
General Rules for Wheeling.
ARTICLE II. The Manual Exercise on Horseback, with an
Explanation. 320
ARTICLE III. Evolutions of the Horse, Explain'd. 327
ARTICLE IV. Words of Command for Dismounting, Link-
ing the Horses, Forming into Battalion, and Exercising on
Foot:
[[[[[[[[]]]]]]] [[[[]]] [[[]]] [[]] [[

Foot; as also the Reducing them into Squadron, and Returning to their Horses, with an Explanation. Page 34 ARTICLE V. How a Regiment of two Squadrons is a Proceed when they Dismount.

ARTICLE VI. Directions for the Reception of a General and the Manner of Passing in Review before him.





A

TREATISE

OF

Military Discipline.

CHAP. I.

Containing Directions for the Forming of Battalions, Posting of Officers, &c.

ARTICLE I.



HEN the Battalion is order'd to draw out to Exercise, or upon any other Occasion, the Soldiers are to repair, at the Time appointed, to their Captain's Quarters, or the Place order'd for that Purpose, compleatly arm'd and accouter'd. The Subalterns and Non-Commission Officers are to be there at the same time.

As foon as the Men are Paraded, the Lieutenant, or in his Absence the Ensign, must order them to stand to their Arms, and form them into a Rank Entire, or Three or Six Deep; after which he is to view their Arms, Ammuni-

Ammunition, Cloaths and Accourtements, and to fee if they are clean, and dress'd in a Soldier-like Manner, in order to make a Report of each Particular to his Captain, when he comes to march the Company to the General Parade.

As there is not any one thing which contributes more to the Appearance of a Regiment than the Sizing of the Men, great Care should be taken in the doing of it, before they march to the General Parade. For which end, there should be a Size-Roll made for each Company, that the Men may know what Rank they are to Form in, which will save the Officers both the Time and Trouble of doing it: For, by casting their Eye over the Size-Roll, they can immediately see if the Men are drawn up according to that, or not.

The Sizing of Men, is the Placing, as near as possible,

those of an equal Height into each Rank.

In forming Six Deep, the tallest Men must be placed in the Front and Fourth Ranks. The reason for it is, that when the Rear half-Files are doubled up, the Men of the sourth Rank may size with those of the First. The same Rule must be observed in sizing the Men of the second and fifth Ranks; as also, those of the Third and Sixth, without which Precaution the Battalion will appear to a great Disadvantage.

The easiest and most exact Method for the doing of this, is to draw up the Companies at the Captain's Quarters Three Deep, placing the tallest Men in the Front and Rear-Ranks, and the lowest in the Center, and from thence to march them off in two Divisions, ordering the second Division to draw up in the Rear of the First, when they are to form in Battalion, the second Division then composing the Rear half-Files; by which means, when they are order'd to double either in the Evolutions, or to go through the Firings, the Ranks will appear equally siz'd.

In the forming of Four Deep, (which is feldom done but when a Battalion is very weak) the fame Regard must be had, that the Ranks may appear equally fized when they

double.

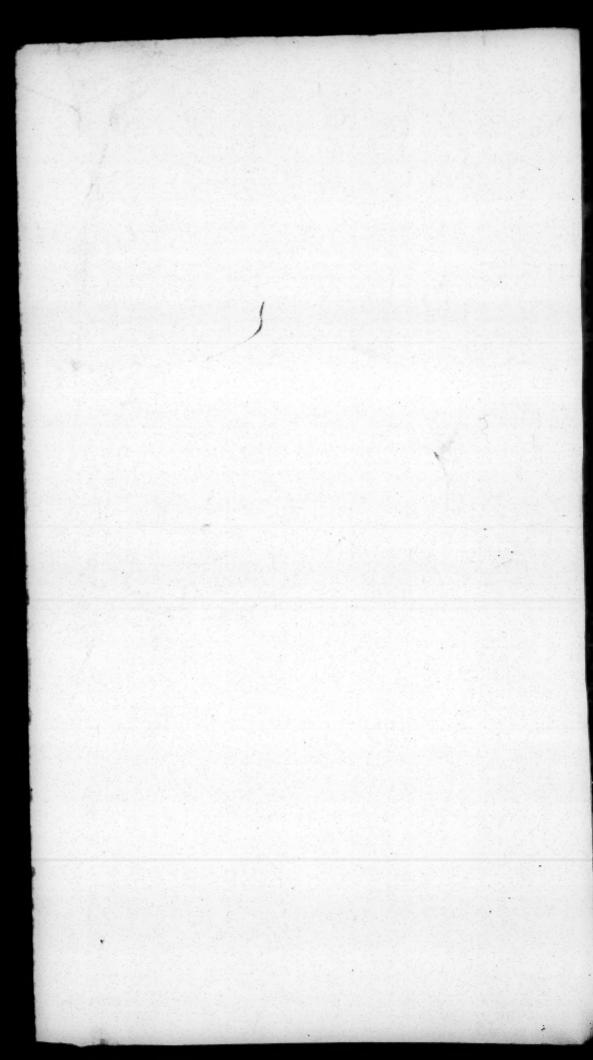
The Companies being formed and fized, the Men's Arms, &c. inspected according to the above Directions, they are to March with Shoulder'd Arms, the Captain leading the first Division, the Ensign at the Head of the Second, and the Lieutenant in the Rear. The Serjeants are to March on the Flanks, and to see that they carry their Arms well, and keep their Ranks straight. The Drummers are to fall in between the first and second Ranks of the first Division; but when

your on, yewi-

ut be ey

he he had on had e-

A Plan of a Battalion of Foot Drawn up according to Seniority of Companies, with an Interval of 3 Foot between each, that they may be the easier Distinguished. They are supposed by this Plan just Drawn up to Form the Battalion, having their own Officers in their Front and their Serjeants in their Rear, with their Files Close and the Ranks at their proper Distance of 4 Paces. There is 3 Foot allowed to each Man; and the Companies are supposed to consist of 51 Private Men and 3 Corporals, in Rank and File, each . Explanation A. The Rank of Officers . B . Front Rank of the Regiment . C . Second Rank . D. Third Rank . E . Fourth Rank . F . Fifth Rank . G . Sixth Rank or the Rear . H. Rank of Serjeants . The Front of the Regiment .



In they march Six Deep, they are then to fall in between Third and Fourth. In this Order the Companies are to rch whenever they march with Shoulder'd Arms, except Reviews; the Difference in which shall be shewn in its

per Place.

When the Companies come to the Parade, or Place where y are to form into Battalion, they are to draw up accord-to Seniority, thus: The Colonel's Company on the Right, Lieutenant-Colonel's on the Left, the Major's on the Left the Colonel's, the eldeft Captain's on the Right of the Lieu-ant-Colonel's, and so on from Right to Left, 'till the ungest comes in the Center. See the annexed Plan.

As the Companies Draw up, the Subalterns are to move to the Front, the Lieutenants placing themselves on the sht of their Captains, and the Ensigns on their Lest, tords the Flanks of their Companies. The Serjeants are to rm themselves in the Rear of the Rear-Rank, and the ummers are to March about thirty Paces in the Front, ere the Drum-Major is to Form them into a Rank Encert the Drum-Major is to Form them into a Rank Encich Position the Whole are to remain, 'till the Major, or licer, who is to Exercise the Battalion, orders the Officers their Posts. But before I proceed to this part of the Cerenty, I shall lay down some Rules, whereby that Tedious, in my Opinion, Unsoldier-like Method of compleating Files of the whole Battalion to the Right and Lest, may avoided.

Let it be a standing Rule for the Companies to leave an terval of a Pace between them, when they Draw up in ttalion, and to March in with their Files Compleat, oring their Odd Men, if they have any, to fall in the Rear the Rear-Rank, where the Adjutant, or the Serjeant-Ma, should immediately join them together, Form them into les, and draw them up in the Intervals between the ompanies, which they may do in an Instant, by beginning the Right, and joining those of two or three Companies, as many as will make a File, and then placing them in first Interval; and so on 'till they are all Form'd.

As the Companies Draw up, the Captains, or Officers to Command them, should immediately Face their Men,

d Order them to cover their File-Leaders, and see that y do it; after which, they are to Face to their Proper

ont.

hap

emfe

Re

Wh

ey sh

the

hus,

inks

kth I

The

e Di

ves (

ivifio

Dre

ivific

ves i

The

ers re

rjean

its h

ght,

ny.

a L

Wh

: Ce

e Co

off Off

im. Wh

the

the

t tak

cessa

eute

ion '

ent,

ore

lving Wh

abse

ch ft

th 1

y re

easy and plain, can admit of no Difficulty) it will effectual answer the End propos'd, that of saving both the Troub and Time, which the other will of Course take up; a Fawhich ought to be avoided, that the Soldiers may not be ke too long under Arms, before they proceed to the Exercisin order to have it well perform'd. Besides, the old Methof compleating the Files of the whole Battalion to the Rig and Lest, has, in my Opinion, more the Air of Militia the Soldiers.

The Intervals which remain between the Companies, and the Odd Men are Form'd, may be closed by Facing-t Companies to the Right and Left inwards, or by orders the Flank Men of those Companies where the Intervals happen, to divide the Ground between them, which is by much the control of the c

the easiest and shortest way.

The Company of Granadiers is always to Draw up the Right of the Colonel's, and to leave an Interval betwee them equal to the Front of the Company, that when the

Files are Open'd, they may join the Battalion.

When the Battalion Draws up Six Deep, the Granadic are to do the same; and when the Battalion is drawn Four Deep, for the Punishing of the Soldiers by making the Run the Gauntlet, the Granadiers are to do so too; but if the Battalion does it on Account of its being Weak, then the Granadiers generally Draw up Three Deep.

ARTICLE II.

As foon as the Odd Men are Form'd, and the Interval Clos'd, the Major is to order the Officers to take their Poin Battalion; which is done by Seniority of Commission thus: The Eldest Captain is to place Himself on the Rig of the Battalion, the Second Captain on the Lest, the Thi Captain on the Lest of the Eldest, the Fourth on the Rig of the Second Captain, and so on 'till the Youngest Ensignment of the Center.

The Captains and Subalterns are to Dress in the san Line, about two good Paces before the Front Rank of Me and to divide the Ground equally between them, so as to a

ver the Front of the Battalion.

There must be a Serjeant placed on the Right and Le Flank of each Rank, who are to Dress them as often there is an Occasion. The rest of the Serjeants are to Rang them

emselves in the Rear of the Battalion, about four Paces from e Rear-Rank of Men.

When a good many Serjeants are Absent, or Wanting, ey should place but Three on the Right Wing and Three the Left, giving to each Serjeant an Entire Rank to Drefs. hus, to those on the Right, the First, Third and Fifth anks; and to those on the Left, the Second, Fourth and xth Ranks.

The Drummers are to be divided into Three Divisions. Drum-Major with the First Division are to post themves on the Right of the Colonel's Company, the Second ivision on the Left of the Lieutenant-Colonel's, and both Dress in a Line with the Front-Rank of Men. The Third ivision of Drummers and the Hautboys are to post them-

wes in the Rear of the Enfigns in the Center.

The Officers of Granadiers with the Serjeants and Drumers remain with their own Company, and the Officers and rjeants Dress with those of the Battalion. The Captain Its himself in the Center, the Eldest Lieutenant on the ght, and the Second Lieutenant on the Left of the Comny. The Drummers place themselves on the Right, and a Line with the Front-Rank of Granadiers.

When the Battalion is Drawn up, the Colonel's Post is in Center, and about four Paces before the Enfigns with Colours. The Lieutenant-Colonel's Post is a little to the eft of the Colonel's, and about three Paces from the Rank Officers, that the Colonel may be a Pace advanced before

im.

When there is no General, or Superior Officer present to the Exercise perform'd, the Colonel does not take his Post the Head of the Battalion, but remains in the Front, withtaking his Half-Pike in his Hand, to give the Major the tessary Orders about the Exercise, &c. In this Case the eutenant-Colonel is to post Himself at the Head of the Bation with his Half-Pike in his Hand; but if the Colonel is ent, He then remains in the Front in the same Manner as ore mentioned for the Colonel, the fole Command then delving on the Lieutenant-Colonel.

Whenever the Regiment is Drawn out, no Officer must absent without Leave from the Commanding Officer; but th stand at the Post assign'd him in the Rules of Exercise, th his Arms in his Hand, expecting such Orders as he y receive, either to Exercise the whole Battalion, a Part it, or a fingle Company, as the Commanding Officer

shall direct; which He is always to perform with his Hall Pike or Partisan in his Hand.

ARTICLE III.

The Officers having taken their Posts in the Front of the Battalion, and the Ranks and Files being Dressed, the Colours are then to be sent for; which is usually perform'd

the following Manner:

The Major is to order one of the Granadier Drummers Beat the Drummers Call; upon which the Enfigns who a to carry the Colours, and the Drum-Major with one Halfa two Thirds of the Drummers, are to repair to the Heads the Company of Granadiers, where the Drummers are to form'd into Ranks in the Rear of the Enfigns, Facing or wards. A Lieutenant, 2 Serjeants, and 24 Granadiers are March with the Enfigns, and guard the Colours to the Rement, who are generally taken from the Left of the Company, and March with their Firelocks Rested on their Left Arms without Fixing their Bayonets 'till they receive the Colours. The Words of Command to the Granadiers (at which are given by the Lieutenant) are as follow.

I. Poize your Firelocks ----- Number i II. Rest your Firelocks on your Lest Arms. - 1 Motions

When this is done, the Lieutenant places himself Two Paces before the Ensigns, and marches to the Colonel's Quaters, or Place where the Colours are Lodg'd; the Drummers, with the Drum-Major at their Head, marching in the Rear of the Ensigns, Beat the Troop, and the Granadies Four in a Rank, march immediately after the Drummers one Serjeant marches on the Right Flank of the Guard, at the other in the Rear of the Rear-Rank, with their Halban advanced.

Note, In sending for the Colours, the Compliment the paid by the Battalion, is that of Shoulder'd Arms; but whe the Colours are brought to the Regiment, they are Received with Rested Arms, and the Drummers, who remain, beat March, which is the reason that One Third of the Drummers at least, remain with the Battalion. The same Complement is paid to the Colours when they are sent from the Battalion; but when the Ensigns go for the Colours, and

retu

return without them, the Battalion is only to be Shoulder'd.

As foon as the Lieutenant comes to the Place where the Colours are Lodged, he is to draw up his Detachment Three Deep, by ordering the Rear Half-Files to Draw up on the Left of the Front Half-Files, and then order the Granadiers to Fix their Bayonets, as follows.

I. Poize your Firelocks 2	1
II. Reft on your Arms 3	
III. Draw your Bayonets 2	Number of
IV. Fix your Bayonets 4	Motions.
V. Recover your Arms 2	1
VI. Reft your Firelocks on your Left Arms. 1-	,

After these Motions are perform'd, the Ensigns are to take the Colours, and the Lieutenant marches back to the Battalion in the same Order that he came from it, the Ensigns

carrying the Colours advanced, and letting them fly.

As foon as the Lieutenant comes to the Battalion, he must Draw up his Detachment on the Right or Left Flank, (according to which Flank he comes to First) and Halt his Men; but the Enfigns with the Colours, followed by the Drummers, are to move on 'till they advance a little before the Officers of the Battalion, and then Wheel to the Right or Left inward, according to the Flank they are on, and March along the Front of the Officers 'till they come to their Posts in the Center, which they are to fall into, the Enfign with the Colonel's Colours taking the Right, the Enfign with the Lieutenant-Colonel's Colours the Left, and the Major's (if they have three Colours) the Center. When the Enfigns fall into their Posts, the Drum-Major is to wheel the Drummers to the Front, and March them about Ten Paces forward, then Halt; and after he has order'd them to cease Beating, he is to fend them to their respective Posts.

When the Enfigns with the Colours and the Drummers have wheel'd inwards, in order to march to the Center, the Lieutenant is to order the Granadiers to Face to the Right, (if they are drawn up on the Left of the Battalion) and March along the Ranks to their former Ground, the Lieutenant with the Front Rank of Granadiers marching between the Officers and the Front Rank of the Battalion; but if they are Drawn up on the Right of the Granadier Company, he is then to Face his Detachment to the Left, and March it a-

B 4

ha

e I

eati

olo

dva nd t

urs

to

ets,

hic

e (

s N her

rder hem

As

ver

pint

Taro

ded

on ch,

A_j

Af

th

nanc

At

n th

ligh

atta

be F

he R

re to

rope

Occa

erste

long the Front of the Granadiers only, and as foon as they come on their former Ground, he is to order them to Halt, and immediately proceed to Unfix the Bayonets, by the following Words of Command:

```
I. Poize your Firelocks - - - - 1
II. Rest on your Arms - - - - 3
III. Unfix your Bayonets - - - 2
IV. Return your Bayonets - - 4
V. Poize your Firelocks - - - 3
VI. Shoulder your Firelocks. - 3
```

After this, the Major is to order the Battalion to Shoulder their Arms.

When the Parade is at any considerable Distance from the Place where the Colours are Lodged, it is usual for the Field Officers Companies to Assemble there, and carry them with them to the Place of Exercise, that no Time may be lost in the Sending for them. In this Case, the Captain-Lieutenant marches at the Head of the first Division, or Front Half-Files, and the Ensign who carries the Colonel's Colours, at the Head of the Second Division, or Rear Half-Files; the Soldiers having their Arms Shoulder'd, and the Drummen (who fall in between the First and Second Ranks of the First Division) beating a March. The Lieutenant-Colonel's and Major's Companies, if there are Three Colours, are to Observe the same Method in carrying their Colours with them; and if the proper Officers belonging to those Companies are absent, others must be Order'd to them for that Purpose.

When the Colours are brought in this Manner, they are to remain with the Companies 'till the Officers are order'd to take their Posts at the Head of the Battalion, at which word of Command, the Ensigns are to March with them to

the Center.

As foon as the Colours are to be fent back, (or Lodged, according to the Military Phrase) the Drummers Call is to be Beat at the Head of the Granadiers; on which the Ensign with the Colours, and the Drum-Major, with the same Number of Drummers, are to Repair thither immediately, and Draw up as before. The Lieutenant of Granadiers is then to order the same Detachment, or an equal Number of Granadiers to fix their Bayonets, and Rest them on their Lest Arms: And as soon as the Major has order'd the Battalion to Present their Arms, he is to March back the Colours to the

e Place, where they are to be Lodg'd, the Drummers eating the Troop as before. The Enfigns are to carry the colours back in the fame Manner they brought them, that is, dvanced and Flying; and as foon as they arrive at the Place, and the Detachment is drawn up, they are to Furl the Coburs and Lodge them. When this is done, the Lieutenant to order the Granadiers to Unfix, and Return their Bayoets, and Rest their Firelocks on their Lest Arms; after which he is to March back in the same Manner he carried e Colours to the Battalion, unless he is order'd to Dismis Men as foon as the Colours are Lodg'd; in which Cafe, then the Bayonets are return'd, instead of Poizing, he is to rder them to Rest their Firelocks, then Club, and Dismiss hem with the Ruff of a Drum.

As foon as the Colours are brought to the Battalion, the everal Divisions are to be Told Off, and the Officers appinted to them, that they may know on which they are to larch or Wheel. After which each Division is to be Subdided into Two Equal Parts, that on the Right of each Divion being call'd Right Half-Ranks, and that on the Left of ch, Left Half-Ranks, of which the Men are to be thorough-Appriz'd, lest a Mistake should happen in the Doubling to

e Right or Left in the Evolutions.

nt

1

at

he

13 rft |

nd 6

n;

It.

ch

to

ed,

be

m-

ind

nse

13.

eft

ion

to the

ARTICLE IV.

After the Divisions are Told off, the Major is to proceed the Opening of Files by the following Words of Comnand.

To the Left open your Files.

At this, both the Officers and Soldiers Face Nimbly to the eft on their Right Heels, with this Exception, that the File n the Right of the Granadiers with the Lieutenant on the light of that Company, and the File on the Right of the

attalion and the Eldest Captain stand still.

The Serjeants on the Right Flank of the Battalion, and be First Division of Drummers Face, at the same time, to e Right on their Left Heels, in which Position the Whole te to remain 'till the next Word of Command. But before re Proceed, it will be necessary to give Directions for the roper Distances of Ranks and Files, according to the several ccasions, that what is now Treating of may be clearly unerstood by the Reader.

The

The several Distances of Ranks.

In the Drawing up of a Battalion for Exercise, or a keyiew, the Ranks are to be at Four ordinary Paces Distant from one another.

When they are to Fire, either by Ranks, Platoons, to whole Battalion, or in the Square, the Ranks are to be mo

ved up to half Distance, which is Two Paces.

In all Wheelings, either by Division or the whole Bath lion, the Ranks are to be closed Forward to close One which is to one Pace Distance.

Distances of Files.

When a Regiment is to Exercise or to be Review'd, the Files are to be Open'd, the Distance of which between on another, is one Pace, or the Length of an Out-stretch Arm; but that this may appear more plain, as soon as the Files are open'd, and the Men saced to their proper From Order those of the Front Rank to stretch out their Right Arms to the Right, and if they can touch the Lest Shod ders of their Right-hand Men, they have then their true of stance; the doing of which now and then, will give them just Notion of the proper Distance. As the Men of the Ranks are to be govern'd by, and Dress with those in the Front, who are called their File-Leaders, there is no occasion for their doing it.

When they are to Fire, the Files are to be at Half a Par Distance, that the Men may have Room to Handle the Arms in Firing and Loading; which Distance is the half of an out-stretch'd Arm; that is, when the Hand is set bentagainst the Side, the Elbow is to touch the Right-hand Man.

In Marching or Wheeling, the Files must be so close, the Men almost touch one another with their Shoulders. These being all the Distances of Ranks and Files which is Necessary to be known for the Performing of every Part of the Service now Practis'd, I shall proceed to the Second Word of Command in the Opening of Files.

MARCH.

As foon as this is given, the Division of Drumms on the Lest list up their Right Feet together, and Mand very slow (without opening their Distance from on another

nother) in a Direct Line to the Left. The Serjeants on the eft Flank of the Battalion, carrying their Halbards with oth Hands before them, the Spear upwards, Move at the me time to the Left, beginning also with the Right Feet; and as soon as they have open'd to a proper Distance (which a Pace) from the Left-hand File of the Battalion, that File then to move; and so one File after another, 'till the whole re Open'd, taking care to keep their proper Distance as al-

ady directed.

The Left-hand File of the Company of Granadiers move the same time with that on the Left of the Battalion, each lile of the said Company doing the same when that before it as got its Distance; and when the File on the Left of the Granadiers comes within a large Pace of the File on the light of the Battalion, it is to Stand, on which, all the Grandiers are to do the same, and to remain in that Position 'till the whole Battalion have Open'd. If the Interval between the Granadiers and the Battalion was only equal to the Front of the Company when the Files were closed, that Space will be entirely taken up when Open'd, without leaving any ther Interval between them than what should be, which is Pace.

The Drum-Major with the First Division of Drummers, and the Serjeants on the Right Flank of the Battalion, who aced to the Right, are to move at the same time with the est-hand File of Granadiers, beginning with their Lest eet, and March very slow to the Right of the Company of Granadiers, which when they have Pass'd, they are to stand, ill the Word Halt is given to the Whole. The Serjeants re to carry their Halbarbs before them, as those on the Lest

re Directed.

In Opening of Files, each File must Move at once, all the sen in it beginning with the same Feet, and taking them up and setting them down together. For this End, the Men in the Front-Rank, who are call'd the File-Leaders, must take reat care not to begin 'till those before them are at a proper Distance, the other Five Ranks being to Observe their Mosons, and keep an equal Pace with them, that the whole may solve like one Man. For the doing of this in exact Time, and with the more Ease, the following Rule, if observ'd, will make it appear both Regular and Beautiful; as also give to ach File its proper Distance.

Rules for the Opening of Files.

In the Opening and Closing of Files, or Marching all to gether to the Right or Left to change their Ground, the should begin with the Feet next the Front.

When they Face to the Right, the Men should do it and their Left Heels; and when they Face to the Left, they should do it on their Right Heels. My Reason for it is as follows:

By their falling back, their Feet to the Front will be into exact Line; whereas, if they moved up, (as was Practis'd formerly, and, I believe, still used) it will not be so, occasion by one Man stepping surther out than another, from their makes the being all of an equal Height, and consequently make the Front appear uneven. Besides, it is a standing Rule, that the Men are to begin to March with the Feet they Faced on, so that by moving up, they must begin with the Feet next the Rear, which will not, in my Opinion, appear so Graceful as beginning with those next the Front. But as the little Niceties are not very Essential, it may be done either way, as the commanding Officer shall direct, 'till one Method is prescrib'd to the Whole; which would be very proper, and not leave every one to Act according to their own Crude Notions or Caprice.

As foon as the Men of the first File on the Lest of the Batalion lift up their right Feet a second time, the Men of the second File are to lift up their right Feet: and when those of the second File lift up their right Feet a second time, the Ma of the third File are to begin with their right Feet. All the other Files are to follow the same Directions 'till the whole

have Open'd.

In the doing of this, they are to take but short Step, and to move on very slow, but with an equal Pace, listing up and setting down of their Right and Lest Feet with one another, thus: All who are in Motion, must list up and set down their Right Feet together, and do the same with their Lest.

The bringing of a Battalion to fuch Exactness as to perform it in due time, will, I am afraid, appear so difficult that it will deter a great many from attempting it; but let those, who are of this Opinion, only try, and they will find it much easier in the Execution than they imagined.

The common Objection against it, is, that it looks to much like Dancing, and makes the Men appear with to stiff an Air. I own it may have this Effect in the Beginning.

at a little Time and Practice will bring the Men to perform in so easy and genteel a Manner that the Objection will vaih. But as the Evolutions are perform'd in exact Time. hy is not the same Objection rais'd against them? Because re are accustomed to the one and not to the other. If this is e Case, then Time will reconcile this also. Besides I think just as reasonable that the first Movements of a Battalion. which is the Opening of Files, should be perform'd with as much Regularity and Exactness as those which come last. a great many other Reasons may be brought to support this argument, were there an Occasion for it, such as the bringg of the Men to walk with a bolder Air, giving them a freeuse of their Limbs, and a Notion of Time; which, in my Opinion, are fufficient to filence those who oppose it; and erefore I shall not trouble the Reader any further, but proeed to the Point in Hand.

The Men of the Five Rear-Ranks must keep in a strait ine with their File-Leaders, and neither Close nor Open eir Ranks in Marching; and all carry their Arms high and rm on their Shoulders, looking up and keeping their Bodies

rait.

The Officers are to carry their Half-pikes or Partifans

ownwards, and the Enfigns to Advance the Colours.

No Officer is to move 'till the File opposite to him does; and when the Men of that File step forward with their right eet, he is to do the same with his, keeping an equal Pace and a direct Line with them; by the Observance of which Rule, e Officers will, when they Halt, have their proper Distance tween them, provided it was equally divided before the Files ere Open'd, which will save them the trouble of Moving terwards.

The Serjeants in the Rear must observe the same Rule; by they must carry their Halbards as directed for those on

e Flanks.

As foon as the fecond File on the Right of the Battalion, hich is the last to Open, steps forward, the Major is to produced to the following Word of Command.

HALT.

On the giving of this Word of Command, the Officers of Soldiers are to face briskly to the Right on their right cels, those Feet being then foremost, if the foregoing Rules duly observed: but lest they should not, a Stroak of a Drum,

n Hi

lv ler

Dr

h

vh

gr vhi

n t

he Hi

rn

fro

W

eir

ce rje

T

ere

ant

W

e R

W

ord

I. C

At

II.

der'

mair give

Tak

is di

In

terci

Drum, or any other Signal, may be given when they are Stand, that they may have time to place their Right Feet, ther in a Line with their Left, or a little before them; a after a Pause of half a Minute, the Major is to give the World Halt; by which means, the whole will perform it like a Man. As soon as they are Faced, they are to Dress to Ranks and Files.

ARTICLE V.

When the Ranks and Files are Dress'd, the Officers are take their Post of Exercise in the Rear of the Battalion, I by Beat of Drum, it is to be perform'd in the following Manner.

First, the Major is to direct the Orderly Drummer tole a Ruff (one being to attend for that Purpose) to give the Orders Notice. After that a Flam, or double Stroke; at what the Lieutenant Colonel (unless he commands the Regime in the Absence of the Colonel) and the rest of the Office face to the Right about on their lest Heels. At the sense on the Flamks their Halbards. At the third Flam the Officers, Serjeants on the Flanks, the three Divisions of Drumers, and the Hautboys, are all to march to their Posts, beginning with the lest Feet.

The Officers are to march thro' the Battalion, and whethey have got eight Paces beyond the Serjeants in the Ratthey are to stand; but the Lieutenant-Colonel is to make

four Paces beyond the Officers, and then stand.

The Serjeants on the Flanks are to march in a direct litto the Front, and as foon as the two Serjeants who replaced on the Flanks of the Front Rank have marched are forty Paces they are to Stand, on which the other Serjeante to do the fame, taking care to divide the Ground on Flanks equally amongst them.

The Drummers are to march and form themselves a Rank entire behind the Major, on the Right of whom

Hautboys are to place themselves.

When the Major finds that the Officers, Serjeants, Drumers, and Hautboys have got to their Posts of Exercise, is to order another Flam to be beat; at which the Office Drummers, and Hautboys face to the Lest-about on the lest Heels. The Serjeants on the right Flank are to face to Lest on their Lest Heels, and the Serjeants on the lest Flank

ret

. I M23

o ba

Off which imed fices

econ jean Of

Drum

ts, b

wit

Ra

man

a Li

OW

d abo

erjen on t

es II

om a

Dru

cife,

Office

e to

lank

o face to the Right on their right Heels. As foon as they have faced, the Officers are to plant their Half-pikes, the Enfigns heir Colours, and the Serjeants their Halbards on their Right; n which Position they are to remain, with their Arms in their Hands, 'till they are order'd to their former Posts after the Exercise is over. The Drummers are to have their Drums always braced and slung during the Time the Battalion is under Arms, and to remain at the several Posts afsign'd them.

As foon as the Exercise is over, the Officers, Serjeants, Drummers and Hautboys are to be order'd to their former Posts,

n the following Manner.

First a Ruff of a Drum to warn them; then a Flam, at which the Officers are to advance their Half-pikes, the Engins their Colours, and the Serjeants their Halbards; after which the Serjeants on the right Flank are to face to the Left in their left Heels, and the Serjeants on the Left are to face to be Right on their right Heels. At the second Flam, the Officers, Serjeants, Drummers and Hautboys march to their forum? Posts; and as soon as they have all got to their fround, the Major orders the Drum to beat a third Flam; which, the Officers plant their Half-pikes, and the Ensigns eir Colours, and the Serjeants, Drummers and Hautboys ce to the Left-about on their right Heels, after which the enjeants plant their Halbards.

The Officers are to perform every part of the foregoing eremonies together, both in Advancing their Half-pikes and anting them, Facing, Marching and Halting, for the doing which, they are to take every Motion from the Officer on

e Right.

When the Officers are to take their Posts of Exercise by ford of Command, it is to be done as follows.

. Officers take your Posts in the Rear of the Battalion:

At this Word of Command, they are to perform what is

rected by the first Flam.

II. March. When this is deliver'd they are to do what is der'd to be perform'd by the second and third Flams, and to main in that Position 'till the following Word of Command given to the Battalion.

Take Care. At which they are to face and plant their Arms,

is directed by the fourth Flam.

In taking their Posts by Word of Command when the tercise is over, it is to be done as follows.

I. Offi-

fai

th

clo

rec

an to

ma Ba

are

ban

the

the

are

beat

Cor

or c

his]

one

lde

ire t

whe

hose

Ran

N

boul

o pe

The

out 1

n the

Diffic

o it

Hand

he O

h tho

Officers take your Posts in the Front of the Battalion.

At this they are only to stand ready, as is directed by the Ruff.

II. March. When this Word is given, they are to perform all the Ceremonies, which are directed to be done by the first, fecond and third Flams.

ARTICLE VI.

As foon as the Officers, &c. are return'd to their Poft, the Files are to be closed by the following Words of Command.

I. To the Right close your Files.

The eldest Captain and the Right-hand File of the Battlion, and the eldest Lieutenant, and the Right-hand File of the Company of Granadiers Stand, as before directed in Opening. All the rest Face at once to the Right on their lest Heels, except the Six Serjeants, and the first Division of Drumma (on the Right of the Granadiers) who face to the Lest of their right Heels. As soon as they are Faced, the Ensign advance the Colours and the Serjeants their Halbards, then the Major proceeds.

II. March. At this Command, they all lift up the Feet they Faced on together, and march flow 'till the Files are Cloth

to their former distance, which is to an half Pace.

The Serjeants and the first Division of Drummers are march along the Ranks of the Granadiers 'till they come to the right Flank of the Battalion, and then Stand, facing to the Left.

The Officers march with their Arms Downwards, the Enfigns with their Colours and the Serjeants with their Halbard Advanced; and all observe the same Rule in Closing as in Opening, by keeping an equal Pace and directly in a Lin with the File next them, and Standing when they do; by do serving of which they will have no occasion to divide the Ground when they Halt.

The Men are to follow the Directions, in Lifting up in Setting down of the same Feet together; and when they che to their proper Distance, they are to Stand, placing the Feethey Faced on a little before the other; after which the Man

gives the following Word of Command.

III. Ha

III. Halt. At this, all face to their proper Front on the same Feet they just before Faced on, and immediately straiten their Ranks and Files.

If the Battalion is to be difmis'd, as soon as the Files are closed the Colours are to be lodg'd in the Manner already directed; after which, the Major orders the Officers, Serjeants, and Drummers to their Companies, and then orders the whole to Club, by these Words,

I. Rest your Firelocks. II. Club your Firelocks.

As foon as these Motions are perform'd, the Companies may be order'd to march off from the Right or Lest to their

Barracks, or Place where they are to be dismissed.

Whenever the Men march with club'd Arms, the Officers are to advance their Half-pikes, and the Serjeants their Half-bards, the Captain and Enfign are to march in the Front (but the Enfign a little behind the Captain) and the Lieutenant in the Rear of the Company or Detachment: The Drummers are to march between the Enfign and the front Rank of Men,

beating the Troop.

All the Officers of Granadiers march in the Front of the Company, either to or from the Parade, or with shoulder'd or club'd Arms, the Captain being one Pace advanced before his Lieutenants. Two Serjeants march on the Flanks, and one in the Rear of the Rear Rank, (who is generally the cldest;) and when they march with club'd Arms, the Serjeants are to advance their Halbards. The Drummers are to march, when they beat the Troop, in the Rear of their Officers, as shose of the Battalion; but when they march with shoulder'd Arms, they are always to fall in between the first and second Ranks of the first Division.

When the Regiment draws out, the Major and Adjutant hould be always on Horseback, it being impossible for them o perform their Duty on Foot, in the Manner it ought to be. They are likewise to exercise the Regiment on Horse-back; ut no other Officer is to do it mounted, unless such, who,

n their Absence, are appointed to do their Duty.

When the commanding Officer orders any of the other Officers to exercise the Battalion, or a Part of it, they are to o it on Foot with their Half-pikes or Partisans in their lands. This should be frequently done for the Instruction of the Officers, that, upon the Absence of the Major and Adutant, they may have a Number sufficiently qualified to act those Posts.

atta-

e d

om-

peneek; men t on

figns

n the they lofed

are to

e En-

Line Dy ob-

p and y close

Majo

Hall

Whoever exercises a Battalion, or any Number of Men, should place himself opposite to the Centre, and at such a Distance that he may take in the whole at one View; but if that Distance is too far off for his Voice, he may place himself nearer, tho still opposite to the Centre.

As the performing of the Exercise well, depends a great deal on the giving of the Words of Command; those who exercise, should deliver the Words clear and distinct, that the Men

may not mistake one Command for another.

Whoever would attain to any Perfection in it, must study the Compass of his Voice, that he may not overftrain it, lest it cause an immediate Hoarseness; as also the laying of the Emphasis in the right Place, and where to make the proper Stops, or Pauses, when the Command is too long to be pronounced at one Breath. Befides, Stops or Paufes, when judiciously made, are of great Service to the Men, in giving them time to think on the Word of Command before it is fully deliver'd; and, consequently, preparing them for the performing of it with Life, Vigor and Exactness. But as the coming to this Knowledge will prove tedious to young Officers, without some further Affistance than that of mentioning it, I have placed Comma's where the Stops or Paule should be made; which, if observ'd, will aid and affist an Indifferent Voice, and give Beauty and Force to a Good one; and enable every one to give the Words of Command with more Ease to themselves, and Clearness to the Men. rest must depend on Practice, Precept alone not being sufficient to arrive at Perfection in any Art.

Directions for the Position of a Soldier under Arms.

I. A Soldier having his Firelock Shoulder'd, must stand with a strait Body, holding up his Head without moving, and always looking towards the Commanding Officer, or he who exercises the Battalion; nor to use any Motion but what the Word of Command, when given, directs.

II. His Feet are to be at one Step Distance, the Heels in

£

1

a straight Line, and the Toes turn'd a little outward.

III. The Firelock must lie on the lest Shoulder, and the lest Hand on the Butt-end, the Thumb being placed in the Hollow thereof, pressing the Guard hard against the Breast, that the Muzzle may be mounted; the Lock must be turn'd a little outward 'till the under Part of the Butt-end is brought opposite to the middle of the Body, that the Firelock may be more easily born.

IV. The left Elbow must be turn'd a little outward from the Body, but without any constraint to the Arm; and the right Arm to hang in an easy Posture down the right Side, with the Palm of the Hand turn'd to the Thigh.



CHAP. II.

The Manual Exercise of the Foot, with an Explanation.

Take Care.



I.

)_{|-}

lat

elf

er-

en

eft the

roju-

ing is the

as ing

en-

ifes

In-

ne;

rith

he ici-

and

ng,

or

but

s in

the

the

aft,

rn'd

ight

be

IV.

N the giving of this Command, there must be a profound Silence observ'd thro' the whole Battalion; nor must any of the Soldiers make any Motion with their Heads, Bodies, Hands or Feet, but such as are requir'd for the performing of the following Words of Command.

I. Join your Right Hands to your Firelocks. 1 Motion.

The Firelock being carried in the forementioned Position upon the Left Shoulder, you must turn the Lock upward with your Left Hand, and at the same time taking hold with your Right behind the Cock, placing the Thumb on the lower Part of the Stock, and the Fingers on the upper, keeping both Elbows square, that is, in an equal Line, but not constrain'd; as is frequently done by raising them above the Level. The Muzzle of the Firelock must be kept at the same height as it was when shoulder'd.

Note, the first Motion of every Word of Command is to be perform'd immediately after it is given; but before you proceed to any of the other Motions, you must tell, One, Two, pretty slow, by making a Stop between the Words; and on the pronouncing of the Word Two, the Motion is to be per-

form'd.

II. Poize

t

ii

y

e B

0 b it

1

it

P

dr

pla

ob

is

C

to

m(

on

and Kr

Kr

1 Motion. II. Poize your Firelocks.

At this Word of Command, with both Hands and a quick Motion bring up the Firelock from your Shoulder, thrusting it from you at the fame time with your Right Hand (and letting your Left fall down your Left Side) turning the Lock outward, the Thumb inward, directly opposite to your Face, and your Feet in the same Position as when shoulder'd.

III. Join your Left Hands to your Firelocks. 2 Motions.

Turn the Firelock with the Barrel towards you, and at the same time seize it with the Lest Hand, just over the Lock; so that the Little Finger may touch it, holding the Firelock with both Hands, and extending your Arms as much as you can without Conftraint; then tell 1, 2. and with a quick Motion bring the Firelock down to your Right Side, the Butt-end as low as the the Middle of your Thigh, the Muzzle pointing a little forward, the Stock in the Left Hand with the Thumb upward, your Right on the Cock, the Fore-Finger before the Tricker, and the others behind the Guard At the fame time that you bring down the Firelock, you must step a little back with your Right Foot, the Toe pointing to the Right, the Right Knee stiff, and the Left a little bending, keeping your Body very strait. The Firelock must be held on the Right Side at a little Distance from the Body, and both the Body and Face must present themselves to the Front as much as possible without Constraint.

IV. Cock your Firelocks. 2 Motions.

Bring up the Firelock with both Hands before you, keep ing your Thumb on the Cock, and the Fore-Finger on the Tricker; and at the fame time bring up the Right Foot, placing the Heel within an Half-Foot of the Hollow of the Let, and the Toe pointing to the Right. The Firelock must be brought up close to the Breast, that you may bend the Cock with the more ease at the second Motion; then tell 1, 2. and cock, and at the same time thrust the Firelock briskly from you with both Hands directly before the Center of your Body, keeping the Muzzle upright. V. Present. I.

ck

nd

he

to

en

ns.

the

the ach

h a ide,

the

and ore-

ard.

ng,

neld

oth

t 25

the

pla-

eft,

lock

and

rom

ody,

ent.

V. Present. 1 Motion:

In Presenting, take away your Thumb from the Cock, and move your Right Foot a little back, the Toe turn'd a little to the Right, the Body to the Front, and place the Butt-end in the Hollow betwixt your Breast and Shoulder, keeping your Fore-Finger before the Tricker (but without touching it) and the other three behind the Guard, the Elbows in an equal Line (which is call'd Square) the Head upright, the Body strait, only press'd a little forward against the Butt-end of the Firelock, the Right Knee stiff, and the Lest a little bending: The Muzzle should be a little lower than the Butt, in order to take Aim at the Center of the Body.

VI. Fire.

As foon as this Word of Command is given, draw the Tricker briskly with the Fore-Finger, which was placed on it before; and tho' the Cock should not go down with that Pull, you are not to attempt it a second time, being only to draw the Tricker but once at Exercise.

VII. Recover your Arms. 1 Motion.

Bring up the Firelock with a quick Motion before you placing the Right Heel near the Hollow of the Left Foot; observing the same Position of Hands, Body and Firelock, as is directed by the second Motion in Explanation 4.

VIII. Half-cock your Firelocks. 2 Motions.

Bring your Firelock close to your Breast, and half bend the Cock; then tell 1, 2. and thrust it from you with both Hands to the former Position.

IX. Handle your Primers. 3 Motions.

Fall back quick with the Right Foot behind the Left at a moderate Pace distance, placing the Heels in a Line with one another, the Left Toe pointing directly to the Front, and the Right towards the Right of the Rank, the Left Knee bending a little to the Front, and keeping the Right Knee stiff; at the same time bringing down your Firelock

C 3

with

with both Hands to a Level, the Muzzle pointing directly to the Front. Tell 1, 2. and quitting the Firelock with the Right Hand, take hold of the Primer, placing your Thumb on the Spring-Cover. Tell again 1, 2. and bring it within an Hand's-breadth of the Pan,

X. Prime. 2 Motions.

Hold the Firelock firm in the Left Hand, and with the Right turn up the Primer and shake as much Powder into the Pan as is necessary. Then tell 1, 2. and bring it back to its former Place behind the Butt, and remain in that Posture 'till the following Word of Command.

XI. Shut your Pans. 4 Motions.

Let fall the Primer and take hold of the Steel with the Right Hand, placing the Thumb on the upper Part, and the two Fore-Fingers on the lower. Tell 1, 2. and shut the Pan. Tell 1, 2. and seize the Firelock behind the Lock with the Right Hand. Then tell 1, 2. and bring your Firelock to a Recover, as in Explanation 7.

XII. Cast about to Charge. 2 Motions.

Turn the Firelock with both Hands, 'till the Barrel comes outwards; then tell 1, 2. and let go the Right Hand, bringing down the Firelock with the Left, take hold of the Muzzle with the Right Hand, stepping one Pace forward at the same time with the Right Foot, tho' not directly before the Left, but placed a little to the Right, that the Body may present it self the better to the Front. This Motion must be performed in such a Manner, that the bringing down of the Firelock, stepping forward with the Right Foot, and taking hold of the Muzzle be done at the same instant of time. Hold the Barrel downward in a sull Hand, placing the Right Thumb up wards near the Rammer, keeping the Body strait, and the Right Knee a little bent, holding the Firelock, with outstretch'd Arms, directly before your Body, the Muzzle standing to the Front.

XIII. Handle

t

th

211

ho

the

T

and

Ra

tur

in Ari and he

in

the

the

till

the

the an.

the

0 2

mes inguz-

the

the

fent

m'd

ock,

the

Bar-

up-

out-

ndla

XIII. Handle your Cartridges. 3 Motions.

Bring the Firelock with both Hands strait to your Body; tell 1, 2. and quit the Firelock with your Right Hand (holding it with your Lest about the middle in a Balance, the Muzzle pointing a little forward) and at the same time take hold of one of your Cartridges; then tell 1, 2. and bring it within an Inch of the Side of the Muzzle, the Thumb upwards.

XIV. Open your Cartridges. 2 Motions.

Bring the Cartridge to your Mouth and bite off the Top; then tell 1, 2. and bring it again to the former Place near the Muzzle.

XV. Charge with Cartridge. 2 Motions.

Bring the Cartridge just above the Muzzle, and turning up the Hand and Elbow, fix it in it at the same time; then tell 1, 2. and slap your two Fingers briskly on the Cartridge to put it quite into the Barrel, and remain so with your Right Elbow square, 'till the following Command.

XVI. Draw your Rammers. 4 Motions.

Seize the Rammer with the Fore-Finger and Thumb of the Right Hand, holding the Thumb upwards; tell 1, 2. and draw it out as far as you can reach; tell 1, 2. and take hold of it close to the Stock, turning the Thumb downwards; then tell 1, 2. and draw it quite out, holding it between the Thumb and the two Fore-Fingers, the Arm stretch'd out and in a Level with the Right Shoulder, the small end of the Rammer towards you, and the other in a direct Line to the Front.

XVII. Shorten your Rammers. 3 Motions.

Move the Little Finger, which supports the Rammer, and turn it briskly with the thick End downwards, holding it full in your Right Hand, the Thumb upwards, keeping your Arm stretch'd out in a Line with your Shoulder. Tell 1, 2. and place the thick End against the lower Part of your C 4

up do

H

VC

ler Ex H

in

Ri S

on

0

nat ett

Fo

Showa

eiz n

ot

OU

Breast; then tell 1, 2. and slip your Hand down the Rammer within a Hand's-breadth of the Lower-end, keeping it in a Line with the Barrel, the Thumb upwards, and the Elbow turn'd a little out from the Body.

XVIII. Put them in the Barrels. 6 Motions.

Bring the Rammer a little above the Muzzle, and place the thick end on the Cartridge; tell 1, 2. and thrust down the Cartridge as far as your Hand will permit; tell 1, 2. raise your Hand and seize the Rammer about the Middle; tell 1, 2. and thrust it down till your Hand touches the Muzzle; tell 1, 2. and seize it again at the Top. Then tell 1, 2. and thrust it down as far as it will go, holding the Rammer saft in your Hand, with the Thumb upwards.

XIX. Ram down your Charge. 2 Motions.

Draw your Rammer as far out as your Arm unforced will permit; then tell 1, 2. and ram down the Cartridge with a moderate Force, but a quick Motion, holding your Rammer as before.

XX. Recover your Rammers. 3 Motions.

Draw the Rammer with a quick Motion, until half of it be out of the Barrel; tell 1, 2. quit the Rammer and seize it close to the Muzzle with the Hand turn'd, the Thumb downwards; then tell 1, 2. and draw it quite out of the Barrel, holding it with the thick end towards your Shoulder, observing the same Position as in Explanation 16.

XXI. Shorten your Rammers. 3 Motions.

Turn the small End of the Rammer down; tell 1, 2. and place it against your Breast. Then tell 1, 2. and slip your Hand down the Rammer 'till it comes within a Foot of your Breast; observing farther as in Explanation 17.

XXII. Return your Rammers. 6 Motions.

Bring the small End of the Rammer, with a gentle Turn, under the Barrel, and place it in the Stock; tell 1, 2. and thrust it in as far as your Hand will permit; tell 1, 2. raise your

your Hand, and seize the Rammer in the Middle; tell 1, 2. and thrust it down again 'till your Hand touches the Muzzle; tell 1, 2. raise your Hand, and place the Palm of it on the upper End of the Rammer; then tell 1, 2. and thrust it quite down.

XXIII. Your Right Hands under the Lock. 4 Motions.

Note, This was formerly perform'd by two Words of Command; but there being only four Motions in both, I have omitted the First, and included them under the second Word of Command.]

Hold the Firelock firm to your Breast with your Lest Hand, and throw off your Right, extending it in a Line with your Shoulder; tell 1, 2. and take hold of the Firelock with a sull Hand, placing the Thumb even with the Muzzle; tell 1, 2. and thrust the Firelock from you with both Hands, observing the same Position as is shewn in the second Motion in Explanation 12. Then tell 1, 2, and sace on your Lest Heel to the Lest, and turning the Muzzle up at the same time you are to seize the Firelock under the Cock with your Right Hand, keeping it from your Body, and your Hands as low as your Arms, without constraint, will permit.

XXIV. Poise your Firelocks. 1 Motion.

Come briskly to your proper Front, by facing to the Right on your Left Heel, and at the same time bring the Firelock before you with your Right Hand, letting your Left fall down by your Side, (extending the Right Arm, as in Explanation 2. is directed) so that the bringing up of the Firelock, etting the Left Hand fall, and the setting down of the Right Foot must be done at the same time.

XXV. Shoulder your Firelocks. 3 Motions.

Bring the Firelock with the Right Hand opposite to the Left shoulder, turning the Barrel outwards, and the Guard inward, keeping the Muzzle strait up, and at the same time eize the Butt-end with your Left Hand, placing the Thumb in the Hollow thereof; tell 1, 2, and bring the Firelock with both Hands down upon the Left Shoulder, without moving four Head, and keeping both Elbows Square. Then tell

1, 2,

ace wn aife , 2. tell

and

faft

II.

m-

g it El-

will th a mer

it be close rds; ng it iame

and your

urn, and raife

your

C

af

t o

t t

ior

he

Fo Rig

Rai Foo

Bai

aif

But

ioi

oc

Rig

Lef

elv

Hai

ftra Rig

wit

Rig

the

of E

k

bour

time

es 1 Gu

1, 2, and quit your Right Hand, letting it fall down your Right Side, and finking your Left Elbow at the same time. Observe the Posture as describ'd in Explanation 1.

XXVI. Rest your Firelocks. 4 Motions.

Join your Right Hand to your Firelock, as in Explanation 1. Tell 1, 2, and come to your Poize, as in Explanation 2. Tell 1, 2, and feize your Firelock with the Left Hand as in Explanation 3. Then tell 1, 2, and come down to your Rest, as directed by the Second Motion of Explanation 3.

XXVII. Order your Firelocks. 3 Motions.

Keep the Right Hand in the same Position, and raise the Muzzle in a perpendicular Line, with the Lest; tell 1, 2, and quit the Firelock with your Right Hand, sinking it with the Lest, and seize it at the same time with the Right Hand near the Muzzle, the Thumb upwards. Then tell 1, 2, quit your Lest Hand, and place the Butt-end of the Firelock with your Right on the Ground, on the Outside of your Right Foot even with the Little Toe. This Motion must be done briskly, and in such a manner, that the Right Foot and the Butt-end of the Firelock come to the Ground at the same time. The Heels must be in a strait Line, the Toes turn'd outward, and that Part of the Right Arm, from the Hand to the Elbow, must run along the outside of the Firelock, and the Lest hanging down by the Lest Side.

XXVIII. Ground your Firelocks. 4 Motions.

Turn the Firelock with the Right Hand 'till you bring the Barrel towards you, and the Lock pointing to the Rear, and, at the same time, making an Half-Face to the Right, lift up your Right Foot, and place it against the flat side of the Butt, the Toe pointing directly to the Right. Tell 1, 2, and step directly forward a moderate Pace, with the Lest Foot, slipping down the Right Hand at the same time, to the Middle of the Barrel, lay the Firelock on the Ground in a strate Line to the Front, the Lock upwards; tell 1, 2. raise your self up again, bringing back your Lest Foot to its sormer Place, and keep your Body Half-saced to the Right; then tell 1, 2, and turn your Right Foot on the Heel, over the Butt-end, bringing your Body at the same time to its pro-

me,

ation

das

TUO

.

the

2,

vith

and

quit vith

ght

One

the

ıme

n'd and

ck,

the

21,

ht,

the

and oot, lid-

rant ur-

ner

ht;

ver

per

per Front, letting your Arms hang down by your Side in an afy Posture.

XXIX. Take up your Firelocks. 4 Motions.

Turn the Right Foot, on the Heel, to the Right, bringing it over the Butt-end of the Firelock and placing it behind it; at the fame time, turn your Right Hand, with an eafy Motion, to the Right, making an Half-Face with your Body to the Right also. Tell 1, 2, and step forward with the Lest Foot a moderate Pace, taking hold of the Firelock with the Right Hand about the Middle of the Barrel; tell 1, 2, and Raise up yourself and Firelock, bringing back your Lest Foot at the same time to its former Place. Then tell 1, 2, sip your Right Hand up as high as the Muzzle, turning the Barrel towards your Right Shoulder, and at the same time aise up your Right Foot, and place it on the Inside of the Butt; observing the same Position as directed by Explanation 27.

Note, That at the laying down and taking up of the Firelocks, the Soldiers are to hold up their Heads, and keep their Right Knees as stiff as possible; and not step too far with their Lest Feet, that they may with the more ease recover themelves.

XXX. Rest your Firelocks. 3 Motions.

Turn your Right Thumb inwards, and flip your Right Hand down the Barrel, as far as your Arm, without Conftraint, will permit. Tell 1, 2, raife the Firelock with the Right Hand before you, and at the fame time take hold of it with the Left just under the Right; then tell 1, 2, let go your Right Hand and place it under the Cock, stepping back with the Right Foot at the same time. Observe the same Position of Body, Feet, and Firelock as is directed in Explanation 3.

XXXI. Club your Firelocks. 4 Motions.

Keep the Firelock firm in your Left Hand, and cast it about with the Right, bringing up the Right Foot at the same time, and taking hold of the Firelock with your Right Hand as low as you can reach without Constraint, placing the Guard opposite to your Eyes, the Muzzle and Left Thumb

downwards, and the Lock from you; tell 1, 2, let go the Left Hand, and raise the Firelock with your Right opposite to the Left Shoulder, seizing it at the same time with the Left Hand within an Inch of the Muzzle, keeping your Arms stretched out, and the Firelock in a perpendicular Line, with the Butt upwards; tell 1, 2, and bring it to your Left Shoulder with the Lock upwards, keeping your Elbows square. Then tell 1, 2, and quit the Firelock with your Right Hand, bringing it down nimbly to your Right Side, and letting your Left Elbow sall down at the same time; observing the same Position of Body as is directed in shoulder'd Arms.

XXXII. Rest your Firelocks. 4 Motions.

Turn the Firelock with your Left Hand inwards, taking hold of it at the same time with the Right, an handful above the Left, keeping the Elbows square; tell 1, 2, and bring the Firelock with both Hands before the Center of your Body in a perpendicular Line, raising the Butt high, and extending your Arms; tell 1, 2, let go your Left Hand, sinking the Firelock with your Right 'till the Guard comes opposite to your Eyes, seizing it near the Lock at the same time with the Left Hand, the Thumb downwards, and the Right Thumb upwards. Then tell 1, 2, let go the Right Hand, and turn the Firelock with your Left bringing the Butt-end down, and come to your Rest, by placing your Right Hand under the Cock, and at the same time stepping back with your Right Foot.

XXXIII. Secure your Firelocks. 3 Motions.

Come briskly to your Poize. Tell 1, 2, and bring the Firelock opposite to your Lest Shoulder, turning the Barrel outward, and keeping the Muzzle directly up, seizing it at the same time with the Lest Hand about sour Inches above the Cock. Then tell 1, 2, quit your Right Hand, and bring the Firelock with your Lest under your Lest Arm, placing the Lock a little below the Elbow, the Barrel downward, and the Muzzle within a Foot of the Ground.

XXXIV.

Ch

F

the

Fro

Rig

Rig

ou

er,

lac

Rig

Arn

ime

he

, 2

n a

eizi

Mu:

lipp

ind

S

ind

eig

pw

whe

may

Pire

will

lê

n

ve

he in

ng

he

to

th

ht

id,

nd

nd

ith

the

rrel

at

ove

and

m,

IV.

XXXIV. Shoulder your Firelocks. 5 Motions.

Bring the Firelock with a quick Motion before you with the Left Hand, the Muzzle upward, and the Lock to the Front, and at the same time seize it under the Cock with the Right Hand; tell 1, 2, and throw it from you with the Right Hand, letting your Left go at the same time, come to rour Poize; tell 1, 2, bring it opposite to your Left Shoulder, and clap your Left Hand on the Butt; tell 1, 2, and place it on your Left Shoulder; then tell 1, 2, and quit your Right Hand, as is shewn more at large in Explanation 25.

XXXV. Poize your Firelocks. 2 Motions.

This is perform'd as in Explanations 1 and 2.

XXXVI. Rest on your Arms. 3 Motions.

Sink the Firelock with your Right Hand as low as your Arm, without Constraint, will permit, seizing it at the same ime with your Lest Hand about the height of your Chin, the Lest Elbow turn'd out, and the Muzzle upright. Tell 1, 2, quit the Firelock with your Right Hand, and sink it in a perpendicular Line near the Ground with your Lest, seizing it at the same time with your Right Hand near the Muzzle. Then tell 1, 2, and bring the Butt to the Ground, slipping your Lest Hand at the same time up to your Right, and keep your Elbows square.

XXXVII. Draw your Bayonets. 2 Motions.

Seize your Bayonet with your Right Hand; then tell 1, 2, and draw it out briskly, extending your Arm before you the height of your Shoulder, holding the Point of the Bayonet apwards, and your Thumb on the hollow of the Shank, that, when you fix it on the Muzzle, the Notch of the Socket may come even with the Sight of the Barrel.

XXXVIII. Fix your Bayonets. 4 Motions.

Place the Socket of the Bayonet upon the Muzzle of the firelock; tell 1, 2, and thrust it down as far as the Notch will permit you; tell 1, 2, turn the Bayonet from you, and fix

fix it; then tell 1, 2, quit the Handle of the Bayonet, and feize the Firelock just under it with your Right Hand, placing the Palm on the back of the Left.

XXXIX. Rest your Bayonets. 3 Motions.

Raise the Firelock with your Right Hand, in a perpendicular Line as high as your Forehead, and slipping down you Lest at the same time, seize the Firelock about the middle of the Barrel. Tell 1, 2, quit the Firelock with your Right Hand, and raise it with the Lest, turning the Barrel to wards you, and at the same time seize it with your Right Hand under the Lock, observing the same Position as directly by Explanation 7. Then tell 1, 2, and come to your Relation in Explanation 3.

XL. Charge your Bayonets Breast High. 3 Motions.

Bring the Firelock strait up before you as in the Record, with this Difference, that you must turn the Lock outwar in the bringing of it up; tell 1, 2, hold the Firelock fast with the Left Hand, and clap the Palm of the Right on the But end, the Thumb and Barrel pointing to the Right. The tell 1, 2, fall back with the Right Foot a moderate Pace, and in a direct Line behind the Left, and at the fame time come to your Charge, by bringing down the Firelock tot Level, and supporting it with your Lest Arm by raising your Elbow from your Body, the Stock lying between the Left Thumb and Fore-Finger, and the Butt-end in a fil Right Hand, the Thumb on the upper Part of it with the Barrel upwards, and the Bayonet pointing directly to the Front about Breast high. The Right Knee must be ka stiff, and the Toe pointing directly to the Right; but the Left Knee must bend a little forward, with that Toe total Front.

XLI. Push your Bayonets. 2 Motions.

Push your Firelock with both Hands strait forward, with out raising or finking the Point of the Bayonet, bringing the Butt-end before the Lest Breast; then tell 1, 2, and bring back to its former Place.

th

vi

in

ol he Ti

or Bu

ou

Co

Dif

ul

old

, 2

an

E

B

Cell

nd l

T

ana

Ni.

OH

d

是管:字管

Ceff,

ns.

OVC.

Warl

with

Butt-The

Pace, time

to1

ng m

n the

a ful

th the

kept at the

to the

With

ng the

ring &

XLL

XLII. Recover your Arms. 2 Motions.

Seize the Firelock with your Right Hand behind the Cock; then tell 1, 2, and come to your Recover, as in Explanations and 7.

XLIII. Rest your Bayonets on your Left Arms. 2 Motions.

Turn the Lock to the Front; then tell 1, 2, and stepping with the Right Foot to the Right, let go the Lest Hand, inking the Firelock at the same time with the Right, take old of the Cock and Steel with the Lest, the Cock lying on the Middle Finger, and the Steel on the lower Joint of the Thumb, the under part of the Stock resting on the Bend or Middle of the Lest Arm, the Barrel upwards, and the Butt sloping downwards towards the Middle Space between your Thighs, keeping both Hands as low as you can without Constraint. The Butt and Muzzle must be kept at an equal Distance from your Body, the Firelock running in a Triangular Line.

XLIV. Rest your Bayonets. 3 Motions.

Slip your Left Hand, without moving the Firelock, and take old of it above the Lock, placing the Thumb upwards. Tell, 2, and bring the Firelock to a Recover, as in Explanations and 7. Then tell 1, 2, and come briskly to your Rest, as Explanation 3.

XLV. Shoulder your Firelocks. 4 Motions.

Bring your Firelock to your Poize, as in Explanation 24. Tell 1, 2, and clap your Left Hand on the Butt. Tell 1, 2, and lay it on your Left Shoulder. Then tell 1, 2, and bring own your Right Hand, as in Explanation 25 is directed.

XLVI. Present your Arms. 4 Motions.

These four Motions must be perform'd, as is directed in Examation 26.

VOU

45.

and off

and

tio

the

 $T\epsilon$ Ris

TI in

tion

wit Lo

the

XLVII. Face to the Right. 3 Motions.

Bring the Firelock to a Recover, as in Explanation 4. Tell 1, 2, and face on the Left Heel to the Right a Quarter of the Circle, keeping the Firelock recover'd. Then tell 1, 2, and come nimbly to your Rest, stepping back 2

little with the Right Foot, as in Explanation 3.

In the performing of the fecond Motion, which is the Facing, the Soldiers must take care not to move their Left Heels from the Ground, but only to turn on them, that they may keep their Ranks and Files strait; as also to place the Right Feet in a Line with their Left, keeping their Firelock in the true Position of a Recover, 'till they perform the thin Motion, which is the Reft.

XLVIII, XLIX, L. Face to the Right. 3 Motions each.

Each of these Words of Command must be perform'd a Three Motions, as is above directed in Explanation 47; which compleats the Circle in four times.

LI. Face to the Right-about. 3 Motions.

This is perform'd at three Motions, as in the foregoing Explanation, only they face half the Circle to the Right.

LII. To the Left-about as you were. 3 Motions.

This is done on the Left Heel, as in the above Explantion 51, only they face half the Circle to the Left, which brings them to their proper Front.

LIII, LIV, LV, LVI. Face to the Left. 3 Motions each.

These Facings must be perform'd, in the same manner a those to the Right, on the Left Heel; with this Difference only, that they face to the Left.

LVII. To the Left-about. 3 Motions.

This is half the Circle to the Left.

n 4.

uarhen

k a

the Left

they

their ocks

third

da

47;

oing

.

anahich

7 28

ence

90

LVIII. To the Right-about as you were. 3 Motions.

You are to Face half the Circle to the Right, which brings you to your proper Front, and compleats the Facings.

LIX. Poize your Firelocks. 1 Motion.

Come briskly to your Poize, as in Explanations 24 and

LX. Rest on your Arms. 3 Motions.

This must be perform'd as in Explanation 36 is directed.

LXI. Unfix your Bayonets. 3 Motions.

Slip the Bayonet up with your Right Hand; tell 1, 2, and turn it towards you. Then tell 1, 2, and flip it quite off of the Muzzle, thrusting it from you at the same time, and holding it in that Position, as is shewn in the second Motion of Explanation 37.

LXII. Return your Bayonets. 4 Motions.

Turn the Point of the Bayonet down, bringing it between the Firelock and your Body, and entering the Scabbard. Tell 1, 2, and thrust it quite in. Tell 1, 2, and bring your Right Hand before you a little to the Right of your Firelock. Then tell 1, 2, and seize the Firelock near the Muzzle, as in the third Motion of Explanation 36 is directed.

LXIII. Poize your Firelocks. 3 Motions.

The first Motion is perform'd as directed by the first Motion of Explanation 39. Tell 1, 2, and raise the Firelock with your Lest Hand, seizing it at the same time under the Lock with the Right, keeping the Lock outward. Then tell 1, 2, and come to your Poize, by thrusting it from you with the Right Hand, and dropping your Lest.

LXIV. Shoulder your Firelocks. 3 Motions.

This is perform'd as in Explanation 25.

th

pi

th

th na

in th

G B

be

10

ye lio

ON Pe

to

T

VO

H

When the Battalion is to make Ready at thru Words of Command, it is to be perform'd in the following Manner.

I. Make Ready.

At this they are to perform all that is contain'd in the first four Words of Command of the Manual Exercise.

II. Present.

At this Command they are only to perform what has rected by the fifth Word of Command of the faid Exercise.

III. Give Fire.

This is perform'd as in Explanation 6 is directed; the which they are to go on with the Exercise 'till they have prim'd and loaded, and when they come to the Shouldering of the Firelock they are to finish, which includes the twenty fifth Word of Command.

The End of the Manual Exercise of the Foot.



CHAP. III.

The Granadier Exercise, with an Explanation, beginning when they are under Arms, viz. the Firelock Shoulder'd.



HE Granadiers must observe the same Directions, for the Position under Arms, as are given to those of the Battalion: But they having an Occasion for Match for their Granades, the Match must be placed in the Lest Hand, on End of it betwixt the first and second Fingers.

and the other between the two last, both Ends standing a Finger's Length above the Back of the Hand. The rest of

the Match is to hang down by the Infide of the Butt-end of the Firelock. The Match is not to be lighted without ex-

press Orders for it.

H

ree

171

fire

50

ife.

after

have

ering

rentr

tion,

the

Dire-

re graving

s, the

one igen,

ng 1

of of

the

When the Granadiers stand in a Body with the Men of the Battalion, they must then perform the same Motions that they do, because they do not then meddle with their Granades; and, consequently, there must be no Difference either in the Time or Motions of the Exercise of the Granadiers, and those of the Battalion, except in the Use of the Slings and Granades: I shall therefore refer to the Explanation of the Battalion Exercise, except in those Things which peculiarly belong to the Granadiers.

WORDS of COMMAND.

Granadiers, take Care.

Tho' this is not reckon'd a Word of Command, but only look'd upon as a Warning, to prepare them for the Exercise; yet (whenever the Granadiers Exercise apart from the Battalion) they have annex'd two Motions to it, which, it must be own'd, have a very good Essect, both on the Spectators and Performers, by preparing the latter to go thro' their Exercise with Life, Vigor, and Exactness, in which the principal Beauty of Exercise consists. The Motions are as follows: First, the Granadiers bring up their Right Hands briskly, to the Front of their Caps. Then tell 1, 2, and bring them down with a Slap on their Pouches, with all the Life imaginable; in which Motions, neither their Heads, Bodies, nor Firelocks are to move.

I. Join your Right Hands to your Firelocks. 1 Motion.

This is perform'd as in Explanation 1, of the Foot Exercise.

II. Poize your Firelocks. 1 Motion.

As in Explanation 2.

III. Join your Left Hands to your Firelocks.

2 Motions.

This is done as in Explanation 3; with this Difference, that you must take the Sling in your Lest Hand at the same time you seize the Firelock, placing it between the Stock and your Hand.

D 2

IV. Cock

IV. Cock your Firelocks. 2 Motions. As in Explanation 4

V. Present. 1 Motion. As in Explanation 5.

VI. Fire. As in Explanation 6.

VII. Recover your Arms. 1 Motion. As in Explanation 7.

VIII. Handle your Slings. 2 Motions.

Turn the Firelock with both Hands 'till the Lock come outwards, without changing any other part of your Position. Then tell 1, 2, step out with your Right Foot to the Right, placing it a moderate Pace from the Lest, and, at the same time, quitting the Firelock with the Lest Hand, extend your Sling to the Lest, the Thumb upwards, keeping the Sling in a Line with the Firelock; and remain so 'till the next Command.

IX. Sling your Firelocks. 3 Motions.

Bring the Sling with the Left Hand opposite to the Right Shoulder, and the Firelock with the Right Hand opposite to the Left Shoulder, by croffing of both Hands at the same time, bringing the Left Hand within the Right, keeping the Muzzle directly up, the Barrel to the Left, and the Right Hand just under the Left Elbow. Tell 1, 2, bend the Firelock back, and bring the Sling over your Head, placing it just a bove your Right Shoulder, and the Firelock opposite to the Point of the Left. Then tell 1, 2, draw the Sling with your Left Hand, and let go the Firelock with the Right at the same time, that it may hang by the Sling on the Right Shoulder, the Muzzle upwards, and dropping both Hands down by your Sides at the same Instant of time.

X. Handle your Matches. 3 Motions.

Bring both Hands directly before you with Half-stretch'dout Arms, about the Height of your Shoulders, taking hold of the lower End of the Match at the same time with the Right Hand, placing the Thumb under, and the two Forsingers above. Tell 1, 2, and bring the Match with the Right Hand over the back of the Left, placing it between the Thumb K

Ch

Th

yard

time

out y Shou clap here

nd he ' till t

Gran and or rour

Cother

Br hen ack

> X M

ligh he R t th

vell ing ing Thumb and two Fore-fingers of the said Hand. Then tell 1, 2, thrust out your Lest Hand with the Match straight forward, by extending the Arm at sull Length, and at the same time bring your Right Hand down to your Right Side.

XI. Handle your Granades. 3 Motions.

Keep your Left Hand extended to the Front, as before, and Face nimbly to the Right on the Left Heel, stretching out your Right Arm, at the same time, the Height of your Shoulder, pointing directly to the Rear. Tell 1, 2, and clap your Right Hand briskly on your Pouch, seizing (if there should be Occasion) your Granade. Then tell 1, 2, and bring up your Right Hand to its former Position, placing the Thumb against the Fuze, and continue in this Position till the following Word of Command.

XII. Open your Fuze. 3 Motions.

Keep your Left Hand extended to the Front, and bring the Granade with your Right Hand to your Mouth. Tell 1, 2, and open the Fuze with your Teeth. Then tell 1, 2, thrust your Arm nimbly from you to its former Place.

XIII. Guard your Fuze. 1 Motion.

Cover the Fuze with your Thumb, without making any ther Motion.

XIV. Blow your Matches. 2 Motions.

Bring the Match with your Left Hand before your Mouth; hen tell 1, 2, and blow it off with a strong Blast, thrusting ack your Hand, at the same time, to its former Place.

XV. Fire and Throw your Granades. 3 Motions.

Meet the Granade with your Left Hand, opposite to your light Thigh, inclining your Body to the Right Side, bending the Right Knee, and keeping the Left stiff, and fire the Fuze the same time. Tell 1, 2, slowly, that the Fuze may be well lighted, and throw the Granade with a stiff Arm, steping forward, at the same time, with the Right Foot, plaing it in a Line with the Left, extending both Arms in a di-

D 2

rect

'dold

the

re-

the

the mb

III

14

ma

ion,

ght,

ame

Out

-inc

gh

e to

the

and

ock ta-

the our

me

ler,

by

Ct

Fir

tell

on

the wit

2

2

2

2

2

3

3

3

3

3

3

3

3

3

3 4

4

4

4

4

48

49

50

51

53 54

55

56

rect Line to the Front, keeping the Left uppermost, and the Body upright. Then tell 1, 2, and bring your Right Hand down to your Side, keeping your Left in its former Position.

XVI. Return your Matches. 3 Motions.

Bring both Hands before you, as directed by the first Motion of Explanation 10. Tell 1, 2, and bring the Match back to its former Place, between the two last Fingers of the Lest Hand. Then tell 1, 2, and let both Hands fall down by your Sides.

XVII, Handle your Slings. 3 Motions.

Seize the Sling with both Hands at the same time, taking hold of it with the Right Hand about the middle, and as low as you can reach, without bending your Body, with the Lest Tell 1, 2, and with the Lest Hand bring the Butt forward, slipping your Lest Elbow under the Firelock, by bringing of it between the Firelock and the Sling; take hold of the Firelock, at the same time, with the Lest Hand, letting the Stock lie between the Thumb and the Fore-singer, the Butt-end pointing a little to the Lest with the Barrel upwards. Then tell 1, 2, bring the Firelock to lie on the Lest Shoulder, and the Sling on the Right, the Barrel upwards, and the Butt-end pointing directly to the Front, keeping the Firelock to a true Level.

XVIII. Poize your Firelocks. 4 Motions.

Bring the Sling over your Head with the Right Hand, and the Firelock strait before you with the Lest, the Muzzle upright, and the Barrel turn'd to the Front. Tell 1, 2, and cast the Sling, briskly, with your Right Hand towards the Lest, between the Firelock and your Body, turning the Lock outwards, at the same time, with your Lest Hand. Tell 1, 2, and place your Right Hand under the Cock, the Thumb upwards. Then tell 1, 2, and thrust the Firelock from you to your Poize, letting the Lest Hand sall down to your Side.

XIX. Half Cock your Firelocks. 3 Motions.

Seize the Firelock with your Left Hand, turning the Barrel towards you, as in Explanation 3, Tell 1, 2, bring the Firelock Firelock close to your Breast, and half-bend the Cock. Then tell 1, 2, and thrust the Firelock from you, as in Explanation 8 of the Battalion Exercise.

Note, As the rest of the Exercise is the same with that of the Battalion, I shall only set down the Words of Command

with the Explanations refer'd to.

20. Handle your Primers. Explanation 9.

21. Prime. Explan. 10.

e

n

W ft.

d,

of

re-

ck

nd

en nd

tt-02

ind

ip-

ind

the

ock

1,

mb

70u

le.

21-

the

ock

- 22. Shut your Pans. Explan. 11.
- 23. Cast about to Charge. Explan. 12.
- 24. Handle your Cartridges. Explan. 13,
- 25. Open your Cartridges. Explan. 14,
- 26. Charge with Cartridge. Explan. 15.
- 27. Draw your Rammers. Explan. 16.
- 28. Shorten your Rammers. Explan. 17.
- 29. Put them in the Barrel. Explan. 18.
- 30. Ram down your Charge. Explan. 19.
- 31. Recover your Rammers. Explan. 20.
- 32. Shorten your Rammers. Explan. 21.
- 33. Return your Rammers. Explan. 22.
- 34. Your Right Hands under the Locks. Explan. 23.
- 35. Poize your Firelocks. Explan. 24.
- 36. Shoulder your Firelocks. Explan. 25.
- 37. Rest your Firelocks. Explan. 26.
- 38. Order your Firelocks. Explan. 27.
- 39. Ground your Firelocks. Explan. 28.
- 40. Take up your Firelocks. Explan. 29.
- 41. Rest your Firelocks. Explan. 30.
- 42. Club your Firelocks. Explan. 31.
- Explan. 32. 43. Rest your Firelocks.
- Explan. 33. 44. Secure your Firelocks.
- 45. Shoulder your Firelocks. Explan. 34.
- Explan. 35. 46. Poize your Firelocks.
- 47. Rest on your Arms. Explan. 36.
- 48. Draw your Bayonets. Explan. 37.
- Explan. 38. 49. Fix your Bayonets.
- 50. Rest your Bayonets. Explan. 39.
- Explan. 40. 51. Charge your Bayonets Breast High.
- 52. Push your Bayonets. Explan. 41. 53. Recover your Arms. Explan. 42.
- 54. Rest your Bayonets on your Left Arms. Explan. 43.
- 55. Rest your Bayonets. Explan. 44.
- 56, Shoulder your Firelocks. Explan. 45.

Cł

o W

Sol

bee Ne

wh der

fine

of

cers

Fil

Sile

are In

the

57. To the Front Present your Arms. Explanation 46.

58. Face to the Right.

Explan. 47. 59. To the Right. 60. To the Right.

61. To the Right.

62. To the Right-about. 63. To the Left-about as you were. Explan. 51, and 52,

64. Face to the Left, 4 times, &c.

65. Poize your Firelocks. Explan. 59.

66. Rest on your Arms. Explan. 60. Explan. 61. 67. Unfix your Bayonets.

68. Return your Bayonets. Explan. 62.

69. Poize your Firelocks. Explan, 63. 70. Shoulder your Eirelocks. Explan. 64.

The Granadiers having Diffinct Words of Command for the Firing and Throwing of their Granades, befides those which are given to the Battalion when they make Ready at Three Words of Command; I shall therefore set them down in the Order as they are to follow:

Take Heed to make Ready and Fire at Three Words of Command.

I. Make Ready.

This must be done by performing the Motions from Explanation Ist to the 4th inclusive.

II. Present. As in Explanation 5.

III. Give Fire. As in Explanation 6.

After which, they are to perform the Motion of the 7th Word of Command, which is the Recover, and Remain to 'till the following Command is given:

Take Care to Fire and Throw your Granades at three Words of Command.

I. Make Ready.

This must be done by performing all the Motions in the Granadier Exercise, from Explanation 8th to the 13th inclusive.

II. Blow

U. Blow your Matches. As in Explanation 14th of the faid Exercise.

III. Fire and throw your Granades.

This is done as in Explanation 15. After which they are to go on with the Exercise 'till they have perform'd the 36th Word of Command.

The End of the Manual Exercise of the Granadiers.



CHAP. IV.

Evolutions of the Foot.

TO

L

2,

for

at WD

X-

7th fo

the

in-

OW

HE Evolutions of the Foot, which were formerly practifed, being found not only of very little Use, but likewise of such a Length, that they had not time to perform the more Essential Parts of the Service, (the Firings) without over-fatiguing the

Soldiers: for which Reason, the greatest Part of them have been Disused, and only Such retained as are thought absolutely Necessary: I shall therefore insert no more of them here than what were practis'd by the Foot during the late War in Flanders. But if any one is desirous to see the Whole, he may find them in a Book of Exercise Printed in 1690, by Order of King WILLIAM and Queen MARY.

Note, When the Evolutions are to be perform'd, the Officers are to be at their Posts of Exercise in the Rear, and the

Files open.

Have a Care to perform your Evolutions.

As foon as this Notice is given, there must be a prosound Silence observed throughout the Battalion; and the Soldiers are immediately to straiten their Ranks and Files; thus: In order to straiten their Ranks, they must take care that they are exactly in a Line with those on their Right and Lest,

Ch

car

Lel

wh

that

the

the

kin

for. Ste

bef

wh

Co

the

as

and

the

ma

by

and to place themselves in such a Position, that neither the Head nor Body is seen before or behind the one the other. Their Heels must be placed in a strait Line, without which the Ranks can never be brought even. To straiten the File, those in the Front Rank are to divide the Ground equally between them, and those of the other five Ranks, who stand in File, must always stand with their Faces against or opposite to the middle of the Neck of their File-Leader. They are all to carry the Firelocks firm upon their Shoulders, and to raise the Muzzles high, that they may not touch or class against one another in their Facings.

These Directions must be observed as a standing Rule, since they are to do it after the performing of every Word of Command, if there is an Occasion, without any further Order for so doing from the Major, or Officer, who Exercises the

Battalion.

I. Rear Half-Files, to the Right Double your Front.—March.

The three last, or Rear Ranks, (which are the Fourth, Fifth, and Sixth) are to march up and double the Front Half-Files to the Right, thus: The Fourth Rank double into the First, the Fifth into the Second, and the Sixth into the Third.

Upon the Word, March, being given (between which, and the other part of the Word of Command, there should be a considerable Stop or Pause made, that the Men may have time to Reslect on what they are order'd to Perform) the fore-mentioned Ranks are to step at once forward with their Lest Feet, marching slowly, and counting their twelve Paces, which last Pace brings them to the Right of those they are to double.

They are to march very flow, and take great care that the Whole move like one Man; which they may eafily do, by keeping Time in the lifting up and fetting down of the fame Feet together, as is more fully explain'd in the 4th Article,

Chapter I. on Opening of Files.

In order to keep their Ranks even in marching, they must always cast their Eyes to the Right and Lest, but more particularly to the Right, without turning their Heads; which, is observed, will facilitate their keeping an equal Pace with one another, and thereby render the Performance regular and beautiful.

They

They are to march with their Heads and Bodies upright, carrying their Arms high and firm on their Shoulders.

In all Movements to the Front, they are to begin with the

Left Feet.

V.

the

er.

ich

pe-

in

lite are

to

100

mers

th,

nt

les

th

ch,

97

he

eir a-

cy

he

by

ne

le,

ıft

tiif

ne

nd

y

These Directions must be look'd upon as standing Rules, which will save me the trouble of Repeating, and the Reader that of hearing the same thing over again.

II. To the Left as you were.

The Ranks that Doubled, Face at once to the Left on their Right Heels, by stepping Half a Pace backwards with the Left Feet, and stand thus 'till the following Command,

III. March.

The fore-mention'd Half-Files lift up their Left Feet, making the Half-Pace a Whole one, and march back to their former Ground, their Right Feet making the 12th and last Step, which they are to set down in the same Place they were before, keeping their Left Feet a little behind their Right, in which Position they are to remain 'till the following Word of Command.

IV. Halt.

The foresaid Half-Files are to Face to the Right-about, on their Right Heels, and immediately dress their Ranks and Files, as above directed.

V. Rear Half-Files, to the Left double your Front.—March.

The foresaid Half-Files step forward with their Lest Feet, and double to the Lest of their Leaders, as they did before to the Right; and to observe the same Directions in their marching, as are given in Explanation 1.

VI. To the Right as you were.

Those who doubled, Face to the Right on their Lest Heels, by stepping Half a Pace backwards with their Right Feet.

C

on

wh Fai

Fil

Lei

Re

the

clo fan

Ba

Le

He

.

and

rec

tha or 1

faid tho

Th the

Rig

that

VII. March.

The said Half-Files list up their Right Feet, making the Half Pace a Whole one, and march to their former Ground; their Lest Feet making the 12th and last Pace, which they are to set down in the same Place they were before, keeping their Right Feet a little behind their Lest; in which Position they are to remain 'till the sollowing Word of Command.

VIII. Halt.

The foresaid Half-Files Face to the Lest-about on the Lest Heels, and straiten their Ranks and Files.

IX. Front Half-Files, to the Right double your Rear.

The First, Second and Third Ranks Face to the Rightabout on their Right Heels, and stand thus ready to march and double at the following Command.

X. March.

Those who Faced, step at once towards the Rear, with their Right Feet, marching slowly 'till the Third Rank doubles into the Sixth, the Second into the Fifth, and the First into the Third; and by counting of 12 Paces, their lest Feet makes the last, which they are to place by the Right Feet of those they double, Facing sull to the Lest of the Battalion, and the Muzzle of their Firelocks (which they are to carry high on this Occasion) pointing in a Line to the Right, and to remain so 'till the following Command.

XI. Halt.

The foresaid Front Half-Files Face to the Right on their Left Heels, by falling back with their Right Feet.

XII. Front Half-Files, as you were. -- March.

The Half-Files that doubled step forward with their Lest Feet, and march slowly, in 12 Paces, to their former Ground, taking care to place their Heels in those Places they stood d;

ire en

ey

CI

rch

ith

ink the

left ght

at-

to

ht,

rise

eft nd,

ood

On

on before; (which will be easily perceived, particularly where the Left Heel was, by its being marked in the former Facings) after which they are to straiten their Ranks and Files.

XIII. Front Half-Files, to the Left double your Rear.

The foresaid Half-Files Face to the Lest-about on their Lest Heels, and stand ready to March on the following Command.

XIV. March.

Those who Faced step with their lest Feet towards the Rear, and, counting 12 Paces, march slowly 'till they come to the Lest of those they Doubled before to the Right; and their right Feet making the last Step, they are to place them close to the lest Feet of those they Double, turning, at the same time, their Faces and Bodies sull to the Right of the Battalion, and the Muzzle of their Firelocks pointing to the Lest, remaining in that Position 'till the sollowing Command.

XV. Halt.

The foresaid Half-Files Face to the Lest on their right Heels, by falling back with their lest Feet.

XVI. Front Half-Files, as you were, March.

The foresaid Half-Files step forward with their left Feet, and March to their former Ground, as in Explan. 12 is directed.

Note, As the Foot are always to be drawn up three deep, that is, in three Ranks, when they are to go upon Action, or thro' their Firings; the Use of the Doubling of the fore-said Front and Rear Half-Files, is self-evident; since it is by those Movements that a Battalion is brought from Six to Three Deep, and therefore necessary for the Men to perform them now and then.

XVII. Half-Ranks, to the Right Double your Files by Division.

As every Division is sub-divided into two, the Half on the Right of each Division is called the Right Half-Ranks, and that on the Left, is the Left Half-Ranks.

At

Ch

ther

nen out a

>

1

1

ther

whi ther

to t who

L

Do

Hee

righ

-

and

pofi a () left

thei

Rai

larg

to

ma

o th

At this Word of Command, the Left Half-Ranks Facen the Right on their Left Heels.

XVIII. March.

The Half-Ranks that Faced lift up their left Feet together, and step in a direct Line to the Rear a moderate Pace; after which, they are to Face together to the Left on their left Heels, and then March, beginning with their left Feet, in strait Line to the Right, 'till the Right-hand Men of thok who double come opposite to the Right-hand Men that Stood at which they are all to Stand; taking care to place the left Feet foremost, and directly in a Line with the left Feet of those whom they are to Double, looking full to the Right of the Battalion.

XIX. Halt.

The forefaid Half-Ranks Face to the Left on their kn Heels; and immediately straiten their Ranks and Files.

XX. Half Ranks that Doubled, to the Left as you were.

The forefaid Half-Ranks Face to the Left on their left Heels; and remain so 'till the following Word of Command.

XXI. March.

Those who Faced lift up their left Feet together, and march in a strait Line to the Left, 'till they come opposite to the Ground they first stood on; at which they are to make a short Stand, and to Face at once nimbly to the Right on their right Heels; after which they are to make another short Stand and then march forward, beginning with their left Feet, into their former Ground.

I believe it is unnecessary to mention the Care which must be taken, that the Soldiers all Face at the same time, lift up and fet down the same Feet, and begin and end their March together, after what has been already faid on that Subject; but unless these Things are punctually observed, the Beauty of the Evolutions will be loft, by their appearing confused and irregular; whereas, on the contrary, when they are perform'd in exact Time, they have not only an admirable Effect on the Spectators, but likewise on the Performers, by preparing to

ner,

fter

left

Ma 10fe

od, her

gh

left

re.

ind,

rch

the

nort

neir nd,

nto

uft

up

rch

et;

7 of

and

n'd

on

ing m, them, in such a manner, for the performing of every Movement that may be required in Service, that the Orders, without any Difficulty, are executed as soon as given.

XXII. Half Ranks, to the Left Double your Files by Division.

The Right Half-Ranks, or those who Stood, Face at once the Lest on their right Heels.

XXIII. March.

The Half-Ranks who Faced lift up their right Feet together, and step a moderate Pace directly to the Rear; after which they are to Face to the Right on their right Heels, and then march, beginning with their right Feet, in a strait Line to the Lest, 'till they come opposite to the Lest-hand Men who Stand, placing their right Feet foremost and directly in a Line with the right Feet of those Men whom they are to Double, looking full to the Lest of the Battalion.

XXIV. Halt.

The forefaid Half-Ranks Face to the Right on their right Heels, and immediately straiten their Ranks and Files.

XXV. To the Right as you were.

The Half-Ranks that Doubled, Face to the Right on their right Heels.

XXVI. March.

The foresaid Half-Ranks step at once with their right Feet, and March in a strait Line to the Right 'till they come opposite to the Ground they Stood on before, and then making a short Stand they are to Face nimbly to the Lest on their lest Heels, and after a short Pause they are to March up to their former Ground.

Ranks Doubling of Files may be perform'd by the Half-Ranks of the whole Battalion, the Use of which was to enlarge the Intervals to make room for Battalions or Squadrons to pass thro' them; but as the Doubling of the Files in that manner in time of Action would take up too much Time,

Cl

Wa

the

wh

nei

Ci

Ci

Ri

He

ani

2

O

CO

but

W Su

WZ

tin

w

Li

fer

inc

ed,

to hig

200

W

they have fallen upon a quicker and more safe way of doing it, by wheeling back two or three Platoons, or as many a are requisite; and as soon as the Troops have passed, the Platoons are immediately wheel'd up again; for which Resson the Doubling of the Half-Ranks of the whole Battalian hath been disused, by being found of no Service. But as the Half-Ranks of every Division Doubling their Files is of singular Use, in the Marching of any Number of Troops, for the passing of Defiles, Bridges or Passes not broad enough to contain the Front of a Division entire, they are then to March off by Half-Ranks, as is above shewn, by the Doubling; and as soon as they have passed, they are to move up again: for which Reason they have been continued in the Evolutions now practised.

After the Doubling of the Half-Ranks, the Officers are to be order'd to take their Posts in the Front of the Battalion.

XXVII. To the Right and Left, Close your Files to the Center by Division.

Each Division Faces to the Right and Lest inwards to a Center, thus: The Right Half-Ranks Face to the Lest on their right Heels, and the Lest Half-Ranks to the Right on their lest Heels, the Half-Ranks of each Division Facing one another. The Officers are to Face with the Men, and on the same Feet they do, according as they are posted on the Right or Lest Half-Ranks.

XXVIII. March.

At this Word of Command, the Officers and Soldiers and to lift up their Feet together, beginning with those they Faced on, and Marching slowly towards the Center of each Division, they are to Close within half a Pace of one another, and then stand, placing the Feet foremost they Faced on.

The Officers and Serjeants are to March and keep and qual Pace with the Files opposite to them, and to stand who

they do.

XXIX. Halt.

At this Command, they are all to come nimbly to their proper Front on the Heels they before Faced on, viz. The right Half-Ranks on their right Heels, and the others on their left Heels.

XXX.

IV

loin

ny a

Rea

alion

s the

fin-

, for

th to

e un

the

re to

n.

3

013

00

00

cing

2M

00

an

cad

W-

er,

6

en

ζ.

XXX. Rear Ranks, Close to your Front, March.

The Front Rank Stands, the other five step at once forward with their left Feet, and, Marching very slow, Close their Ranks within a Pace of one another, and then stand.

Before we proceed to the following Words of Command, which are for Wheeling, it will be proper to lay down ge-

neral Rules for the performing of them.

General Rules for Wheeling.

The Circle is Divided into four equal Parts.

Wheeling to the Right or Left, is only a Quarter of the Circle.

Wheeling to the Right or Left-about, is one Half of the Circle.

When you Wheel to the Right, you are to Close to the Right so near as to touch your right-hand Man, (but without pressing him) and to look to the Lest (without turning the

Head) in order to bring the Rank about even.

When you Wheel to the Left, you are to Close to the Left

and look to the Right, as above directed.

This Rule will ferve for all Wheeling by Ranks; as when a Battalion is Marching by Sub-divisions with their Ranks Open, then each Rank Wheels distinctly by its self when it comes to the Ground on which the Rank before it Wheel'd, but not before.

It will likewise serve as a Rule for the Front Rank in all Wheelings, whether that of the whole Battalion, or Grand or Sub-divisions: But the Rear Ranks, when they are Clos'd forward, being to Wheel directly in the Rear of, and at the same time with, the Front Rank, must incline a little to the Lest when they Wheel to the Right, in order to keep directly in a Line with their File-Leaders. The same Rule must be observed by the Rear Ranks when they Wheel to the Lest, by inclining a little to the Right, for the Reason above-mentioned, that of keeping in a Line with their File-Leaders.

In Wheeling, the Men are to take particular Care neither to Open nor Close their Ranks, and to carry their Firelocks

high and firm on their Shoulders.

In Wheeling, the Motion of each Man is quicker or flower, according to the Diftance he is from the Right or Left, thus: When you wheel to the Right, each Man moves quicker

Ct

the

Th

of t

brir

1

one

ther

Circ

that

lid t

than his Right-hand Man; and in Wheeling to the Left, each moves quicker than his Left-hand Man; the Circle that every Man Wheels being larger, according to the Diffance he is from the Hand he Wheels to, as may be feen by describing of several Circles within one another at three Foot Diffance from each, which is the Space every Man is supposed to take up.

XXXI. To the Right Wheel by Division, March.

At this Command, they all step forward with their life Feet, and Wheel to the Right a Quarter of the Circle.

The Right-hand Man of the Front Rank of every Division must turn on his Right Heel, without taking it out of it Place; and casting his Eye to the Lest, without turning his Head, bring his Body and lest Foot about with the Rank according as it moves quicker or slower. All the Men in the Front Rank are to cast their Eyes to the Lest in the same manner, that they may neither advance before nor keep behind their Lest-hand Men; but to govern their Steps in such a manner, that by adding to or abating from them, they may keep their Bodies in a direct Line with the Lest-hand Man of their Division; by the due Observance of which Rule, the Front Rank will be always kept strait in Wheeling, and consequently, contribute a great deal towards the Rank Ranks doing the same; but unless the Front Rank Wheel strait, is is impossible that the Rear Ranks should.

Let them observe further, as directed by the general Rules

for Wheeling.

All Wheelings are to be done flow; and even those Men on the extream Part of the Ranks, are not to exceed a moderate Pace.

The Officers are to Wheel on the Head of their feveral Divisions, and the Serjeants on the Flanks and in the Rear.

As foon as the Divisions have Wheel'd a Quarter of the Circle, the Major is to proceed to the next Word of Command.

XXXII. Halt.

At this they are to Stand, and immediately Dress their Ranks and Files.

XXXIII.

V.

eft,

that unce

Cri-

Di-

olal

left

its

his nk,

the me

be.

uch nay

of the

nd, ear

zb

les

en

10-

72

he

n-

elf

I.

XXXIII. To the Right Wheel, March.

All the Divisions Wheel a Quarter of the Circle again to the Right, which brings the Battalion to Face to the Rear. The Directions in Explan. 31, must be punctually observed.

XXXIV. Halt. As in Explan. 32.

XXXV. To the Right Wheel, March.

As in Explan. 31, and 33; by which they Face to the Left of the Battalion.

XXXVI. Halt. As in Explan. 32, and 34.

XXXVII. To the Right Wheel, March.

This Wheel compleats the Circle at four times, and brings them to their proper Front.

XXXVIII. Halt. As in Explan. 32, is directed.

XXXIX. Wheel to the Right-about, March.

By this Word of Command, all the Divisions are to Wheel one half of the Circle to the Right.

XL. Halt. As in Explan. 32.

XLI. Wheel to the Right-about, March.

This Wheel compleats the Circle at Twice, and brings them to their proper Front.

XLII. Halt. As in Explan. 32.

XLIII. To the Left Wheel, March.

The Divisions are to Wheel to the Lest a Quarter of the Circle, as they did before to the Right; with this Difference, that the Lest-hand Man of the Front Rank of each Division must keep his lest Heel in its Place (as the Right-hand Men did their right Heels when they Wheel'd to the Right) and,

C

A

they

perf

am

the

ther

beau

And

wha it, stitu

Div

as not

Me

7

Clo

and to t

lock Fro

7

Ran Pace

bas third

Mai the

12,

Ran

of fi

flan

If

ther

by casting his Eye to the Right, bring his Body and right Fox about with the Rank, according as it shall move quick or slow.

All the Men of the Front Rank are to cast their Eyes to the Right, as they did before to the Lest, and for the same Reason, to keep their Bodies in a strait Line with the Righthand Man, that the Rank may be kept even in Wheeling.

The Rear Ranks are to incline a little to the Right who they Wheel to the Left; (as they did to the Left when the Wheel'd to the Right) observing further as in Explan. 31.1 directed, as also the general Rules for Wheeling.

XLIV. Halt. As in Explan. 32.

XLV. To the Left Wheel, March. As in Expl. 43. is directed XLVI. Halt. As in Explan. 32.

XLVII. To the Left Wheel, March. As in Explan. 43.

XLVIII. Halt. As in Explan. 32.

XLIX. To the Left Wheel, March.

As in Explan. 43. which compleats the Circle at four time.

L. Halt. As in Explan. 32.

LI. Wheel to the Left-about, March.

This Wheel is one Half of the Circle to the Left,

LII. Halt. As in Explan. 32.

LIII. Wheel to the Left-about, March.

This Wheel brings the Divisions to their proper Front, and compleats all the Wheelings that are now practis'd in the Evolutions.

When you would shorten them, it may be done by Wheding only twice to the Right, and then to the Right-about, and the same to the Left.

4

oct

10

s to

ame

ght.

hen

he

1.1

tei

and

the

Ind

V.

LIV. Halt. As in Explan. 32.

As the leaving of Intervals between the Divisions, when they are to Wheel, is never done upon Service, but always perform'd with them Closed within a Pace of one another, I am at a loss to know the Reason why it is not done so in the Evolutions; since the performing of it this way is altogether as easy as the other, and, in my Opinion, much more beautiful, by having a greater Resemblance of real Service: And as no other Part of the Evolutions is now practis'd, but what is of real Use upon Action, or to form a Battalion for it, the same Rule holds for the laying this aside also, and sub-stituting the other in its room, that of Wheeling with the Divisions Closed to their proper Distance. This I only offer as my Opinion; but lest my Notion should be wrong, I did not insert it in the Evolutions, as may be seen by the above Method.

LV. Rear Ranks, to the Right-about as you were.

The Front Rank Stands. The other Five, which had Closed Forward, Face to the Right-about on their left Heels, and wait for the following Word of Command to march back to their former Distance.

The Second Rank must raise the Muzzle of their Fire-locks very high, that they may not clash against those of the Front Rank in Facing.

LVI. March.

They are to begin with the Feet they Faced on, the Rear Rank moving first; and when they have Marched three Paces, the fifth Rank is to begin; and as soon as that Rank has March'd three Paces, the sourth Rank is to move; the third and second Ranks observing the same Rule, are all to March slowly, each Rank counting the following Paces, viz. the Rear or Sixth Rank to March 15 Paces, the Fifth Rank 12, the Fourth Rank 9, the Third Rank 6, and the Second Rank 3 Paces, which brings them all to their former Distance of sour Paces between each Rank; after which they are to stand, placing the left Feet foremost.

If the lifting up and setting down of the same Feet together is duly observed, they will all come to their Ground at the same Instant of Time.

E 3

LVII.

LVII. Halt.

The foresaid Ranks Face to the Lest-about on their lest Heels, and immediately straiten their Ranks and Files.

LVIII. Files, to the Right and Left Outwards, Open to your former Distance.

The Right Half-Ranks of every Division Face to the Right on their left Heels, and the Left Half-Ranks Face to the Left on their right Heels; by which Facing, the Half-Ranks of

every Division stand Back to Back.

The Officers are to Face as the Half-Ranks do on which they are posted, thus. Those on the Right Half-Ranks Face to the Right, and those on the Lest Half-Ranks Face to the Lest, all doing it on the same Feet and at the same Time with the Soldiers. If there are three Officers on a Division, those in the Center of the Divisions stand still without Facing. The Serjeants are to follow the same Directions.

LIX. March.

The Right and Left-hand File of each Division lift up the Feet they Faced on together, and March slowly to their former Ground, and then Stand, placing the same Feet formost, which are those next the Front.

No File is to move 'till the File before it has got to its proper Distance. See the Directions for the Opening of Files in the fourth Article of the first Chapter; to which I shall

likewise refer the Officers for theirs.

LX. Halt.

At this Word of Command, both Officers and Soldien Face to their proper Front. The Half-Ranks on the Right Face to the Left on their left Heels, and the Half-Ranks on the Left Face to the Right on their right Heels, and immediately straiten their Ranks and Files.

LXI. Rest your Firelocks. As in Expl. 26, of the Foot Exercise.

LXII. Order your Firelocks. As in Explan. 27.

LXIII. Ground your Firelocks. As in Explan. 28.

LXIV.

F

2

d

t

0

1

b

n

P

t

2

2

ti

V

left

ight

Left

soi

hich

ace

the

with

ion,

ing.

the

for-

ore-

o its

iles

hall

iers ght

on edi-

ife.

V.

LXIV. Face to the Right-about.

They all Face to the Right-about on their Left Heels, and wait for the following Command.

LXV. March.

At this they are to lift up their left Feet together, and March between the Files of Arms 'till they have got beyond the Rear Rank; after which they are not oblig'd to keep their Ranks and Files, but may mix with one another: however they must do it in such a manner, that they may be ready to repair to their Arms on the first Order; which may be done by Beat of Drum, or any other Signal, as the Commanding Officer shall think proper.

The Officers are not to March to the Rear with the Men; but after they have fix'd their Half-Pikes in the Ground, they

may walk about in the Front.

The Enfigns are to do the same with the Colours, and to place one of the Men, with his Sword drawn, Centinel over them. The Serjeants are likewise to fix their Halbards in the Ground.

LXVI. To your Arms.

As foon as this Word of Command is given, the Men are all to run to their Arms, Drawing their Swords and holding them in their right Hands with the Points up.

The Officers are to repair to their Posts at the same time.

LXVII. Return your Swords. 3 Motions.

They are to turn the Point of their Swords downwards, and, looking to the Left, enter them in the Scabbards. Tell 1, 2, and thrust them quite in. Then tell 1, 2, and bring their right Hands back to their right Sides.

LXVIII. Take up your Firelocks.

As in Explan. 29. of the Foot Exercise.

LXIX. Rest your Firelocks. As in Explan. 30. Ibid.

LXX. Shoulder your Firelocks. As in Explan. 45. Ibid.

The End of the Evolutions.

E 4 CHAP.



CHAP. V.

Directions for Passing in Review.

ARTICLE I.



EFORE the Regiment is to pass in Review, the Companies should be drawn out, and a strict Inspection made into the Men's Arms, Ammunition, Cloaths and Accourrements, and a Report made of the same, by the Officer Commanding each Company, to the Colond

or Officer Commanding the Regiment, that he may know the true State of the Whole, and give necessary Directions in time for the repairing of such Things as may be then out of

Order.

If Time and Place will admit of it, it is usual for the Colonel to make this Inspection Himself along with the other Officers; or at least to order either his Lieutenant-Colonel or Major to do it, and to make Him a Report of the whole.

ARTICLE II.

The Regiment must be told off by Grand and Sub-divisions, and the Officers appointed to them, the Colours sent for, and the Files Opened before the General comes; that after he has viewed them Standing, they may immediately proceed to the

Exercise, or whatever he shall be pleased to order.

When Notice is given of the General's Coming, the Major is to order the Men to Shoulder their Arms, from which Position they are always to Rest their Arms, when that Compliment is to be paid; and as soon as he approaches near the Flank of the Battalion, the Major is to order the Soldien to Rest their Arms by the following Words of Command.

To the Front Present your Arms.

At the performing of the fourth and last Motion of the bove Command, all the Drummers are to beat a March, and the Major is to take his Post immediately on the Right of the Battalion, and the Adjutant on the Lest, dressing in a

Line with the Rank of Officers.

As the General passes along the Front, the Officers are to salute him with their Half-Pikes or Partisans; and to time it in such a manner, that each may just finish his Salute, and pall off his Hat when he comes opposite to him. The Ensigns who carry the Colours are to drop them, (if the General is to be saluted with Colours) bringing the Spear pretty near the Ground, just when the Colonel drops the Point of his Half-Pike, pulling off their Hats at the same time, and

not to raise the Colours 'till he has passed them.

As the Major and Adjutant are to be on Horseback, they are to Salute with their Swords; and when the Major has sinished his Salute, he is to repair opposite to the Center of the Regiment, that he may be ready to order the Men to Face when the General goes round the Battalion: And as it is impossible for the Words of Command to be distinctly heard by the Whole when the Drums are beating, the Drummers should have Directions to Cease as soon as the General comes to the Lest Flank of the Battalion, (supposing he tegan at the Right) and not to begin beating 'till the Word of Command is given to face to the Lest; and when he comes to the Lest Flank of the Rear Rank, they should cease again till the Battalion has faced a second Time to the Lest. The same Rule should be observed when he comes to the Right Flanks of the Rear and Front Ranks.

If the above Directions are duly observed, the Facings, which on these Occasions are generally very ill performed, may be done with the utmost Exactness. It is therefore incumbent on the Major, if he would shew the Regiment to Advantage, not to neglect this Precaution; since the performing of the first Motions well, generally makes so good an Impression, that every one is preposses in favour of what is to follow, and will rather excuse than condemn the little Slips or Mistakes that may be committed: Whereas, if a bad Impression is at first given, every little Failing will be judged a Crime, since Prejudices of this kind take too strong a Posses-

ion of the Mind to be eafily removed.

By the above Directions it is prefumed that the General who Reviews, begins at the Right, which they always do unless the Situation of the Ground, or the Drawing up of the Regiment, won't admit of it; which is a Fault the should be carefully avoided. For this End, the Ground of which you are to be review'd, and the Avenues leading to it should be consider'd, and the most advantageous Part of it pitched upon for the Regiment; taking care to draw up the Front towards the Place by which the General is to approach, and leaving the Right Flank open, that he may come to it without any Difficulty. If this Precaution is neglected, the Officer who commands the Regiment, will be thought either careless or ignorant in his Profession, unless it plainly appears that Necessity, and not Choice, obliged him to it.

When the Case happens that the General comes to the Lest of the Battalion first, and passes along the Front to the Right, the Drummers are to cease beating when he comes that Flank, 'till the Regiment has faced to the Right, as the fore directed, that the Words of Command for the Facing

may be distinctly heard.

When the Battalion is order'd to Face, the Officers, & jeants, Drummers and Hautboys are to do the same, and a to remain at their Posts, without going through the Battalion to the Rear when the General passes along it, or saluting him any more than once standing.

The Serjeants in the Rear are to pull off their Hats, without bowing their Heads, when the General passes them, howing their Halbards in their Right Hands as the Officers do that

Half-Pikes.

N. B. When the Officers pull off their Hats, after Saluting they are not to bow their Heads.

ARTICLE III.

As foon as the Ceremony of viewing the Regiment standing is over, the General then acquaints the Colonel what he would have performed, as the going through the Manual Exercise, Evolutions and the Firings, or a Part of each; all which depends entirely on the Directions he shall be pleased to give, and therefore no certain Rule can be prescribed. And tho' the Generals are not ty'd down to any set Form in Reviewing, yet they commonly proceed in the following manner.

First, They view the Regiment standing.

Secondly,

Chap. V. Secondly, They order the Manual Exercise and Evolutions o be perform'd.

Thirdly, To go through some Part of the Firings; and Fourthly, To March by him, either in Grand-Divisions, ub-Divisions, or by fingle Companies.

ARTICLE IV.

As the first Part, that of Viewing the Regiment standing, as been fully treated of in the Second Article, I shall menion some Things relating to the Second (that of the Exertife) which could not be fo properly introduced before.

When the Officers are ordered to take their Posts of Exertile in the Rear, the Colonel is not to go to the Rear, but to march strait forward, and place himself by the General, with his Half-Pike in his Hand, during the Exercise; and as soon s that is over, and the Officers order'd to the Front, he is then to return to his Post.

In the Absence of the Colonel, the Lieutenant-Colonel is to proceed in the fame Manner, in placing himself by the General during the Exercise, and performing all the other Parts of the Colonel's Duty in the Command of the Regiment: But the Lieutenant-Colonel's Post is never supplied by any other Officer when he is absent, or commands the Regiment.

When the Command falls to the Major, by the Absence of the Colonel and Lieutenant-Colonel, he is then to take the Colonel's Post at the Head of the Regiment, and salute with his Half-Pike; but when the Regiment is to perform the Exercise, he is to mount on Horseback to do it, the Command of the Regiment not being fufficient to excuse him from that Part of his Duty before a General, unless an Impediment in his Voice, or some other just Reason, obliges him to decline it; and even in that Case he is to make an Apology to the General for his not doing of it himself, and defire Leave that another Officer may perform it; and when granted (which, I believe, is feldom refused) he then remains on Foot, and acts in every Respect as Colonel.

In the Absence of all the Field-Officers, the eldest Captain takes the Command, and places himself in the Colonel's Post, at the Head of the Regiment, and acts in every Respect as the Colonel should do, were he present.

When the Officers take their Posts in the Rear, the Drummers and Hautboys are to march beyond the General, and

Cha

If

re

he l

Capt

ame

Divi

whe

Ord

I.

their II

ter-l

V

V

first

V

faid

Div

Rea

I

X

Gra

Cap

Div

Ran

Ma

For

in t

the

thei

I

Hea

the

to r

Hal

1

X

V

V

not the Major, as was directed by the fifth Article of the first

Chapter.

The Major, or Officer who gives the Word of Command, is not to find Fault, or presume to Chastise any of the Soldiers in the General's Presence for any Neglect in their Exercise; neither ought it to be done before the Colonel, without his Permission, in order to make them mind their Duty, and instruct them in the performing of it better; these Things being only allowable at Common Exercise, and not in the Presence of our Superior Officers: For which Reason, there should be nothing said or heard but the Work of Command for what the Men are to perform.

ARTICLE V.

After the Manual Exercise and Evolutions, they person the third Part before mentioned, that of the Firings; the Directions for which, with the Use and Service of each Sort, being sully treated of in the two sollowing Chapters, I shall so nothing surther of it here; but proceed to the sourth and late Part of the Ceremony of Reviewing, that of Marching by the General, either by Grand-Divisions, Sub-Divisions, or single Companies.

When a Battalion is divided into three equal Parts or Divisions, each Division is then called a Grand-Division.

Sub-Divisions are formed by dividing each Grand-Division into three, four or five equal Parts, according to the Number of Files in each Grand-Division. When the Rest Half-Files are doubled, the Sub-Divisions then form Platoons.

By Companies, is the Marching of each Company by its self, with its own Officers, Serjeants and Drummers.

The Company of Granadiers is not included or told off in the Grand or Sub-Divisions; but keep in a Body by themselves on the Right of the Battalion, except when they are to Fire, and then they are divided on the Right and Lest.

Before the Regiment Marches off, the Files are to be closed, either to the Right, Left, or Center. After which, the Ranks are to be closed to close Order, and then ordered to wheel by Grand or Sub-Divisions. Upon the Ranks being closed, the Officers are to fall back on the Heads of their feveral Divisions. The Granadiers are to perform all their Movements with the Battalion.

If the Battalion is to march off from the Right, before they are order'd to Wheel, the Colonel goes to the Right, and softs himself at the Head of the Captains on that Wing; and the Lieutenant-Colonel is to post himself at the Head of the Captains on the Lest. The Hautboys are to repair at the ame time, and place themselves on the Right of the first Division of Drummers.

When they are to march by Grand-Divisions, and are wheeled to the Right, they are to march in the following

Order.

12

1

t.

6-

he

21

2.

its

n-

n

be

ed

ĉ-

U

e

If

I. The Company of Granadiers with their own Officers at their Head.

II. The Hatchet-Men of the Battalion, form'd into Ranks. III. The Staff-Officers, viz. Chaplain, Adjutant, Quarter-Master, Surgeon and Mate.

IV. The Hautboys in a Rank.

V. The Colonel alone.

VI. All the Captains on the Right, on the Head of the first Grand-Division.

VII. All the Lieutenants on the Right in the Rear of the

faid Division.

VIII. All the Enfigns on the Head of the Center Grand-Division.

IX. All the Lieutenants on the Left on the Head of the Rear Grand-Division.

X. All the Captains on the Left, in the Rear of the faid Grand-Division.

XI. The Lieutenant-Colonel alone, in the Rear of the Captains.

The Serjeants are to be divided equally to the Three Grand-Divisions, and to march on the Right and Left Flanks.

The Drummers are to fall in between the third and fourth

Ranks of each Grand-Division.

The Ranks being Closed forward to Wheel, they are in Marching to open to their former Distance of sour Paces: For which End, the Rear-Ranks are not to move 'till those in their Front have got to their proper Distance, and then all the Men in the next Rank are to step at once forward with their Lest Feet.

In Marching, the Major is to Salute on Horseback at the Head of the Granadiers, being some Paces advanced before the Captain; but if he commands the Regiment, he is then to march on Foot in the Colonel's Post, and Salute with his

Half-Pike.

Cha

T

e t

on

col

ivi

for

TW

Su

th

ec

In

anc

rs

ion. get

As

run 1 C

e to

ivit

ter

ron

as f

II.

e R

III

e S

IV

the

V.

nd is

The comp

Ti

ore t

The Officers are to march with their Half-Pikes downward, and when they come within 20 Paces of the General they are to bring them to their Shoulders, and to time the Salute so as to finish and pull off their Hats, a little before they come opposite to him.

All the Officers who march in the fame Rank, are to be very exact in performing their Motions together; and in order to have them done at the fame time, they are to be govern't by, and to take them from the Officer who marches on the

Right of the Rank they are in.

After the Officers have Saluted, they are not to bow the Heads in paffing by the General, but to march with the Hats off 'till they have paffed him about eight Paces, and then to put them on; and when they have got twenty Pace from him, they are to bring their Half-Pikes from the Shoulders, and march with them downward, as before.

The Enfigns are to carry the Colours Advanced, and to Drop them when the other Enfigns drop the Spear of the Half-Pikes, and to march with the Colours down 'till the have passed the General about fix or eight Paces. They are to pull off their Hats when they drop the Colours, and me put them on 'till the other Enfigns do theirs.

The Serjeants are to March with their Halbards on the Left Shoulders, holding the Spear in their Left Hands; and a passing by the General, they are only to pull off their Ha

without bowing their Heads.

The Grand-Divisions being Sub-divided as before directed; if the Battalion is to march by Sub-Divisions, the Officers as to march as follows.

All the Captains on the Right Wing are to march at the

Head of the first Sub-Division.

The Lieutenants of that Wing are to be divided on, and to lead the Remaining Sub-Divisions of the first Grand-Division.

The Enfigns are to be divided on, and to lead the Sub-Divisions of the Center Grand-Division, the Enfigns with the Colours being posted at the Head of the Center Sub-Division.

The Lieutenants on the Left Wing are to be divided on, and to lead the Sub-Divisions of the Left Grand-Division.

The Captains on the Left are to march in the Rear of the

last Sub-Division.

The Field-Officers, Staff-Officers, Hautboys and Hatchet-Men are to March in their former Posts; and the Serjeants are to be divided equally on the Sub-Divisions.

2

77-

by

be

der

n'd

the

.

hái

20

103

d

H M

212

nt

há

dia

125

ed;

200

the

and

IVI

Di-

the

n.

OD,

the

het-

are

The

The Drum-Major and the First Division of Drummers to March with the First Sub-Division; the Center Division of Drummers with the Colour Sub-Division; and the cond Division of Drummers with the Last or Lest Sub-ivision, falling in between the third and fourth Ranks, as fore directed.

The Granadiers are to March as before.

When they are to March thus, the Battalion is to wheel Sub-Divisions, the Officers placing themselves at the Head the Sub-Divisions they are to Lead, as soon as the Ranks

e closed Forward, in order to wheel with them.

In Marching, the Ranks are to Open to their former Diance, as before directed; and where there are more Officers than one on a Division, they are to observe the Directions about the Timing of their Salute, that they may do it gether.

Reviewing by Companies.

As foon as the Files are closed, the Officers, Serjeants, rummers and Hatchet-Men are to be order'd to their sevel Companies; but as the Order in which the Companies to be drawn up, won't admit of the Closing of the Ranks, and Wheeling by Companies, as they did by Grand and Sublivitions, they always March off by Companies, and Wheel, ter they have march'd about ten or twelve Paces to the ront. The Order in which the Companies are to March, as follows.

I. The Captain.

II. The Lieutenant and Enfign in a Rank, four Paces in

e Rear of the Captain.

III. The Serjeants in a Rank, four Paces in the Rear of the Subalterns, with their Halbards advanced, in the fame manner as Pikes were formerly.

IV. The Drummers in a Rank, four Paces in the Rear

the Serjeants.

V. The Corporals and Private Soldiers, four in a Rank; ad if any odd Men remain, they are to form the Rearank.

The Field-Officers are to march at the Head of their own

ompanies as Captains.

The Staff-Officers and Hauthoys are always to march be-

and

too

at

on

ren

Dr

the

felv abor Her Face dier Rigg Left their alon mar Bat and the

Gr

The Hatchet-Men may either fall into the Rank, march before their Captains, as the Colonel or Comma

ing Officer shall direct.

As foon as they have passed by the General, either Grand or Sub-Divisions, or by single Companies, they at to Draw up on their former Ground (unless ordered to contrary) and to remain there 'till the General acquaints a Colonel, or Officer Commanding the Regiment, that has no further Commands for them; after which, the Colonel gives Orders to lodge the Colours and Dismiss the Retailor.

ARTICLE VI.

When a Regiment is order'd to March off from the lateither by Grand or Sub-Divisions, the Colonel marches at Head of the Captains, who lead the Left Division, the officers, Hatchet-Men and Hautboys marching before he as formerly directed, when they march'd off from the Right

The Lieutenant-Colonel goes to the Right, and marks in the Rear of the Captains on the Right, who fall into

Rear of the Right Division.

The Company of Granadiers marches in the Rear of the Lieutenant-Colonel, and the Officers belonging to the Car

pany in the Rear of it.

This is the Method in all common Marches, either into Line, or alone; but when the Regiment is Retiring from a Enemy, or that any Danger is apprehended in the Rear, to Colonel remains there, and the Lieutenant-Colonel leads to Battalion off.



the

CHAP. VI.

Consisting of Directions for the different Firings of the Foot.

ARTICLE 1.

P.

S foon as the Exercise is over, and the Officers return'd to the Front, the next Thing which they generally proceed to, is the different Firings; for which End, the following Particulars are to be first perform'd.

First, The Rear Half-Files are to be Doub-

led to the Left, as in Explanation the 5th of the Evolutions. Secondly, The Granadiers are to be divided on the Right

and Left of the Battalion, in the following Manner:

The Company of Granadiers is to be divided into two Platoons, the Captain and Tecond Lieutenant placing themfelves at the Head of that on the Right, and the first Lieutenant on that on the Left. One Serjeant and one Drummer are to remain with the Right Platoon, the other two Serjeants and Drummer are to march with the Left Platoon.

When the Company of Granadiers is thus divided, and the Officers, Serjeants, and Drummers have posted themselves on the Right and Left Platoons, according to the above Directions, they are to Face to the Left on their Right Heels, and to march to the Left, beginning with the Feet they Faced on. The first Lieutenant with his Platoon of Granadiers is to march along the Ranks of the Battalion, 'till the Right-hand File of his Platoon has got one Pace beyond the Left-hand File of the Battalion, and then Halt, and make them Dress with the Battalion. What is meant by Marching along the Ranks, is this: The Front Rank of Granadiers marches between the Officers and the Front Rank of the Battalion, the Center Rank of Granadiers between the Front and Center Ranks, and the Rear Rank of Granadiers between the Center and Rear Ranks of the Battalion.

As foon as the Left-hand File of the Right Platoon of Granadiers comes within a Pace of the Right-hand File of

fo

be

to

0

WC

the

ty

wh

pla

the

to 1

fuli

pre

peri

the

con

whi Bat

pofe

difp

diffe

a m

fite

ble,

to ob

Ener

not a

it: h

this

the F

the t

Who

too g

Place

Firing

make

Fal

Th

Se

the Battalion, the Captain is to order them to Halt, and make them Drefs with the others.

Thirdly, The Major is to order the Men to Fix their Bayonets, it being the Custom to perform the Firings with the Bayonets fix'd on the Muzzle; which, however, may be omitted in common Exercise, if the Commanding Officer

thinks proper; but never in Service.

Fourthly, When the Bayonets are fix'd, the Battalion is to be divided into Platoons; the Number of which must depend upon the Strength of the Battalion, and the particular Firing you intend to perform. Neither is a Platoon composed of any fix'd Number of Files; (I mean those of three Deep, which are commonly called Half-Files, because a File of Men are taken for Six, in the ordinary way of speaking; whereas the true Meaning of the Word File, fignifies all those Men who stand in a direct Line behind one another, or, in the Military Phrase, all those who stand in a direct Line from Front to Rear: So that their being Three, Four, or Six Deep, does not alter the Sense, or change it from being a File) but may be more or less, according as the Battalion will allow of it: However, a Platoon is feldom compos'd of less than 10 File, which are 30 Men, or more than 16 Files, which are 48 Men; because, a Platoon compos'd of less than to Files would not be of Weight enough to do any confiderable Execution; and those above 16 Files would be too great a Body of Men for an Officer to manage upon Service.

In dividing the Battalion into Platoons, they should be composed of an equal Number of Files; or at least not above one File stronger than another, and those should be the Flanks

and Colour Platoons.

As foon as the Platoons are told off, there must be an Officer appointed to each, to Command them; taking an equal Proportion of Captains, Lieutenants, and Ensigns for that

Purpose.

The Lieutenant-Colonel, with the remaining Part of the Officers, are to march, and Post themselves in the Rear of the Battalion, in the same manner as they do at Exercise, the Captains, Lieutenants, and Ensigns drawing up into one Rank in the Rear of the Serjeants, and the Lieutenant-Colonel in the Rear of the Officers, and opposite to the Colour Platoon.

The Serjeants should be divided to the several Platoons, and

posted in the Rear of them.

The Colonel, and the Enfigns with the Colours, remain in their former Posts, at the Head of the Battalion.

The

The Reasons for Officers being posted in the Rear, are as follows: First, As the Interval between each Platoon should be but one Pace, the Officer who Commands the Platoon is to fall into it when they Fire; therefore, should any more Officers remain in the Front, than One to each Platoon, it would only embarrass and expose them to their own Fire.

Secondly, It is of great Use to have experienced Officers in the Rear, to keep the Men up, and see that they do their Duty in Action; as also to Lead the Battalion off in Order, when they are Commanded to retire; for which Reason they place a Proportion of each Rank there. And Lastly, should there be no Officers in the Rear when the Battalion is order'd to the Right-about, the Men would be apt to march off too sast, and by that means break their Ranks, and fall into Confusion, or not Halt in due time; which Inconveniencies are prevented by Officers being posted there.

The Method which is now practis'd, and which, by Experience, is found to be the most useful, is, the dividing of the Platoons into several Firings; each Firing being seldom compos'd of less than Four Platoons, or more than Five: which Firings are not kept together in any one Part of the Battalion; but the Platoons of each Firing distributed, or disposed into different Parts of the Regiment; the Reasons for

disposing of them into different Parts, are these:

First, The disposing of the Platoons of each Firing into different Parts of the Battalion, will extend your Fire in such a manner, as to do Execution in different Parts of the opposite Regiment; the Consequence of which, may either disable, or dishearten them so much, as, upon a nearer Approach, to oblige them to give way, or make but a faint Resistance.

Secondly, Their being divided in this manner, should the Enemy and you join before those Platoons have time to Load, not any one Part of your Battalion is very much weaken'd by it: however, when the Commanding Officer apprehends that this may be the Case, he must avoid it, by leaving off after the First or Second Firings, that they may be all Loaded by the time they join the Enemy, in order to throw in their Whole upon them at once.

Thirdly, Should the Platoons of each Firing be together, too great a Part of the Battalion would be exposed in one Place before the Men could Load, particularly the Flank

rinngs.

Fourthly and Lastly, The Firings being thus disposed of, it makes the Exercise appear the more beautiful, and accustoms

F 2

the

P

Ch

Gra

Front of the Battalion.

Gra

the Men to hear Firing on their Right and Left, without touching their Arms, 'till they have Orders for it, which the English are with Difficulty brought to, from a natural Define and Eagerness to enter soon into Action; a Quality in some Cases extreamly commendable, but in others the contrary; for which Reason the Men must be taught to rely entirely on the Conduct of their Officers, and to wait with Patience for their Orders, before they perform any Motion; the due Performance of which, both their Sasety and Honour depend on

If the Platoons of Granadiers are too weak, they may add, from the Right and Left of the Battalion, some Files of Musketeers to them, before the Platoons are told off.

ARTICLE II.

For the better explaining, and the easier comprehending of the different Firings, and the Distribution of the Platoons of each Firing in several Parts of the Regiment, as mentioned in the preceeding Article, I have hereunto annex'd three Plans: the first consisting of 18 Platoons, composing three Firings of 5 Platoons each, and a Reserve of three Platoons: the second Plan consists of 15 Platoons, divided into three Firings, of 5 Platoons each: the third is of 12 Platoons, divided into three Firings, of 4 Platoons each.

The two Platoons of Granadiers are included in the above Number, and always make a Part of the Reserve; but when the Battalion is told off only in three Firings, they are then

included in the last Firing.

The Platoons marked with the Letter A, are those of the first Firing.

Those marked B, of the second Firing.
Those marked C, of the third Firing.
And those marked D, are of the Reserve.

By which Means the different Firings may be feen at our View, and how the Platoons of each Firing fall into the feweral Parts of the Battalion; and the Whole appear so plain and easy, that, I believe, there will want no further Explication for the companion of its

tion for the comprehending of it.

The Rule laid down in these Plans, for disposing the Platoons of the different Firings in the Manner here mention'd, may be varied, if the commanding Officer thinks proper; because Circumstances of Time and Place, or the Situation of the Enemy, may require a different Disposition.

PLAN

PLAN I. confisting of 18 Platoons.

Granadiers, D Referve.

I,

ut

ire

y: on 10

1. D.

d,

01

of

of |

10 S: of

nd

of to

31

n n

r

n

-

.

- of Platoon of the First Firing. First Platoons of
- ift Platoon of the Second Firing. the Three
- C 1st Platoon of the Third Firing.) Firings.
- 3d Platoon of the First Firing.) Third Pla-
- 3d Platoon of the Second Firing. toons of the Three
- 3d Platoon of the Third Firing.) Firings.
- A 5th Platoon of the First Firing. > Fifth Pla-
- 5th Platoon of the SecondFiring. toons of the Three
- 5th Platoon of the Third Firing.) Firings.
- Colours. D Reserve.
 - A 4th Platoon of the First Firing. > Fourth Pla-
 - B 4th Platoon of the Second Firing. toons of the Three
 - C 4th Platoon of the ThirdFiring. \ Firings.
 - A 2d Platoon of the First Firing.) Second Pla-
 - B 2d Platoon of the Second Firing. the Three
 - C 2d Platoon of the Third Firing.) Firings.

Granadiers, D Reserve.

Ch

Gr

Front of the Battalion.

G

PLAN II. Of 15 Platoons.

Granadiers. C Ift Platoon of the Third Firing. First Pla-Ift Platoon of the First Firing. Stooms of Ift Platoon of the Second Firing. Seach Firing. 3d Platoon of the Third Firing. 3d Platoon of the First Firing. toons of A 3d Platoon of the Second Firing. Jeach Firing. Front of the Battalion. 5th Platoon of the First Firing.) Fifth Pla-Colours. C 5th Platoon of the Third Firing. Stoons of 5th Platoon of the Second Firing. \ each Firing. B 4th Platoon of the First Firing.) Fourth Pla-4th Platoon of the Second Firing. Stoons of B 4th Platoon of the Third Firing. Seach Firing. 2d Platoon of the First Firing. 7 Second Pla-B 2d Platoon of the Second Firing. each Firing. Granadiers. C 2d Platoon of the Third Firing.

PLAN III. Of 12 Platoons.

Granadiers. C 1st Platoon of the Third Firing.

A 1st Platoon of the First Firing.

B 1st Platoon of the Second Firing.

C 3d Platoon of the Third Firing.

A 3d Platoon of the First Firing.

B 3d Platoon of the Second Firing.

Colours. C 4th Platoon of the Second Firing.

A 4th Platoon of the First Firing.

A 4th Platoon of the First Firing.

A 4th Platoon of the Second Firing.

A 2d Platoon of the Second Firing.

Second Platoons of the Second Firing.

Colours. C 4th Platoon of the Second Firing.

Colours. C 4th Platoon of the First Firing.

A 2d Platoon of the Second Firing.

Colours. C 4th Platoon of the Second Firing.

Colours. C 4th Platoon of the First Firing.

C 2d Platoon of the First Firing.

C 2d Platoon of the First Firing.

Before

Chaj

100

e al

rfor

lanu

xerc

cks

cks on o

heir

har

re to

he I

rhic

vhic

h E

ace

ne o

ut 1

ppe

Polit

eize

o po

Tto

oth

muc

A

s that

the toe

ake

Car

to o

1

be a

bilit

kno

ma

ven tin

Before I proceed further, it will be necessary to explain the Platoon Exercise; that is, what Number of Motions of the Manual Exercise they are to perform at each Word of Command.

There are but Three Words of Commands used in the

Platoon Exercise, which are as follows.

I. Make Ready. II. Present. III. Fire.

By the First Word of Command, the Men are to perform all the Motions contain'd in the four first Words of Command of the Manual Exercise; and immediately after the performing of the last of the said Motions, which is Cocking, the Men of the Front Rank are to kneel down on their right Knees, placing the Butt-end of their Firelocks on the Ground, keeping their Thumbs on the Cocks, and their Fingers on the Trickers. The Center and Rear-Ranks Close forward at the same time with recover'd Arms, the Men of the Center Rank placing their left Feet on the Infide of the right Feet of their File-Leaders, bringing their right Feet to the Right, but not in a Line with their Left, only in the same Position as when they Rest. The Men in the Rear-Rank place their left Feet on the Infide of the right Feet of those in the Center Rank, bringing their right Feet to the Right a those in the Center Rank did.

The Placing of the Feet in this Manner, is call'd, in Mi-

litary Terms, Locking.

Formerly the Men in each File stood in a direct Line behind one another, by which Means those in the Center Rank were obliged to stoop, that the Men in the Rear Rank might Fire over their Heads; but by the above Position, that inconvenient and uneasy Posture is avoided: For by Locking as assoresaid, the Men of the Center Rank Present their Firelocks over the right Shoulders of their File-Leaders; and those of the Rear Rank Present to the Right of the Center Rank Men, which brings their Firelocks, when they Present, to the Intervals between the Files.

By the fecond Word of Command, they are to Prefent

their Firelocks, as in Explanation 5 is directed.

By the third Word of Command, they are to Fire, as in Explan. 6. after which they are to Recover their Arms, the Front Rank rifing up and the Center and Rear falling back to half Distance, it being a standing Rule to move the Ranks up to that Distance before they are order'd to Make Ready; and,

foon as the Center and Rear Ranks have fallen back, they e all to proceed to Half-Cock, Prime, Load and Shoulder, forming the feveral Motions together, as directed in the Sanual Exercise; with this Difference, that in the Platoon xercife, after Priming, the Men are not to bring their Firecks to a Recover in order to Cast-about to the Left; but fer they have shut their Pans, they are to seize their Firecks with the right Hand behind the Lock, as in the 3d Moon of Explan. 11; and with both Hands, without moving hir Feet from the Ground or changing their Aspect, bring har Firelocks up before them, and at the same time they re to quit the Butt with their right Hands, and take hold of he Muzzle when it comes opposite to the right Shoulder. which they are to bring that way with their left Hands; by which Means, the Position of the Firelock will be the same as Explan. 12; only this Difference, that by the Men being faced to the Right, the Butt will point to the Front, as in re other it does to the Rear. That this may be done withat too much Constraint to the Men, and at the same time ppear more graceful in the Exercise, they may change the Polition of their Feet, by turning on their Heels when they kize the Muzzle with the right Hand, bringing the right Toe point to the Rear and the Left along the Rank, forming a I to the Rear as they did before to the Front.

The Reason for their performing of it in this Manner, is oth to gain Time, and to prevent the Men from being too

much fatigued.

te

1-

e

n

-

ne

ir ie

ife

of

to

ne |

le l

25

Ł

nt

-

IS

3

f

1

•

t

t

ſ

0

Another thing which contributes to the Loading quick, is the making up of the Cartridges to fuch an Exactness, that, after they are placed in the Muzzle, one Thump with the Butt-end on the Ground, will make them run down to the Breech of the Barrel; which will save the time usually taken up in Ramming. But as the Ramming down of the Cartridge is, in my Opinion, very necessary, I must beg leave to offer some Objections against the disusing it.

First, Unless the Barrel is very clean within, which can't te after the second or third Fire, the Cartridge, in all Probability, will stick half-way; the Effect of which is too well

known to be here inserted.

Secondly, If the Cartridge runs down too easy, the Paper may get betwixt the Touch-hole and the Powder, and prevent its going off; the Service of which Men will be lost duting the Action.

igh

Mar

re 1

bout

ake

hort

Beat

hey

2C1

ent

A

iri

ex

A

o b

real

1

ecti

hof

hre

at w

as d Off

Rig

thus

felv

Lef

adv:

they

Lei

wh

Fir

Thirdly and Lastly, When the Cartridge is made to fit exactly, yet the Foulness of the Barrel after two or three Fire may prevent the Paper and Ball from going much further than the Muzzle, tho' not the Powder. So that, upon the leveling of the Piece, a great Part of the Powder will run toward the Muzzle, and, by coming out whole, weaken the Fire so much, that the Ball will either drop within two or three Yards, or not have Force enough to do much Execution.

If the above Objections are thought to be of any Weighthey may be eafily remedied, by making use of the Rammer for as the one is certain and the other uncertain, I think the is no room left to chuse which ought to be follow'd; for which Reason, when they are not press'd too close by the Enemy, the Ramming down of the Cartridge should not he

omitted in Service.

In Dividing the Platoons into the feveral Firings, the Major should take particular Care to let the Officers and Soldiers know distinctly what Firing they belong to, whether of the First, Second, or Third Firing, or of the Reservant as also what Number each Platoon is of in the different firings, as the First, Second, Third, Fourth or Fisth Platon of the First, Second or Third Firing, or of the Reservant that no Mistake may happen in the Execution.

In order to know if they have rightly understood their the ling off, the Major may try the Platoons of each Firing apart, by making those Platoons perform some Motions together, as Resting and Shouldering; the same may be done by the Platoons of each Firing singly. This, however, should be practised only at common Exercise, or before the General, who is to see you go thro' your Firings, comes into the

Field.

He must likewise let them know what Firings they are a perform, and in what manner they are to do it, whether Standing, Advancing, or Retiring, or all Three; as also, whether the Platoons of each Firing are to Fire in their Order, (which is one after the other) or together; and what Signals by Beat of Drum he intends to make use of, and what they are to perform at each Signal.

The usual Beatings made use of on these Occasions, which are perform'd by the Orderly Drummer attending the Majos,

are as follows.

At the Beating of the March, the Regiment is to March strait forward, beginning with the left Feet; and when the Drum ceases they are to Halt.

When

VI

it ex-

Fire

I than

level

Ward

ire fo

thra

n. eigk

mr:

ther

for the

ot h

, th

an

wh. TR;

Fi. toot

ve;

tel

ring to-

one blux

ral,

the

.

ha

)1-

but

nd

ch

of,

ch

When a Retreat is Beat, the Battalion is to Face to the ight-about, the Men performing it on their left Heels, and March towards the Rear; and when the Drum ceases, they re to Face to their proper Front, by coming to the Leftbout on their left Heels. But that the Men may not miake the Time of their Facing to their proper Front, by the nort Pauses which the Drummer must of course make in the eating of the Retreat, another Signal may be added when bey are to do it, such as a short Russle, by which means the acing will be perform'd with the more Exactness, and preent the least Disorder.

At the Beating of a Preparative, all the Platoons of that firing which is to come next, are to make ready together, as

explain'd in the Platoon Exercise.

A Flam, or double Stroak, is the Signal for the Platoons begin to Fire; the particular Directions for which, shall be reated of in the following Article.

ARTICLE III.

The Battalion being prepared according to the foregoing Diections, I shall now proceed to the Firings, and begin with hose in Plan the First, confisting of 18 Platoons, composing hree Firings and a Referve.

To go thro' the Firings Standing.

The Major is to order the Drummer to Beat a Preparative; t which all the Platoons of the first Firing are to make ready, s directed in the Platoon Exercise; and at the same time the Officers who command them, are to place themselves on the Right and Left of their Platoons, facing towards the Colours; thus: The Officers to the Right of the Colours, to place themelves on the Right of their Platoons, and the Officers to the Left of the Colours on the Left of their Platoons, being only advanced a short Pace before the Front Rank of Men, that they may see all their Platoon, in order to make the Men Level well, and do their Duty.

Then the Major orders the Drummer to Beat a Flam; at which the Officer, Commanding the first Platoon of that

firing, gives the following Words of Command.

ha W

nfig e P

d.

As

the

cks ich

T

fha

erfo

U

e vith

T

anci

anl

eep

N

o, i

on

eft bre

T

he

egin n or ll t

o B

ent,

eth

rhie n tl

cad

loa

nuf

nd

Present. Fire.

As foon as the Word Fire is given to the first Platoon, the Officer Commanding the second Platoon is to give the Word Present, and then, Fire. The Officer Commanding the third Platoon, is to observe the same Rule when the Word Fire, is given to the second Platoon; the Officers Commanding the fourth and fifth Platoons of that Firing, are to so low the same Directions.

The Officers, who give the Words of Command, aren speak them clear and distinct, and not to proceed to the Word Fire, 'till the Men have presented as they ought, or wait to long after they have.

When the Words of Command are given with Judgment, the Fire is generally good; so that the Firing Well or Il depends, in a great measure, on the Manner the Officer give them.

When the Battalion is to Fire, the two Divisions of Drummers on the Right and Lest, are to post themselves on the Flanks, and Dress in a Line with the Front Rank. When the Colour Platoon makes ready, the Center Division of Drummers are to move to the Platoons on the Right and Lest of it; and when that Platoon has Loaded again, they are to return to their Posts.

As foon as the first Firing is over, the Major order a second Preparative to be Beat; at which the Platoons of the second Firing make ready, the Officers, Commanding those Platoons, posting themselves in the same Manner, as already directed for those of the first Firing.

After this a Flam; then the first Platoon of the second Firing Presents, and Fires, and the other Platoons of that Firing follow in their Order.

The same Method must be observed for the Platoons of the third Firing, as also for those of the Reserve; but before the Platoons of Granadiers Kneel and Lock, they are to Wheel to the Right and Lest inward an eighth part of the Circle, which, as being on the Flanks, they are always to do, in whatever Firing they are placed.

By Wheeling the Granadiers inward, in this Manner, it throws their Fire towards the Center of the opposite Regiment, and consequently Rakes a great part of their Front, which, if they Level well, can't fail of doing considerable Execution, since every Ball must have its Essect.

When

When the Colour Platoon makes Ready, the Colonel, infigns with Colours, and the Hautboys, are to move to e Platoon on the Right or Left of it; and when it has Fid, they are to return to their former Posts.

As the Platoon Exercise directs the Men to Load, as soon they have Fired, and when Loaded to Shoulder their Firecks, I thought it unnecessary to mention it at the end of

ch Firing.

the ord

th

ord.

and

fol

e m

tos

ent,

I

give

um-

the

hen

1 of

and

216

13 2

the

hose

ady

ond

that

of

fore

to:

the

do,

, it

व्या-

ont,

able

hen

The Battalion having gone through their Firings Standing, shall, in the next place, give Directions how they are to erform them Advancing.

How to Fire Advancing.

Upon the Major's ordering the Drummer to beat a March, he whole Battalion is to march strait forward, beginning hith their Lest Feet, and to move as slow as Foot can fall.

The Officers in the Front are to be only two Paces adanced before their Platoons, and to take care to keep their ank even in Marching. The Officers in the Rear are to

eep their former Distance.

When the Drummer ceases Beating, which he is not to o, whether Advancing or Retiring, 'till he is order'd, the attalion is to Halt; and the Officers commanding the Placons are to place themselves immediately on the Right and lest of their Platoons, Facing towards the Colours, as better directed.

Then the Preparative is to Beat, at which the Platoons of the first Firing are to make Ready. After that a Flam to egin Firing, which they are to perform in their Order. But norder to vary this Fire from that Standing, they may make those Platoons Fire together; in which case, no Flam is a Beat, but the Major gives the Word of Command, Pre-int, Fire.

As foon as they have Fired, either in their Order or Toether, the Drummer must be order'd to beat a March; at which the Battalion moves Forward as before, the Officers a the Front marching at the Head of their Platoons, as altady directed; and the Platoons which have Fired, are to

oad in Marching.

When you would begin the second Firing, the Drummer nust be order'd to Cease; at which the Battalion is to Halt, and the Officers to post themselves on the Right and Lest of their Platoons. Then a Preparative for the Platoons of the second

rep

cae

T

eat

A

er

ho

000

y n his

hi

or f ho

he !

ive

Cor

Ora or he

nit her

hei

tar

fte

Ad

dy wh the

Fin de,

fecond Firing to make Ready; after that to proceed to Fig. as those of the First did.

The same Method is to be observ'd for the third Fire and Referve; taking care that the Granadiers Wheel inward,

before directed, when they are to Fire.

When the Colour Platoon is to Fire, the Colonel, Enfin with the Colours and Hautboys, are to move to the Head another Platoon; but when the Battalion Fires together, the must then fall into the Intervals on the Right and Lest of the Colour Platoon.

How to Fire Retiring.

The Battalion having gone through their Firings in Alvancing, the Major is to order the Drummer to beat a Retreat; at which, the Battalion is to face to the Right-about and march very flow to the Rear. The Lieutenant-Colo nel, at the Head of the Officers in the Rear, leads the Batt-The Officers who were in the Front march in the Rear of their Platoons, and the Colonel in the Rear of the Enfigns with the Colours.

As foon as the Battalion has marched as far as is proper, the Major must order the Drummer to cease beating the Retreat, and give the Ruffle (or any other Signal which may be thought more proper) at which the whole are to face to the

Left-about.

When the Battalion is Faced, the Major orders the Proprative; at which the Platoons of the first Firing make ready, and the Officers in the Front fall into their Posts as before directed. After this they are to Fire in the same Manner a they did Advancing.

As foon as those Platoons have fired, the Drummers beat 1 Retreat, at which the Battalion is to face again to the Right-

about, and march towards the Rear as before.

When the Drummer ceases to beat the Retreat, and the Ruffle given, the Battalion is immediately to Halt; then the Preparative for the Platoons of the second Firing to make Ready, and then to Fire, as those of the first Firing did.

In Retiring, the Meaning of the Word Halt, is to face to the proper Front; but in Advancing, it is only to fland

Rill.

3

As foon as the second Fire is over, the Retreat must be beat for the Battalion to face to the Right-about, and March; and when the Drum ceases, they are to Halt; and at the

Prepara-

reparative, the Platoons of the third Firing are to make cady, and to Fire as the others.

The fame must be perform'd for the Reserve; which com-

eats the feveral Firings in Retiring.

VL

Fir

e and

d, 2

nfiga

ad a

they fthe

Ad-

Re-

out, elo

attathe the

per, Re-

y be the

сра-

ady, fore

1 2

at a

ght-

the

the ake

ace

2110

be

ch;

the Tà-

After they have perform'd the above Firings in the Maner here mentioned, it is customary to make one Fire by the hole Battalion. This may be done on the Ground they ood on after the last Fire; but it will appear more graceful, y making a Movement to the Front, before it is given. In his Case, the Drummer must be order'd to beat a March, at hich the Battalion is to move Forward, and when the Maor finds that the Platoons which Fired last, have Loaded and houlder'd, he may order the Drummer to cease, on which he Battalion is to Halt. After that he is to order a Prepara-ive for the Whole to make Ready, or do it by Word of Command, and then give the Words, Present, Fire.

ARTICLE IV.

When the Foot are attacked by Horse, whether they are Drawn up in the Line of Battel, or in a Square, it is proper or them to referve their whole Front-Rank, and Fire only he Center and Rear-Ranks by Platoons. In this Case, the front-Rank is not to Fire 'till they are put to the last Extrenity; and then not to Fire 'till the Horse are so close, that hey have but just time to charge their Bayonets Breast-high fter they have Fired; that they may be fure of placing in hem, both their Ball and Bayonets, in almost the same Intant of Time. But I shall treat of this more at large herefter, and pursue what is already propos'd, the Method of performing the different Firings of the Foot.

There is another Method of performing the Firings, in Advancing and Retiring, without Halting the Battalion when

the Platoons are to Fire. Thus,

The Major is to order the whole Battalion to make Reaby at the same time, and to march with Recover'd Arms; which may be done before they begin to March, or after they are in Motion. As foon as you would begin the first Firing, there should be a Signal given, which may be a Rufe, or a Flam, upon which the Platoons of the first Firing te to move forward briskly, fix or eight Paces, and then Kneel and Lock, and to proceed immediately to Fire in their Order. The rest of the Battalion is to continue their former Pace, which must be very slow, that the Platoons which

I

Fro

Cor

keep

Inte

to the

fufic

fear

I

mer For

who

ufe

Exe

I

time

Fire

the

at a

Fac

1

orn

firf

A

ord

or 1

A

ng 1

wel

lile

A

ng I

wel

A

hird

le r

e I

advanced may have just finished their Fire by the time to join them. At the next Signal (which may be given as in as the Battalion have join'd the Platoons of the first Fine the Platoons of the second Firing are to advance and Fire the same manner as the former; and so on through the fire ral Firings. When the Platoons that Fired, have Load

they are to Shoulder.

As foon as they have perform'd their Firings in Adracing, the Major is to order a Retreat to be Beat; up which the Battalion is to face to the Right-about, and man towards the Rear. Soon after, he is to order the whole make ready, and continue Marching with Recover'd Am When he would begin the Firings, he is to order the Sign to be given, upon which, all the Platoons of the First First face to the Lest-about, and immediately Kneel and Lod and then Fire, as before directed. When they have all fired, they are to recover their Arms, face to the Right-about march back quick into their former Places, and then Lod The rest of the Battalion is not to Halt, but to continue Marching, tho' as slow as possible.

At the next Signal, the Platoons of the second Firings to Halt and Fire; after which they are to join the Battalia as the others did. The Third and Reserve are to be pre-

form'd in the same Manner.

By this Method of Firing, a Battalion may Advance at Retire faster than by that mention'd in the preceding Article, as also go through the Firings quicker: And, in Speculation it will appear of much greater Service; but Experience will convince every one that it can only Subsist in Theory, since the Practick Part is attended with great Difficulty and Danger; to support which, I shall offer the following Rafons.

In Advancing towards the Enemy, it is with great Disculty that the Officers can prevent the Men (but more particularly when they are Fired at) from taking their Arms without Orders, off from their Shoulders, and Firing at to great a Distance. How much more difficult must it be to prevent their Firing, when they have their Arms in their Hands ready Cock'd, and their Fingers on the Trickers! I won't say it is impossible, tho' I look upon it to be almost so: And therefore, in my Opinion, imprudent to trust thing of this Consequence to Chance, unless obliged to it, by having no other Means left.

In the next Place: By Advancing the Platoons in the Front, their Intervals are liable to be Closed, when only at Common Exercise. How much more difficult must it be to keep them open in the Presence of an Enemy? And if the Intervals are Closed, the Platoons that have Fired will be apt to throw the rest of the Battalion into Consustant, should the Enemy Advance; but if they should not Advance, the Consustant full be considerable, since they dare not Fire for sear of killing their own Men.

It is yet more Dangerous in a Retreat; because a Regiment seldom Retires, but when oblig'd to it by a Superior Force; at which time, the least Disorder is liable to ruin the whole; for which Reason, I believe, sew or none will use this Method upon Service, whatever they may do in

Exercise.

In Retiring from Foot, it is very proper from time to time to order some Platoons to face to the Lest-about and Fire, when the Enemy presses pretty close, without halting the Battalion; but even in that Case they never exceed Two at a time, and then they are not to Make ready 'till they have Faced.

The Firings of the second and third Plans are to be perform'd in the same manner as is directed for those of the

first.

ck;

ion, Wil

inc

Ra

)<u>if</u>

arti-

rms,

100

their

mof

off a

10

As a Battalion is Strong or Weak, it may be Told off acording to one of the foregoing Plans; which was the Reason

or my Drawing more than One. As for Example:

A Battalion of fix hundred Men may be told off according to the first Plan, two Platoons of which will confist of welve Files each, and the other fixteen Platoons of eleven Files each.

A Battalion of five hundred Men may be told off accord-

welve Files, and the others of eleven Files each.

A Battalion of four hundred Men may be told off by the hird Plan, one Platoon of which will be twelve Files, and it rest eleven Files each.

ARTICLE V.

Firing by Ranks.

To Fire by Ranks, is meant, to Fire only One Rank of Battalion at a time, beginning first with the Rear Rank,

le or

or ad

e i

T

ith

N

ed.

th

ter e R

the

the

hick

arc

ear om to th

mes

the F

do t

omn 1y k

th w

then the Center Rank, and lastly the Front Rank. The

manner of performing it is as follows.

The whole Battalion is to Make ready at the fame time, and immediately Kneel and Lock, as in the Platoon Exercise. Then the Major gives the following Words of Command.

Rear Rank --- Present --- Fire.

As foon as the Rear Rank has fired, they are to Recover their Arms, fall back to their former Distance, Prime, Load and Shoulder. After the Rear Rank has fired, the Major proceeds, Center Rank, Present, Fire. After Firing, the Center Rank Recovers their Arms, falls back, Primes, Loads and Shoulders. When the Center Rank has fired, the Front Rank is to do the same; which may be done either Kneel-

ing, or by making them stand up first.

In the time that Pikes were in Use, I presume that this was the Method prescribed when Attack'd by Horse, the whole Front Rank being compos'd of Pike-Men, and the Center and Rear of Musketeers. When the Musketeen were order'd to Make ready, I suppose the Pike-Men kneel'd down, as the Front Rank does now, dropping the Spears on the Ground 'till the Two Ranks of Musketeers had Fired, and then rose up and charged their Pikes, remaining in that Position 'till the Musketeers had Loaded.

As I never had any Experience with the Pikes, they being laid afide just when I came into the Service, I hope I may be excused, if what I have here mention'd is wrong; but a the Firing by Ranks, both in the Battalion and the Square, was practifed a confiderable time after the Pikes were gong I presume, from thence, that it was their Method, and retain'd by the Old Officers, who laid a great Stress upon it as the most effectual way to secure them against Horse. But this is not to be wonder'd at, fince it is Natural for all Mankind to be prejudiced in Favour of the First Notion they receive, or Customs which they have been long used to: However, it is feldom or never used in Service, the fometimes practis'd in the Exercise; but another Method s fubstituted in its Room; which is, that of faving the Fire of the whole Front Rank of the Battalion to the last, and Firing the Two Rear Ranks by Platoons; it being the Compad Fire which does the Execution requifite to break a Squadron; whereas the Fire of a fingle Rank is fo Thin, that it will not

ot eafily ftop their Progress, if their Resolution don't fail hem.

ARTICLE VI.

Paratet Firing.

This Firing is only used in Fortified Towns when Beeg'd, in Intrenchments that are Attack'd, or that you are Fire over a Hedge, or Wall, at the Enemy.

There are two Ways of performing it; the one by Ranks,

nd the other by Files.

ne

ver

oad

100 the

ads ont

cel-

this

the

the

cers eel'd

s on

red,

that

eing

may

ut 25 uare,

one,

re-

n it,

But

r all

tion

uled

tho'

od s

re d

iring

mpat dron;

t will

not

By Ranks.

As the Breast-Work, Parapet, or Hedge is before the len, they are obliged to Fire standing, and therefore no ore than one Rank can Fire at a time, which begins with Front Rank, who as foon as they have Fired, are to orm in the Rear, that the Center Rank may March up d Fire; and when they have Fired, they are to Form in Rear also, that the Rear Rank may March up and do e fame.

There are two Ways of performing it by Ranks; the one ith the Files Open, and the other with them Closed.

When the Files are Open, as foon as the Front Rank has ed, they are to Recover their Arms, Face to the Right-about their right Heels, which brings them directly opposite to the tervals on their Right, thro' which they are to March to Rear, and then to Face to their proper Front, by going the Right-about on their right Heels, which brings them the Rear of their own Files, forming then the Rear, of hich before they were the Front. Upon the Front Rank's arching down the Intervals to the Rear, the Center and ar Ranks march forward, the Center into the Ground m whence the Front Rank fired, and the Rear Rank to that where the Center stood. When the Center Rank mes into the Ground of the First, they are to Fire, Recotheir Arms, Face to the Right-about, March to the Rear, face again to their proper Front. The Rear Rank is do the same; so one Rank after another, as long as the mmanding Officer shall think proper. By this means you y keep almost a constant Fire, since the Time between th will be very inconsiderable.

This

This Manner of performing it, with the Files open, i much in the same Nature as Counter-marching by Files.

Before they begin to Fire, the Major is to order the whole Battalion to Make ready, proceeding no farther than Recover'd Arms, 'till the Signal is given for them to Fire. As foon as the Ranks that have fired are Form'd in the Recover are immediately to Prime, Load, and Make ready; and March forward with Recover'd Arms, as the Ranks fore them move up to Fire, without any further Word of Command than that which was first given: Which Directions will serve for all Parapet-Firing.

How to perform it by Ranks with the Files Closed.

In this Case, the Battalion must be Told off by Platons leaving an Interval of a large Pace between each. Whenthe whole Front-rank of the Battalion has fired, which it is to do in the fame manner as that with the Files Open, the Ma of that Rank are to Recover their Arms, and Face to the Left on their left Heels, but the Left-hand Man of each Plan toon must Face to the Lest-about on his lest Heel, which brings him opposite to the Interval-on the Left of his Platon. As foon as they have Faced, the Left-hand Men of the Patoons are to March strait down their several Intervals to the Rear, all the rest following them to the Lest; and as ed Man comes opposite to the Interval on the Left of his Pa toon, he is to Face again to the Left, and March down the Interval, those of each Platoon following their Lest-land Man. As foon as the Left-hand Man of each Platoon Man. got one Pace beyond the Rear-Rank, they are to Face to the Left, and continue Marching 'till they come to the Righta their own Platoons (the others following in File in the fame manner) and then Halt, forming then the Rear-Rank, d which before they were the Front. After they are form'd the Rear, they are immediately to Load, and as foon a Loaded to Make ready, and March forward, as before directed

When the Front-rank has Fired and March'd clear of the Front, the Center and Rear-Ranks are to March forward, the Center into the Ground of the First, and the Rear into that of the Center; then the Center-Rank is to Fire, Recommendation of the Left, March down the Interval, and Form in the Rear of their own Platoons, as the Front-Rank did. The Rear-Rank is then to March forward, Fire,

and Form in the Rear, as the others.

This

This is a fort of a Counter-marching by Ranks, by bringge the Left of each Platoon to the Right, and the Right to Left; with this Difference, that instead of keeping the those before them Fire, they Move up to their former fround. me Station, each Rank in its Turn forms the Rear, and

I think I have no Occasion to give my Opinion which of Two Ways, that with the Files Open, or the other ith them Closed, is the Best, since Every-body will agree, at the one which contains the most Fire, which is that with a Files Closed, must have the Preference.

Parapet-Firing by Files.

The Battalion must be Told off into Platoons, as in the ther Firing, and drawn up at three Paces Distance from the harapet, Breast-work, or Hedge, and the Whole order'd to sake ready together as far as Recover'd Arms: And when a Signal is given for them to begin to Fire, the Files on a Right and Lest of each Platoon (that is, one File from the Right, and one File from the Lest, of each Platoon) nove forward, and when the File-Leaders come up to the reaft-work, or Hedge, they are to Face to the Right and left inwards (that is, the Right and Left-hand Men of each latoon Facing towards one another) those of the Center and car following their File-Leaders 'till the Two Front Men in, and then they are to Halt; by which the Two Files of ach Platoon Form a Rank of Six Men in the Front of their latoons. As foon as they are thus formed in the Front, by are to Present and Fire; then Recover their Arms, ace to the Right and Left outwards, and March back to heir own Places in the manner they came. When the first iles have fired, those Files which stood next them are to farch out, and draw up in the Front of their Platoons, in he fame manner as the others did, and Fire; then Recover heir Arms, and March back to their former Places. The two next Files of each Platoon are to March out, Fire, and eturn to their Places in the same Order as the others, and on 'till the Two Center Files have fired; after which the lank Files of the Platoons are to begin again, unless order'd the contrary.

To avoid Confusion in their drawing up in the Front of their Platoons to Fire, the File-Leaders should always form the Center, as before directed, those Men of the Center

n

t

K

h

F

t

N

to

h

R

10

to

21

of

P

of

ha R

B

m an

25

by

B

and Rear Ranks drawing up on the Outside of them; which must be done when the two Center Files move out, they be ing to march up strait to the Parapet, and the Men of the Center and Rear Ranks to Face outward, and draw up on the Right and Lest of their File-Leaders: However, it may be done otherwise with the two Center Files of each Platoon, by making the File-Leaders Face to the Right and Lest outwards when they come up to the Parapet, bringing the Men in the Rear to form in the Center of each Rank.

As foon as the Files are return'd to their Places, after Firing, they are to Face to their proper Front, Prime, Load, Make ready, and wait with recover'd Arms to Fire again in their Turn; all which must be done without any further Word of Command than what was at first given to begin;

and not to discontinue it, 'till order'd so to do.

ARTICLE VII. Street-Firing.

It is so called from your being oblig'd to engage in a Street, High-way, Lane, or narrow Passage, where no more than 10, 12, 16 or 20 Files can March in Front; so that according to the Breadth of the Place, your Platoons must be stronger or weaker.

The Manner of performing it at Exercise, is thus.

The Rear Ranks are to be Closed forward to close Orde, and the Battalion is to Wheel to the Right or Lest by toons, in the same Manner as they do by Sub-division, on the Officers who are appointed to the Platoons remain with and march at the Head of them; whereas, when a Regiment marches by Grand or Sub-division, the Captains march all in the Front and Rear: So that when the Officers are posted to the Platoons and march at the Head of them, it ought to the Call'd, Marching by Platoons, in order to distinguish it from the other, which is Marching by Division; the one being form'd for immediate Action, but the other only for common Marching.

By the Wheeling of the Platoons, they fall in the Reard one another; fo that no more than one Platoon can Fire at

time.

As foon as the Platoons have Wheel'd, they should mand in that Position, in order to Open their Ranks to two Pars Distance. Besides, the Firing will appear more graceful who it is begun while the Regiment is in Motion, than when it stands still: For as that which is perform'd in Motion, carries a greater Resemblance of real Service than the other, it must therefore, by so lively a Representation of Action, raise

the Imagination to a higher Pitch.

VL

vhich

y be

f the

p or

may

Ph.

and

nging

ık.

after cod,

in in

rthe

egin;

treet,

than

cord-

of be

5.

rder,

Ph.

oply

with,

mat

all in

to be

from

being

COM-

car d

e at a

mard

Pace

When

When the Ranks are open'd, and the whole Battalion in Motion, the Major should give the Signal for the Firing to begin; on which, the Officer who commands the Front Platoon is to Halt his Men, order them to make Ready, Kneel and Lock, then Present and Fire; and as soon as they have Fired, they are to recover their Arms, Face from the Center to the Right and Lest outwards, March down the Flanks of the other Platoons, and Form again in the Rear of

the Laft, and immediately Load and Shoulder.

As foon as the Word Fire is given to the first Platoon, the Officer who Commands the second Platoon must order his Men to Make ready, and to march up with Recover'd Arms to the Ground they first fired on, as soon as the others have got on the Flanks; and when his Men have Kneeled and Locked, he is to give the Words, Present, Fire; and when Fired, to Recover, Face outwards, March along the Flanks, and Form in the Rear of the First. The rest of the Platoons are to observe the same Directions in Making ready, Marching up to the Ground on which the First fired; and when Fired, to March and Form in the Rear.

The Platoons are to keep up pretty close to one another,

and to Move or Halt as those in the Front do.

When this is to be put in Practice on real Service, the Front of the Platoons must not be equal to the Breadth of the Place you are to engage in; but there must be a small Space of Ground, or Interval, lest on your Flanks, that those who have Fired may have room to march back and Form in the Rear.

It is in this Manner, when you have not time to raise a Breast-work, that a Pass, Bridge, Road or Street is to be maintain'd against the Enemy, by the Platoons sustaining one another and Firing in their Turn; which may be continued as long as there is an Occasion, almost, without Intermission by one Battalion only.

ARTICLE VIII. Running-Fire.

This Fire is never made use of but upon the Gaining of a Battel, the Taking of a Town, the Celebration of the King's

Birth-day, or those of the Royal Family, or some other extraordinary Cause of Rejoicing; for which Reason the Franci

call it a Feu de joye.

These Firings are always perform'd in the Dusk of the Evening, both in Camp and Garison. The Ranks are to be Closed no nearer than Half Distance, the Front Rank being to Stand as well to the Center and Rear; and when they Present, they are all to raise their Muzzels pretty high, in order to fire in the Air. The Men of each File are to Fire to gether; that is, each File distinctly by its self; and so run pretty quick from one File to another, quite thro' the Regiment.

The Manner of performing it in Camp.

As foon as the Sun fets, the Army is to draw out at the Head of their Encampment; or if the Ground will allow dit, both the Lines may be drawn up in the Front of the first Line of Tents. The Train of Artillery is likewise drawn out on these Occasions, and placed at the Head of the first Line, or upon a rising Ground, if any such lies near them.

The Firing is to begin with the Train, keeping such time between each Gun that 25 or 30 may be Fired in a Minute. It is a fix'd Rule to fire an odd Gun, as 21, 31, &c.

As foon as the Train have fired the Number of Guns appointed them, the Fire of the Small Arms is to begin on the Right of the first Line, running Gradually on from File to File, and from Regiment to Regiment, 'till it comes to the Left of the first Line; then it is to begin on the Left of the second Line, and to run on gradually in the same manner to the Right of that Line, which finishes the first Fire of the whole Army; after which they are all to give three Huzzz, then Load and Shoulder.

As they are to Fire three times on these Occasions, the other two are to be perform'd in the same Manner as the first beginning with the Artillery, from thence with the Right of the fecond Line,

giving three Huzzas after each Fire is quite ended.

To prevent the Fire running too quick, the Regiments in the first Line should not Make ready 'till that on their Right has begun to Fire; and those in the second Line not to Make ready 'till the Regiment on their Lest begins to Fire; those in the first Line being to take it from the Right, and the second Line from the Lest; For should they all Make ready together.

together, the Center or Left would be apt to Fire as foon as t began on the Right; but their not making ready 'till the Regiment, from whom they are to take it, begins to Fire, rill prevent their Firing too foon, which Fault is usually ommitted in these Firings; but very seldom that of being too low.

The Manner of Performing it in Garison.

The Garison is to be drawn up on the Ramparts, extending themselves quite round the Town, if their Numbers will llow of it, and to Face the Parapet, over which they are to Fire.

The Artillery, as in Camp, is to Fire first; then the Small Arms, beginning on the Right of the eldeft Regiment, and o run gradually round to the Left. After the Fire ceases, the whole Garison is to give three Huzzas, then Load and Shoulder. The other two Fires are to be perform'd in the ame Manner; as also the above Directions about the Time of making ready will ferve likewise in Garison.

Having gone thro' the different Firings, as propos'd, I hall give some Directions, in the following Chapter, how Foot are to proceed when attack'd by Horfe, both in Battaion and in the Square; but that I may keep within due Bounds, I shall confine my self to the Management of a

fingle Battalion.





CHAP. VII.

Containing Directions how a Battalion of Foot is to Defend itself when Attack'd by Horse.

ARTICLE I.



S Foot are sometimes Interlin'd with Horse, or Detach'd from the Main Body to secure some important Post, by which they are exposed to the Attacks of Horse, it will be proper to by down some general Rule how a Battalion is to

000

t

ti

B

Si

no

10

all

Vi

ter

be

0

L

COI

int

be

proceed on such an Occasion; both as to the Management of their Fire in Battalion, when only attack'd in Front; and in what Manner they are to throw themselves into a Squar, when their Flanks and Rear lie open and exposed, and how they are to Fire and March when form'd in the Square.

When a Regiment is to March thro' a Country, or posted at a Place, where there is a Possibility of their being atackle by Horse, they should be prepared to Desend themselve against them, by dividing their Platoons in such a Manner, that they may have a constant Succession of Fire, when only attack'd in Front; or be ready to Form the Square when

necessary, without any new Telling off.

If the Battalion is strong enough to admit of it, I would recommend Plan I. in the foregoing Chapter, consisting of 26 Platoons besides Granadiers, which composes three sirings of 5 Platoons each, and a Reserve of the Granadiers and Colour Platoon: And if you would add a surther Strength to the Reserve, the Front Rank of the other Firings may keept to Fire with it: But the chief Point is, that the Square is safer, easier, and quicker form'd from this Plan, than any other now in use, as will appear by the said Plan, when come to treat on the sorming of the Square. But less the Battalion should not be strong enough to admit of 16 Platoons, I have annex'd another of 12 Platoons besides the Granadiers from which the Square may be form'd in the same Manner as the first. It will likewise consist of three Firings, of

4 Platoons each, besides the Granadiers; in which Case, it will be very proper to keep the whole Front Rank and the Granadiers for the Reserve.

If Foot could be brought to know their own Strength, the Danger which they apprehend from Horse would soon vanish; since the Fire of one Platoon, given in due time, is sufficient to break any Squadron: therefore, if a Battalion of Foot would manage their Fire to the best Advantage, and not throw it away at too great a Distance, which they are apt to do, from their appearing nearer than they really are, by their being so much above the Foot, they might bassle a considerable Body of Horse, and make them desist in a very short time from any further Attempts upon them.

But as the Horse will have recourse to Stratagem to draw away your Fire, by making Feint Attacks, with small Parties advanced before the Body, in hopes to make you spend your Fire on them; the Commanding Officer, however, may, without any Hazard, easily disappoint their Designs in the

following Manner:

H.

t is

e, or

forme

ed to

o by is to

nt of

and

Juare,

how

pofted

ack

felve

nner,

when

would

ng of

e it

rs and

ength

12y te

in any

hen I

e Bat-

toons,

anner

gs, of

4 Ph-

Let us suppose a Battalion drawn up where the Horse can only Attack them in Front, the Flanks and Rear being secured by Morasses, Rivers, Hedges, or Ditches. In such a Situation, one Battalion of well-disciplin'd Foot may despise the Attacks of a whole Line of Horse, while they continue their Attacks on Horse-back, and oblige them to Retire with considerable Loss,

We will suppose then a Battalion posted as above, and a Body of Horse, having no other way to Pass than thro' that which is occupied by the Foot, oblig'd to Attack them in that Situation.

In this Case, the Officer who commands the Cavalry will, no doubt, Form them into several Lines, in order to Sustain one another, not doubting but the First and Second Lines will be forced to give Way by the Fire of the Foot; and in all Probability they may be order'd to Advance with no other View than to receive the Fire, and then Retire thro' the Intervals of the Squadrons, which are marching to sustain them; imagining that two or three Feint Attacks of this kind will be sufficient to draw away all their Fire, and give the rest an Opportunity to fall upon them before they can have time to Load again: But if the Fire of a Battalion is manag'd according to the Directions of my first Plan, which is divided into three distinct Firings, besides a Reserve, they can never be without one or more Fires, for every Attack they can make:

make: For if the Lines of Horse don't leave a considerable Distance between each, they will run a great Hazard of be ing broke, and thrown into Confusion by their own Troop, who are order'd, or oblig'd, to Retire; which the three First Attacks, with any tolerable Conduct in the Officer who Commands the Battalion, will certainly be obliged to; and if they leave proper Intervals between the Lines of Horfe, it will give the Foot time, notwithstanding the quick Motions of the Cavalry, to Load, or at least very near it, before the will have an Occasion to make Use of a second Fire. But let them Attack after one another as quick as the Nature of the thing will admit of, the Platoons of the First Firing will be Loaded before they can possibly have an Occasion to make use of those of the Third Firing; so that the Battalion can ne ver be without two Firings and the Referve; for which Rafon I don't think there is an Occasion to Referve the Whole Front Rank, which Addition of Fire to each Platoon is of great Consequence, and, in my Opinion, of infinite more Service than it can be of when Reserv'd to the last; particularly fo, fince there is a great Probability that you won'th reduced to the last Fire; and if you are not reduced to the last Fire, the Front Rank is render'd useless by reserving it, the Fire of which might do considerable Execution in firing : long with their Platoons. However, the Commanding Officer will fee by the Disposition of the Enemy, whether it is Necessary to reserve the Front Rank, or not. His own Rafon must direct him in that Affair, the Rules laid down her being rather General than Positive; the Variety of Circumstances which happen in Action rendering it impossible to determine absolutely on this Head.

I shall now return to my former Proposition, that of disappointing their Designs, in drawing away your Fire by seint

Attacks.

An Officer, who has had any Experience, may discover the Designs of the Enemy by the Disposition of their Troops; particularly in the Case we now suppose. If you find them form'd into several Lines, you may conclude it is to make several Attacks immediately after one another, and that the first and second are only design'd as Feints to draw away your Fire; for which Reason it would be proper to order three or four small Detachments, of sour or sive Files each, taken from different Parts of the Battalion, to advance ten or twelve Paces in the Front, and when the Horse comes within thirty or forty Paces of them to Fire, and then retire immediately into their

their Places. If this was only defign'd as a Feint, they will retire at that Fire; but if it was not a Feint, tho' it may not be sufficient to break them entirely, yet it may do them confiderable Damage. and put them into some Diforder, particularly if any of their Officers should be kill'd or wounded. If those Squadrons should advance after that Fire, they must be receiv'd by the Platoons of the first Firing, which, I am convinc'd, will fend them back faster than they came on, unless their Horses are ungovernable, and by that Means bring tome of them forward contrary to their Inclinations.

The Detachments, or fmall Platoons, fo advanced, should be taken out of the Platoons of the Third Firing or Referve, by which they will have time to Load, after they return, before there will be an Occasion to make use of that Fi-

ring.

If the Squadrons of the first Line retire at the Fire of the advanced Platoons, in order to make room for the fecond Line to advance, you may ferve them in the fame manner, by advancing the same Number of small Platoons out of the fame Firing, there being no fear from the Want of time, fince the fecond Line can't Charge 'till the first have got clear of their Front. Besides, if the second Line is too near the First, they will be in great Danger of being broke by them; to avoid which, they will leave proper Intervals between the Lines, as well as between the Squadrons; fo that you can't fail of Time to put it in Execution, provided proper Care was taken beforehand to make the Disposition proposed.

By this Disposition, every Attack will receive two Fires, after which, I believe, there is no great Danger of their advancing; but if they should, the Platoons of the second Fi-

ring are ready to be made use of.

Some may object against the Advancing of the little Parties, as not being sufficient to break or repulse the Squadrons, and therefore give them an Opportunity to Charge those Parties before they can join the Battalion; but as they are only small Platoons, and advance but a very little way from the Front, they can fall into their Places after they have fired in a Moment, and consequently avoid the Danger with a great deal of Eafe.

Those Parties should not advance before the Battalion, till the Cavalry are in full March to attack you; left they should discover your Design, and order their Attacks accord-

ingly.

When the advanced Parties make Ready, the Platoons of the first Firing should do the same; but great Care must be taken that they don't Fire 'till the advanced Platoons as Return'd, and even not then 'till the Horse are within 25 or 30 Paces: For on the Keeping of your Fire depends your Sasety. If on Presenting, the Horse should make a full Halt, or Wheel off, as they frequently do, the Men must be caution'd not to Fire, but immediately Recover their Arms without Firing, less they should do that only by way of Feint to draw away your Fire at some Distance, and then make a Real Attack, hoping to find you unprovided to receive them.

When Foot are once brought to that Perfection of Disc. pline, as to Recover their Arms, after they are Presented, without Firing, in the Face of the Enemy, the Horse will never pretend to attack them a second time, but keep their due Distance; but if they throw away their Fire too soon, they will take the Advantage of it, and be upon them in an Instant; and if they can once Penetrate but with one Squadron, it will throw a Battalion of six hundred Men into Consusion; after which, their Conquest will be easy.

As the Situation of the Battalion, as above mentioned, was extreamly Advantageous by having their Flanks fecured; let us now suppose one less so, by having one Flank ex-

posed, besides the Front.

We will suppose then, that one of your Flanks, as well a your Front, lies open to the Enemy; and that the Hork have made a Disposition to attack you in both. The only Expedient against it is, the Forming of two Fronts, making the Figure of an L, which is immediately done by Wheeling back half of the Battalion, or a sufficient Number of Patoons, a quarter of the Circle.

If you are to maintain that Post, this Disposition is better than an entire Square, by having double the Fire in each of

these Faces to those in the Square.

The Firing by Platoons may be preserv'd in this Figure as well as in Battalion, by dividing the Platoons of each Face into two Firings, and reserving the whole Front-Rank and the Granadiers for the third and last. If you think that the Angle, where the two Faces join, is expos'd, a small Platoon of Granadiers may be form'd on it; and that the Platoons may have nothing to obstruct their Firing, it would be proper to send the Ensigns with the Colours into the Rear.

II so be as or out to make the serve

iscinted,
will
their
coon,
n an
quainto

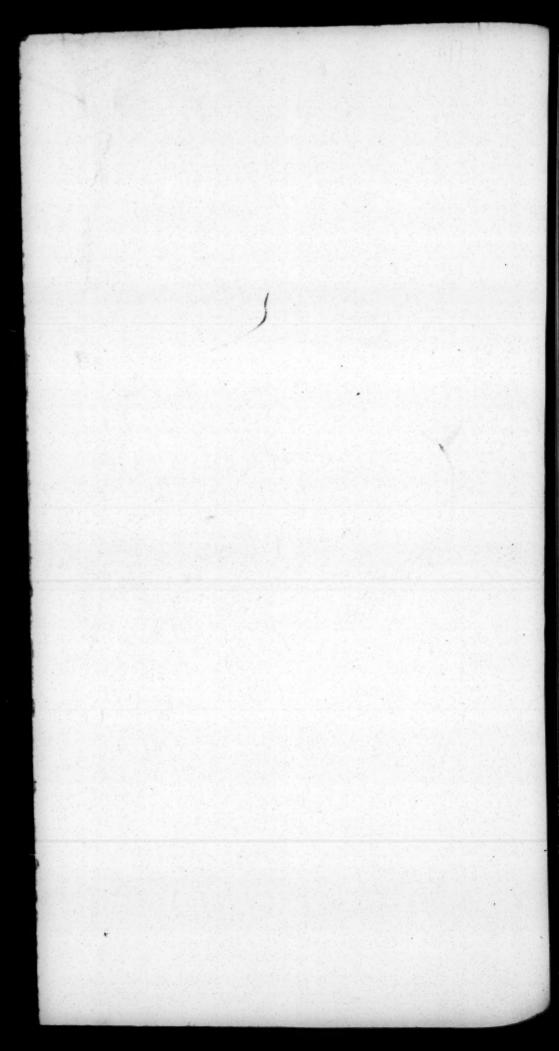
ned, ired; ex-

ell a Hork only king eling Pla-

etter ch of

Face and the Plateons proper

The



ap. VII. The Fire of each Face must be managed according as they attack'd; and no more Platoons must be Fired than what absolutely necessary to Repulse them, preserving the rest h the utmost Care.

I own that I never heard of a fingle Battalion being form'd o this Figure upon Action; and therefore I shall not infist ch on it; but as the Flank of an Army is often fecured this Manner, by Wheeling back of Battalions and Squaons, I thought it might fall out the same way with a Bation.

ARTICLE H.

I shall now proceed to shew how the Square is to be m'd from the faid Plans, without altering the former Diffition of Officers, or any new Telling off; and that it ay be comprehended with the more Ease, I have marked Platoons, which form each Face, different from one ano-See the annexed Plans.

The Figures in the Front, are only the Platoons numrd, from one to fixteen; by which you will fee how they l into the several Faces of the Square.

The Figures in the Rear, are to shew what Firing the atoons belong to when Form'd in the Square.

The Platoons number'd (1.) on the Infide, being on the ight of each Face, when faced Square, which is outward, long to the First Firing.

Those number'd (2.) on the Inside, belong to the Second

ring.
Those number'd (3.) on the Inside, belong to the Third ring.

Those number'd (4.) belong to the Fourth Firing.

The Platoons of Granadiers are likewise Sub-divided for eir Forming on the several Angles, their Numbers shewing e Angles on which they are to Form.

I believe I need not give a further Explanation of the an, than what is already mention'd, for its being fully mprehended; fo that I may proceed to give the proper Dictions for the Forming the Battalion into the Square, and educing the Square into Battalion.

As the Officers are not to be chang'd (but to remain in e Posts assigned them, both in the Front and Rear, for the iring in Battalion) or any new Division of the Platoons, e Square may be form'd in a very short Space of Time;

for which Reason the Commanding Officer may defer the ing of it, 'till he sees the Disposition actually made to attait

the Battalion in every Part.

As foon as he perceives this, he must avoid the Danger, by Forming the Battalion into a Hollow Square; or according to the French way of calling it, un Battalion Quarré, a Squar Battalion,

Which is perform'd by three Words of Command.

I. Form the Hollow Square.

II. March.

III. Face Square.

In the following Pages I shall explain what they are to perform at each.

At the First Word of Command, Form the hollow Square, or, in my Opinion, more properly speaking, Form the Square, the two Platoons of Granadiers, Number 3 and 2, and the fix Platoons of the Battalion on the Right, Number 1, 2, 5, 4, 5, and 6, and six Platoons on the Lest, Number 11, 11, 13, 14, 15, and 16, Face all to the Right-about on the Lest Heels, the Officers in the Front and Rear of those Platoons doing the same; as also the Serjeants who are posted in the Rear of those Platoons.

The two outward Platoons of Granadiers, Number 1, and 4, with their Officers, as also the two Divisions of Drummers on the Flanks, face to the Right and Left inwards.

The four Platoons in the Center, Number 7, 8, 9, and 10,

keep their proper Front.

At the Second Word of Command, March, the Platons which faced to the Right-about, wheel Inwards, and as som as the Platoons which form the Right-face, N° 3, 4, 5, and 6, and those which compose the Lest-face, N° 11, 12, 15, and 14, have wheel'd a Quarter of the Circle, they are to Stand; but the two Platoons on the Right of the Battalion, N° 1, and 2, and the Two on the Lest, N° 15, and 16, being to compose the Rear-face, are to continue wheeling lowerds another Quarter of the Circle, by which the Right and Lest Platoons of the Battalion, N° 1, and 16, join in the Center of the Rear-face.

The two Platoons of Granadiers, N° 3, and z, which faced to the Right-about, wheel at the same time with the Flatoons of the Battalion; but instead of Wheeling on the Ex-

tremity of the Flanks, they may incline inwards 'till the Granadiers in the Right, Num. 3. come opposite to the Interval between the Platoons Num. 2, and 3, and the Granadiers on the Left, Num. 2, 'till they come opposite to the Interval between the Platoons, Num. 14 and 15, and then to Wheel and March directly in the Rear of those Platoons, which, when the Square is form'd, fall into the Flanks, (which for Distinction we shall call the Rear Flanks, as the others the Front) fo that when they all stand, those Platoons of Granadiers will be on the Rear Angles which they are to Cover.

The two Platoons of Granadiers, Num. 1, and 4, which faced to the Right and Left Inwards, are, at the fame time, to march in a direct Line to the Right and Left Flanks of the four Center Platoons, Num. 7, 8, 9, and 10, which stood; and when they come to the Flanks of those Platoons, they

are to fland, being to form on the Front Angles.

The Numbers here referred to, are those marked in the Front of the Battalion.

After the foregoing Word of Command is executed, the Regiment will appear in this Position.

The four Center Platoons, which compose the Front Face of the Square, face outward to their proper Front.

The twelve Platoons, which compose the three other Faces of the Square, face inward, that is, into the Square.

The two Platoons of Granadiers, Num. 2, and 3, which are to form on the Rear Angles, face the Platoons on whose Angles they are to Form.

The two Platoons of Granadiers, Num. 1, and 4, which are to form on the Front Angles, face the Flanks of the

Front Face looking along the Ranks.

The Officers and Serjeants Face as the Platoons do, on

which they are posted.

At the third Word of Command, Face Square, they all Face outward; the Right, Left and Rear Faces of the Square, and the two Platoons of Granadiers, Num. 2, and 3, going to the Left-about on their Left Heels. The two Platoons of Granadiers, Num. 1, and 4, Face to their proper Front; after which the four Platoons of Granadiers Wheel back immediately and Form on the Angles, as described in the Plan.

As foon as the Men have Faced Square, the Colonel, Major, Enfigns with the Colours, Adjutant and Drummers march into the Square; and the Drummers are to be divided

into four Divisions, placing one in the Rear of each Face

which the Drum-Major is to perform.

The Field-Officers can have no fix'd Post assign'd them in the Square; but are to have a watchful Eye over the Whole, and to move about from Place to Place to give the necessary Directions to the several Parts as occasion may require.

The Enfigns with the Colours are to post themselves in the

Center of the Square.

The Officers who Command the Platoons remain in the Front of them without the Square; and those who were posted in the Rear remain within the Square, in the Rear of the several Platoons; and when any of the Officers in the Front are killed or wounded, the Officers in the Rear of those Platoons are to move out immediately, and take the Command.

It is evident from hence, that the Square may be form'd in this manner, in less than a Minute, if press'd in time; there being no Alteration requir'd in the Disposition of Officen from that of the Battalion drawn up for Action; or any new telling off the Platoons. Besides, another Advantage in this Manner of Forming the Square, is, that you preserve a Front of the four Center Platoons without moving, which will secure you 'till the Square is Form'd; a Circumstance, in my

Opinion, of no small Consideration.

As Victory, even in a fuperior Army, is uncertain, from the Variety of Circumstances incident in Action: And when we imagine Fortune hovering over us with a Crown of Laurel, the often eludes our Hopes, and bestows it on the adverse Party; we must not therefore depend on Her too much, but act with Caution, and be prepared against all Events, before we enter upon Action. And as the making a handsome Retreat is the most difficult Part of the Service, and, next to the Gaining of a Battel, the most Commendable; it is therefore incumbent on the Commanding Officer of every Regiment, to have the same Regard towards the Preservation of his Men, as the General has to the Whole, For which Reason, the Platoons of every Battalion should be told off, in fuch a manner, and the Officers appointed to them, that when the Battalion is ordered, or forced to retire, it may be perform'd without any further Directions than the Words of Command, for the Marching off in Battalion, by Grand or Sub-divisions, or in the Square; by which different Ways the Battalion should be told off, and the Officen and Soldiers thoroughly acquainted with them before they engage,

The Cafe, a comm

Chap

ngage he Per

I. F1

At

he Ba , cov hey di Right: The

he Ro Right At of the Left o

Num. n a L Whee

Th

nove outwa Platoo on the Th

who had Right he Frank Plank Whee

hey a

Thutant Drum As

Line bird gage, that, when order'd, they may be in no Confusion in

How the Square is to be Reduced.

The Square may be Reduced into Battalion with as much ale, and in as short a Space of Time, as it was Form'd in; or the performing of which there are only three Words of Command.

1. From the Square, Form the Battalion. II. March. III. Halt.

At the first Word of Command, From the Square, Form le Battalion, the two Platoons of Granadiers, Num. 1, and , covering the Front Angles, Wheel towards the Front 'till bey dress in a Line with the Front Face, and then face to the

light and Left outward, and stand.
The two Platoons of Granadiers, Num. 2, and 3, covering he Rear Angles, Wheel 'till they come in a Line with the

light and Left Faces of the Square, and then stand.

At the fecond Word of Command, March, the Platoons of the Rear Face Wheel from the Center to the Right and Left outwards, thus: Num. 1, and 2, Wheel to the Left, and Num. 15, and 16, to the Right; and as foon as they come na Line with the Right and Left Faces, those Faces are to Wheel along with them towards the Front.

The Platoons of Granadiers of the Rear Angles are to move at the fame time; but in Marching they are to incline utwards 'till they come to the Extremity of the Flanks of the Patoons, Num, 1, and 16, and then to Wheel up with them

on their Flanks.

The two Platoons of Granadiers of the Front Angles, tho had Wheel'd up and Faced outward, are to March to the light and Left outward in a direct Line from the Flanks of he Front Face, and when they have March'd far enough for he Platoons of the Battalion, and the Granadiers (who were Wheeling up) to form between them and the Front Face, hey are to Stand.

The Colonel, Major, Enfigns with the Colours and Adtant are to March at the same time into the Front; and the

Drummers to repair to their former Posts.

As foon as the Platoons, which are Wheeling up, come in Line with the Front Face, the Major is to proceed to the hird Word of Command.

H 2

Halt. At this the Platoons which compos'd the Right, Let and Rear Faces, and the Granadiers of the Rear Angle Stand; and the Granadiers of the Front Angles, who far from the Flanks, face to their proper Front; by which the Square is reduc'd, and the Battalion form'd as before, without moving the Officers from their Platoons, either in the Free

or Rear, in the Forming or Reducing the Square.

The first Plan being calculated for a Regiment consisting of 600 Men, lest it should be reduced to about 500, I have annex'd a second Plan accordingly, told off into 12 Platoon besides Granadiers; the Forming of which into a Square, and the Reducing it again into Battalion, is to be perform'd in the same manner as the first; with this Difference only, that a each Face is compos'd but of three Platoons, there must be two Platoons taken from one Flank, and one Platoon from the other to Form the Rear Face; which Difference is so small, that I believe it will not be objected against in Service.

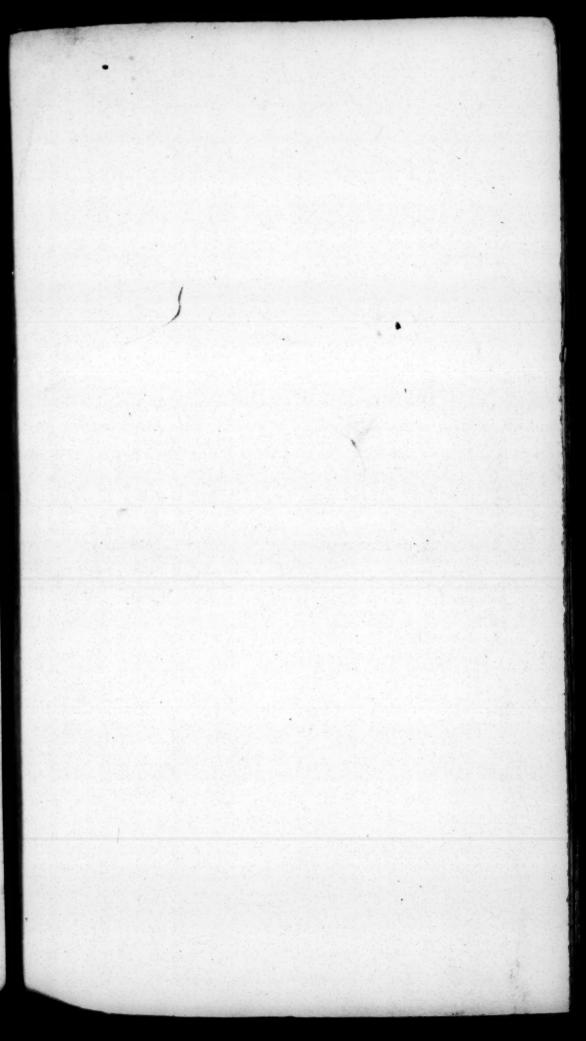
whatever it may in Exercise.

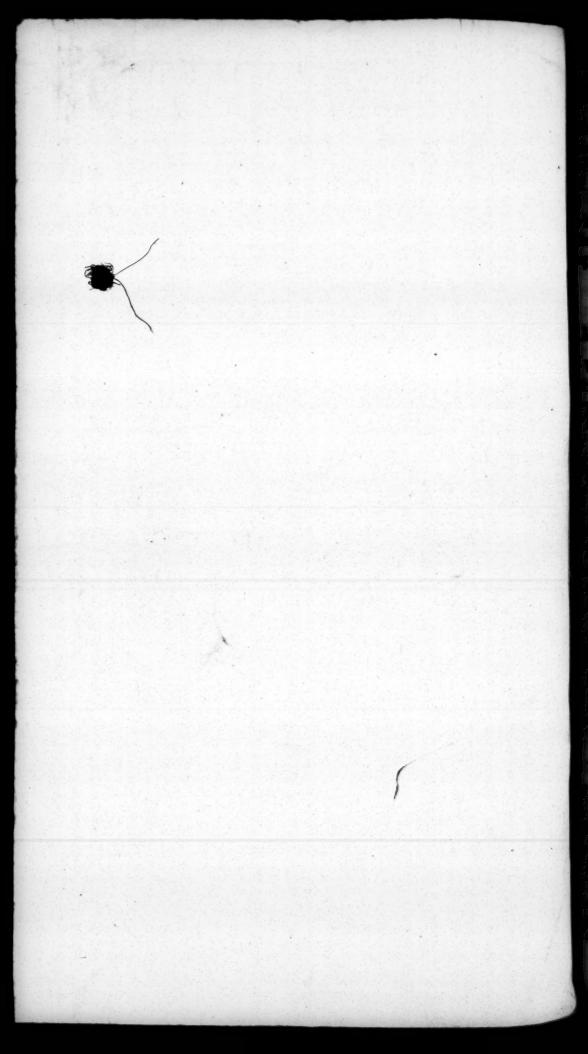
When the Strength of the Battalion will allow of it, the telling off the Platoons according to the first Plan is what would recommend, as being the most perfect both for the Firings in Battalion and in the Square, and for the Regularity and Ease in forming the Square. If the Regiment consist of 600 Men, they may be told off into 18 Platoons, including the 2 Platoons of Granadiers, two Platoons of which will consist of 12 Files each, and the other 16 Platoons of It Files each; so that by making of the two Platoons of Granadiers 12 Files each, they will have, when they are sub-divided for the forming of the Square, a Platoon of 6 Files for each Angle, which is as sew as they ought to have for the covering them.

But when a Battalion confifts of 500 Men, the Model of the fecond Plan may be follow'd, most of the Platoons of which will confist of 12 Files; they may be divided into three Firings, containing 4 Platoons in each, and the Granadiens kept for the Reserve, which should be carefully preserved if your Flanks are the least exposed to the Enemy's Attacks: And if you are under any Apprehension of the Enemy's Horse, it would be very proper to strengthen your Reserve, by adding the whole Front Rank of the Battalion to it, and only fire the two Rear Ranks of the three Firings by Pla-

toons.

The Manner of Forming the Square, as above describ'd, is the Dutch Way of performing it; the bare mentioning of which,





sch, will recommend it infinitely more than all I am able of faying of it. But as other People may not be soffess'd in favour of it so much as I am, I shall therefore down another Way of Forming the Square (and which renerally practis'd by the British Foot) by Divisions; in some Remarks why I preser the Dutch Way to this: I which I shall give Directions for the Firing and Marchin the Square.

ARTICLE III.

lanner of Forming the Square by 4 Grand-Divisions.

When the Square is to be Form'd by 4 Grand-Divisions hout having gone thro' any Part of the Platoon Firing, are to proceed in the following Manner.

The Rear Half Files of the Battalion must be doubled to Lest; after that the Granadiers must be divided on the ht and Lest, and then sub-divided for the Angles.

he Battalion must be divided into four Grand-Divisions, each Grand-Division sub-divided into three Platoons each. the annex'd Plan, where the said is told off, as here de-

he Captains, Subalterns and Serjeants are to be divided ly on the 4 Grand-Divisions; after which there must be officer appointed to command each Platoon, who contiin the Front; but the remaining part of the Officers are all immediately into the Rear of their several Grandsions.

hen the Divisions are told off, and the Officers appointthem, as above directed, the Major is to proceed to Words of Command for the Forming of the Square, hare the same as in the other way of doing it.

I. Form the Square,

this Word of Command, the first Grand-Division and Platoons of Granadiers, Num. 1, and 4, face to the and Lest inwards, thus: the Platoon of Granadiers, 1, and the first Grand-Division face to the Lest, and atoon of Granadiers, Num. 4, faces to the Right. e other three Grand-Divisions, and the two Platoons of Idiers, Num. 2, and 3, face, at the same time, to the about.

H 3

The

The Officers and Serjeants face as the feveral Divifions

on which they are posted.

The Drummers on the Flanks fall in the Rear of the ist and fourth Grand-Divisions, and then face as they do; is the Center-Division of Drummers falls in between the figns with the Colours and the Front Rank of the sevent Platoon of the Battalion, being one of those which compare the Rear Face. After this the Major proceeds.

II. March.

After the Word of Command, the Whole are to man and form the Square, thus.

The fecond and fourth Grand-Divisions wheel inward Quarter of the Circle, and form the Right and Left Facul

the Square.

The third Grand-Division, with the Colonel, Lieutent-Colonel, Ensigns with the Colours, and the third Divisions Drummers, march in a strait Line to the Rear, 'till they can to the extream Flanks of the Right and Left Faces, and the stand, which third Grand-Division forms the Rear Faces the Square.

The first Grand-Division marches to the Left, 'till to come into the Ground where the third Grand-Division stout and then stand, being to form the Front Face of the Square

The Platoon of Granadiers, Num. 2, wheels with a Left Face, and stands when they do, being to cover a Angle.

The Platoon of Granadiers, Num. 3, marches to a Right Flank of the Right Face, and stands, being to come

that Angle.

The two Platoons of Granadiers, Num. 1, and 4, be faced inwards, march in a direct Line to the Flanks of Front Face, and then stand, being to cover the Front be gles.

When the feveral Grand-Divisions and Platoons of Ganadiers have march'd as above directed, they will appear

the following Position.

The first Grand-Division, composing the Front Face the Square, stand faced to the Lest.

The third Grand-Division, forming the Rear Face, face the Rear.

The second and fourth Grand-Divisions, which forms
Right and Left Faces of the Square, face into the Square.

The two Platoons of Granadiers, Num. 1, and 4, being to cover the Front Angles, face to the Right and Left inwards.

The two Platoons of Granadiers, Num. 2, and 3, being to cover the Rear Angles, face as the Right and Left Faces

The Officers and Serjeants face as their respective Divisions

The Colonel, Lieutenant-Colonel, Enfigns with the Colours and Drummers, having march'd as before directed, fall into the Square.

As foon as they have come to their Ground and fland, the Major proceeds to the third and last Word of Command.

III. Face Square.

At this Word of Command, the Whole face outward, thus,

The Front Face going to the Right, and the Right and Left Faces to the Left-about, the two Platoons of Granadiers, Num. 1, and 4, face to their proper Frout, and the two Platoons, Num. 2, and 3, face to the Left-about, immediately after which the four Platoons of Granadiers wheel back and cover their feveral Angles.

The Officers, Serjeants, and Drummers face as their Divisions do, and the Drum-Major is to divide the Drummers

equally in the Rear of each Face.

The Officers, who were posted in the Rear of the Third Grand-Division, are to move immediately into the Square; and the Officers, who were appointed to command the Platoons of that Division, are to move out, the Rear Rank of that Face becoming then the Front.

As foon as they have faced Square, the Major and Adjuant march into the Square, no Officer remaining without,

ut those who command the Platoons.

The Firings in this are the same as that of the Second Plan, hey being calculated for the same Number of Men; but if he Battalion consists of Six Hundred Men, the Grand-Divisions may be divided into Four Platoons each, as the first Plan is, and yet keep to the forming the Square by Grand-Division.

I shall now shew how it is to be Reduced into Battalion.

I. From the Square, Form the Battalion.

At this Word of Command, the whole being Facel Square, the Front Face, or first Grand-Division, faces to the Right; the Rear Face, or third Grand-Division, faces to the Lest-about; the Two Platoons of Granadiers, Num. 1, and 4, covering the Front-Angles, Wheel towards their proper Front, and when they come in a Line with the Front-Face they are to sace to the Right and Lest outward; the Two Platoons of Granadiers, Num. 2, and 3, covering the Rear-Angles, Wheel towards their proper Front, 'till they come in a Line with the Right and Lest Faces, or second and sourth Grand-Divisions, and then stand. The Offices face with their Divisions.

II. March.

At this, the Whole March and Form the Battalion, thus. The Front Face and the first Platoon of Granadiers March in a direct Line to the Right, and as soon as they have got to the Right of the Right Face, they are to stand; only the strict Platoon of Granadiers is to march a little further, that the third Platoon of Granadiers may have room to Form between them and the Right of the first Grand-Division.

The Right and Left Faces Wheel towards their proper Front a Quarter of the Circle, and then stand, the second Platoon of Granadiers Wheeling up on the Flank of the Lest

Face, or fourth Grand-Division.

The third Platoon of Granadiers Marches to the Right, and Forms between the first Platoon of Granadiers and the

Right of the Battalion.

The fourth Platoon of Granadiers Marches in a flraight Line to the Left, and when they have left Room enough for the Left Face and second Platoon of Granadiers to Form in, they are to fland.

The Rear Face, or third Grand-Division, with the Colonel, Lieutenant-Colonel, and Ensigns with the Colours, March straight forward to the Front, and when they come between the second and fourth Grand-Divisions and Dress in Line with them, they are to stand.

As foon as they have all got into their proper Posts, as be

fore, the Major proceeds.

III. Halt.

III. Halt.

At this Word of Command, they all face to their proper Front, thus. The first Platoon of Granadiers and the first Grand-Division face to the Left, and the fourth Platoon of Granadiers to the Right; after which the Officers in the Rear may be order'd into the Front, and the Drummers to their former Posts; which compleats the Reduction of the Square

into Battalion.

The only thing that is irregular in the Forming of the Square in this manner, is in the third Grand-Division, by the Rear Rank becoming the Front, and the Front Rank the Rear, when the Square is form'd, and the Officers in the Front and Rear changing of their Posts; but this piece of Irregularity is of no great Consequence upon Service, fince the Men in the Rear Rank may be as good as those in the Front, and the Officers may change in a Moment.

But the greatest Fault consists in there being no Front preferv'd while the Square is Forming, the Whole being in Motion at the fame time, which may be of dangerous Confe-

quence if the Enemy's Horse should be near.

Whereas the Dutch manner of Forming the Square, as explain'd in the fecond Article, has not the Irregularity abovemention'd, nor the Danger, while it is Forming, for Want of a Front to the Enemy. Besides it may be done quicker, and with as much Ease, by practising of it at Exercise, as that by Grand-Divisions: However, those who don't approve of the Dutch Way, (which I imagine will be but very few) may follow the other; but before they determine absolutely, it will be but fair to try both.

I shall give Directions in the following Article, how they are to Fire and March in the Square at Exercise, fince the doing of it upon Action must depend on the Manner you are attack'd, in which the Commanding Officer must be directed

by his own Judgment and Experience.

ARTICLE IV.

Directions for Marching and Firing in the Square.

The Square being form'd, and the Platoons of each Face divided into their proper Firings, as describ'd by the different Plans

Plans in the foregoing Article, they are to proceed to the

Firings.

I shall begin with Directions for that of the first Plan, containing four Firings, which is one more than they are generally told off in, either in Battalion or in the Square, which renders it, in my Opinion, the more perfect, as being of greater Service than when they are divided into three.

For when they are Told off into three Firings, whether in Battalion, or in the Square, the entire Front-rank is commonly kept for the Reserve, and the two Rear-ranks only fired by Platoons; so that in Reality there are four Firing, without being call'd so: Tho', I humbly conceive, the Estect won't be the same; from the Observation I made on the Firing by Ranks in the fifth Article of the preceding Chapter; as also in the first Article of this on reserving the Front-rank.

Those who differ with me on this Head, may divide the Square into three Firings, according to the Method of the second Plan; but as the four Firings will appear better in the Exercise, by having one upon the marching towards each Front, I will pursue that Scheme, and give the necessary Directions accordingly.

The Firings may be perform'd flanding, or by making:

Movement before each Firing.

The four Platoons of Granadiers on the Angles, and the Platoons on the Right of each Face, Num. 1, on the Infide, belong to the first Firing; so that when the Platoons of the first Firing are order'd to Make ready, the sour Platoons of Granadiers, and the sour Platoons of the Square, Num. 1, do it together.

The fecond Firing confifts of the third Platoons from the

Right of each Face, Num. 2, on the Infide.

The third Firing confifts of the fecond Platoons from the Right of each Face, Num. 3, on the Infide.

The fourth confifts of the Lest Platoons of each Face,

Num. 4, on the Infide.

When you would go through the Firings both Standing and Marching, it would be proper to vary them from one another.

Those Standing, to be perform'd in their Order; and those Marching, together; as is explain'd in the third Article of the fixth Chapter.

But left Firing in their Order in the Square should not be thoroughly comprehended by the Directions in the Article above-mentioned, we shall here explain how it is to be per-

form'd.

When the Granadiers are to fire in their Order, the first platoon of Granadiers, Num. 1. covering the Angle on the Right of the Front Face, fires first. The Platoon of Granadiers, Num. 2, on the Right of the Rear Face, fires next. The Granadiers, Num. 3. on the Right of the Right Face, fire the third. The Granadiers, Num. 4, on the Right of the Lest Face, fire last.

When the Platoons of the Square are to fire in their Order, if it is those of the first Firing, they are to make ready when the Granadiers do; and as soon as the fourth Platoon of Granadiers has fired, the Platoon, Num. 1, of the Front Face fires; then the Platoon, Num. 1, of the Rear Face fires next; after that the Platoon, Num. 1, of the Right Face; and lastly the Platoon, Num. 1, of the Lest Face.

The Platoons of the other Firings are to observe the same Method, when they are to fire in their Order, by beginning with that in the Front Face; secondly, that of the Rear Face;

thirdly, the Right Face; and fourthly, the Left Face.

The first Firing consists of the four Platoons of Granadiers, and the four Platoons of the Square, Num. 1. on the

The other three Firings confift of four Platoons each, one in each Face of the Square. See how they are dispos'd of by the Plan, the Numbers on the Inside shewing which Firing they belong to.

How the Square is to Fire, Standing.

At the Beating of the Preparative, the Platoons of the first Firing Make ready, and as soon as the sour Platoons of Granadiers come to their Recover, and cock their Firelocks, they are to march forward three Paces, then Kneel and Lock; but the sour Platoons of the Square, Num. 1, who are of the first Firing, stand with Recover'd Arms, being to march forward three Paces when the Granadiers are order'd to Present, to open a Passage for them to retire into the Square when they have fired; and as soon as the Granadiers have got into the Square, the Platoons are to fall back into their Place, and immediately Kneel and Lock.

When the Platoons have made ready, as before directed, the Major orders a Flam; at which the Officer who commands the first Platoon of Granadiers, Num. 1, gives the

Words, Present and Fire; after which they are to Recover their Arms, face to the Right-about, march into the Square, then halt and face the Angle, and immediately load and shoulder.

As foon as the first Platoon of Granadiers has fired, the Officer commanding the second Platoon of Granadiers is to order his to do the same, and then march into the Square, After that the third Platoon of Granadiers is to fire, and then the fourth.

When the four Platoons of Granadiers have fired, the Platoons of the Square, of the first Firing, are to fire in their Order. They are to be very exact in moving forward three Paces when the Word *Present* is given to the Platoon of Granadiers which covers their Angle; and, when they have march'd into the Square, to fall back into their Places, and immediately Kneel and Lock.

After the first Firing is over, a Preparative is to be beat for the Platoons of the second Firing to Make ready; then a Flam for them to Fire, which they are to do in their Order.

The third and fourth Firings are to be performed in the

fame manner.

As foon as the Platoons have fired, they are immediately to Load and Shoulder.

After the last Firing is over, the Platoons on the Right of each Face, Num. 1, are to march forward three Paces, to open a Passage for the Granadiers to march out of the Square, and Form on the Angles as before; and as soon as the Granadiers are marched out, they are to fall back into their Places. This may be deferr'd 'till the Platoons of the first Firing are order'd to make Ready a second time; in which Case, as soon as they have made Ready, the Platoons of the Square, Num. 1, are to march forward three Paces, and stand there with Recover'd Arms 'till the Granadiers have marched out, fired, and return'd again into the Square, after which they are to fall back into their Places, Kneel, Lock and Fire: However, I shall follow the first of these two Methods, and give Directions accordingly.

They having gone thro' the Firings in the Square Standing. I shall now shew how they are to perform it Marching.

Directions for the Square to March.

The Drummers being divided in the Rear of each Face of the Square, the Major orders the Square to be ready to face and and march towards that Front on which the Drummers there posted shall beat a March; and as soon as they cease beating,

they are to Halt and face Square.

As there are four Firings told off in the Plan of this Square, they should make a Movement towards each Front before each Firing, by marching 20 or 30 Paces at a time, or more or less, as the Commanding Officer shall think proper, or the Ground admit of it.

Before we proceed further, it will be necessary to give Directions how the several Parts of the Square are to Face and March, on the Drummers beating on the different Fronts.

When the Division of Drummers in the Rear of the Front Face are order'd to beat a March, the Whole Square is to face and march towards that Front, thus: The Rear Face comes to the Right-about on their Left Heels; the Right Face goes to the Left on their Right Heels; the Left Face to the Right on their Left Heels, and the 4 Platoons of Granadiers Wheel an eighth part of the Circle towards that Front. All the Officers, Serjeants, and Drummers, are to face as those Parts do on which they are posted.

As foon as they have faced, as above directed, they are all to step forward together, and march in that Order, without opening or closing their Ranks or Files, very slow towards the said Front as long as the March is beat, and when the Drummers are order'd to cease, they are then to Halt and

face Square, thus:

The Rear Face goes to the Left-about on their Left Heels. The Right Face to the Right on their Right Heels. The Left Face to the Left on their Left Heels; and The 4 Platoons of Granadiers Wheel back and cover their Angles.

When the Division of Drummers in the Rear of the Rear Face beats a March, they are all to Face and March towards that Front, thus:

The Platoons of Granadiers Wheel, as before, towards that Front.

The Front Face goes to the Right-about on their Left Heels.

The Right Face faces to the Right on their Left Heels.
The Left Face faces to the Left on their Right Heels.

After which, they are all to March towards the Rear Front, as long as the March continues beating, and when it ceases they are to face Square, and stand, thus:

The Granadiers are to Wheel back and cover their Angles.

The Front Face goes to the Left-about on their Left Heels.

The Right Face to the Left on their Left Heels; and The Left Face to the Right on their Right Heels.

On the beating of a March in the Rear of the Right Face, they are all to Face and March towards that Front.

The Granadiers are to Wheel towards that Front.
The Left Face goes to the Right-about on their Left Heels.
The Front Face to the Right on their Left Heels; and
The Rear Face to the Left on their Right Heels.

As foon as the March ceases, they are all to Face Square.

The Granadiers Wheel back and cover their Angles.
The Left Face goes to the Left-about on their Left Heels.
The Front Face to the Left on their Left Heels; and
The Rear Face to the Right on their Right Heels.

On the beating of a March in the Rear of the Left Face, they are all to Face and March towards that Front.

The Granadiers Wheel towards that Front.
The Right Face goes to the Right-about on their Left
Heels.

The Front Face to the Left on their Right Heels; and The Rear Face to the Right on their Left Heels.

When the March ceases, they are all to Face Square.

The Granadiers Wheel back and cover their Angles.
The Right Face goes to the Left-about on their Left Heels,
The Front Face to the Right on their Right Heels; and
The Rear Face to the Left on their Left Heels.

The March is to be beat only by that Division of Drummers who are posted in the Rear of that Face towards whose Front you intend to march; which finishes the Directions how

the several Parts of the Square are to face and march towards

each of the four Fronts.

The Square being to march before each Firing, in order to vary it from that Standing, the Platoons of each Firing should fire together; if so, the Major must acquaint them with it, and give the Words of Command himself; after which he proceeds in the following Manner:

Drummers of the Front Face, beat a March,

On the Drummers beating the March, the whole Square faces, as above directed, and march very flow towards the Front of the Front Face; and when they have march'd as far as shall be thought proper, he is to order the Drummers to

cease beating, at which all face Square and stand.

After this, he orders a Preparative; on which the 4 Platoons of Granadiers, and the 4 Platoons of the Square of the first Firing make Ready, and when they come to their Recover, the Granadiers are to advance three Paces, then Kneel and Lock; but those of the Square stand with recover'd Arms 'till the Granadiers are order'd to *Present*, and then march forward three Paces, as before directed, 'till the Granadiers have fired and marched into the Square, after which they fall back into their Places, and Kneel and Lock.

As foon as the Granadiers have Kneel'd and Lock'd, the

Major proceeds.

Platoons of Granadiers, Present .- Fire.

As foon as the Granadiers have marched into the Square, and the Platoons of the first Firing fallen back, Kneel'd and Lock'd, the Major then goes on.

Platoons of the First Firing, Present .- Fire.

The Granadiers and the Platoons of the Square of the first Firing may fire together, if the Commanding Officer thinks proper, by ordering those of the Square to march forward three Paces at the same time with the Granadiers, and to Kneel and Lock when they do; in which Case the Words of Command will be as follows:

Granadiers and Platoons of the First Firing, Present.—Fire.

After the first Firing is over, the Major proceeds thus:

Drummers

Drummers of the Rear Face, beat a March.

At this the Whole Square face and march towards the Front of the Rear Face; and when they have got on their former Ground, the Drummers should be order'd to cease, on which they face Square. Then he orders a Preparative for the Platoons of the second Firing to make Ready, Kneel and Lock, and then proceeds thus:

Platoons of the Second Firing, Present .- Fire.

As foon as the fecond Firing is over, the Major goes on.

Drummers of the Right Face, beat a March.

The Square, at this, is to face and march towards the From of the Right Face; and when the Drummers are order'd to cease, they are all to face Square: After which, a Preparative for the Platoons of the third Firing to make Ready; then the Major gives the Words of Command.

Platoons of the Third Firing, Present. Fire.

When the third Firing is over, the Major orders next,

Drummers of the Left Face, beat a March.

On which the Square is to face and march towards the Front of the Left Face; and when the Square is come to the Ground on which they first form'd, or pretty near it, the Drummers should be order'd to cease Beating, upon which they are all to face Square. After that a Preparative for the Platoons of the Fourth Firing to make Ready; then the Major says,

Platoons of the Fourth Firing, Present .- Fire.

As foon as the fourth Firing is over, the Granadiers are to march out of the Square, and form on the Angles, as before directed in that part where they fire Standing.

When the Platoons of each Firing have fired, they are to

Load in marching, and then Shoulder.

Chap. VIII. This compleats the feveral Movements of the Square, with Firing after each; which Firings may be varied, if the Commanding Officer thinks proper, from the foregoing, after this manner:

After the first Movement, the whole Front Face, with the Platoon of Granadiers, Num. 1, may be order'd to fire

together.

After the second Movement, the Rear Face, with the Pla-

oon of Granadiers, Num. 2, fire together.

After the third Movement, the Right Face, with the Plaoon of Granadiers, Num. 3, fire together.

After the fourth Movement, the Left Face, with the Pla-

bon of Granadiers, Num. 4, fire together.

This Manner of Firing may appear very well in the Exerife; but would prove too dangerous in Service; fince there rould be an entire Front for some time, without any Fire to fiend themselves: Therefore I only mention it as proper for he Exercise, to vary it from the other.

They may likewise fire by Ranks, as they do in Batallion, yordering the Whole to make ready together, then begin ith the Rear-rank of the whole Square, and the Rear-rank the Granadiers; after that the Center-rank of the Whole.

ind lastly the Front-rank.

After they have gone through the different Firings of the quare, both standing and marching, they may finish with a fire of the whole Square, which may be done where they and, or after a Movement towards their proper Front.

As foon as this Fire is over, the Square should be reduced ato Battalion; the Officers in the Rear ordered to the Front. nd to take their Posts in Battalion; the Granadiers on the eft order'd to their Right; their Bayonets unfixed, and the lear Half-files to the Right as they were; which does not ply conclude this Chapter, but also the Directions for the Interent Firings of the Foot in every Part of the Service: But, what I have hitherto mentioned is only the Rudiments of Difpline, I shall endeavour to raise the Subject, by treating on ch Parts of the Service, as will give all those who are desirous know it, a general Notion of their Duty, on different Ocalions.

CREECESSIAN STAN

CHAP. VIII.

Confisting of General Rules for the Marching of s Regiment of Foot, or a Detachment of Man, where there is a Possibility of their being Attacked by the Enemy.

ARTICLE I.



HERE is not any thing in which an Office shews the Want of Conduct so much, as in sefering himself to be surprized, either upon in Post, or in marching with a Body of Menuder his Command, without being prepared to make a proper Defence, and by not having to

ken the necessary Precautions to prevent it.

When an Officer has had the Misfortune of being Bez, his Honour won't suffer by it, provided he has done his Duty and acted like a Soldier. But if he is surprized by neglecting the common Methods used to prevent it, his Chracter is hardly Retrievable, unless it proceeds from his Want of Experience; and even in that Case he will find it very difficult.

An Officer, who is detatched with a Body of Men, outh to confider, that the Lives of those under his Command depend in a great measure on his Prudence; and if he has any important Post committed to his Charge, the Lives of

many more may follow.

This Confideration alone, without mentioning the Loss Reputation, is sufficient, in my Opinion, to make us apply our selves to our Duty with a more than common Zeal, that we may not be ignorant in what relates to our Profession, when our King and Country has an Occasion for our Service.

The Military Profession, has, in all Ages, been esteemed the most Honourable, from the Danger that attends it. The Motives that lead Mankind to it, must proceed from a Notice that lead Mankind to it.

ble and Generous Inclination, fince they facrifice their Eafe, and their Lives, in the Defence of their Country.

To answer this Glorious End, we should endeavour at the Knowledge of our Calling, by a thorough Application

to the Service.

The same Spirit that brings us into the Army should make us apply ourselves to the Study of the Military Art, the common Forms of which may be easily attain'd by a moderate Application, as well as Capacity: Neither is it below any Military Man, let his Birth be ever so Noble, to be knowing in the minute Parts of the Service. It will not cramp his Genius (as some have been pleased to say, in order, as I suppose, to excuse their own Ignorance) but rather Aid and Assist it in great and daring Enterprizes.

Our great and warlike Neighbours the Germans, are so entirely preposses'd in favour of this Opinion, that they oblige even their Youth of Quality to perform the Function of a Private Soldier, Corporal and Serjeant, that they may learn the Duty of each, before they have a Commission: And sure

no Nation has produced greater Generals.

Our late Monarch, the Glorious King William, whose Military Capacity was Second to none, was perfectly knowing in the Small, as well as the Grand Detail of an Army. In visiting the Out-posts, he would frequently condescend to place the Centinels himself, and instruct the Officers how to do it. He was a strict Observer of all the Parts of Discipline; and knew the Duty of every one in the Army, from the Highest to the Lowest: And if so great a Prince thought it a necessary Qualification, I believe there will be hardly any one found of another Opinion.

I don't pretend to infer from the above Observations, that it is absolutely necessary for our young Nobility and Gentry to pass through those little and service Offices before they arrive at a Commission; but I think it absolutely necessary that they should apply themselves to the Service, as soon as they have one: For without they know the Duty of those under their Command, how can they pretend to direct?

A Commission, 'tis true, qualifies a Man for the Pay; but it must be Time and Experience, and a thorough Application to the Service, that entitles him to the Appellation of

a Soldier.

He that makes himself Master of the Duty of those below him, will the easier comprehend what is due to those above him; and be a means to qualify him for a higher Post, and do the Duty of it with Honour and Credit when given him, with this Addition, that He was fit for the Post, and not, that the Post was fit for Him.

It is more commendable and praise-worthy to owe our Preferment to Merit than Favour. The Dependance on the latter, is the Reason why so many young Gentlemen negled the former.

Money and powerful Relations will always procure them what they want; they have therefore no occasion to apply themselves to the Knowledge of their Duty. It is from the way of thinking that so many of them do so little Credit to their Posts; not from the want of Genius, but Application.

I hope these sew Observations won't be taken as a Resertion on the young Gentlemen who have come lately into the Army; but rather as an Admonition to avoid the Neglet complain'd of; my Design being purely to serve them, that they may be the better qualified to serve their Country when the calls upon them.

ARTICLE II.

I shall now proceed to what was proposed in this Chapter, the necessary Precautions proper to be taken in the marching of a Regiment, or a Detachment of Men, to prevent a Sur-

prize, &c.

When a Regiment is to march through a Country, where there is a Possibility of meeting with the Enemy, the Commanding Officer should leave nothing to Chance. Fortune may fail us, if we trust too much to her; but a prudent Conduct never will. 'Tis true, we may be overpowered, and conquered, notwithstanding all our Care; but never shamefully beat, if we act as we ought: And a Man may gain Reputation, tho' he is overcome.

The common Method of marching a Regiment is by Sub-Divisions, and the Captains divided in the Front and Rear; but, I am of Opinion, that Form should be broke through, where there is the least Probability of Service, and that of marching by Platoons substituted in its Room, as describ'd in the seventh Article, Chapter Six, on Street-Firing.

In this Case the Regiment will be ready to enter upon Action in whatever Shape it may be required, whether in Street-Firing, in Battalion, or in the Square: Whereas in that of marching by Sub-Divisions, it will require some time after

the Battalion is drawn up, to post the Officers to their Pla-

But there is another Advantage, besides that above-mentioned, by the Officers being divided to, and marching with the Platoons, which is, that the Men will march in greater Order by having the Eyes of so many more Officers on them, nor venture to leave their Ranks without Leave, for sear of being discovered. A Consideration, I am sure, of no small Consequence, since it will be the means to prevent a great many Men from being killed by the Country People, either in the Desence of their Goods, or out of Hatred to the Soldiers; or from their being taken by Partizan Parties, when they fall behind: But tho' they should have the good Fortune to escape both, the Apprehension of being punished, by quitting their Posts contrary to Orders, too often induces them to desert.

I believe I need not trouble my felf in producing further Reasons to support my Opinion, those already mentioned being, according to my Judgment, sufficient to convince any Man of the Advantage it has over the other Method of march-

ing by Sub-Divisions.

The common Method used to prevent your being attack'd on the March before you have time to make a proper Defence, is, by having a Van and Rear-Guard, which Guards may be stronger or weaker according to the Danger you may apprehend from the Enemy, or the Country you are to march through.

Those Guards are generally commanded by Officers, and frequently by Captains. They should never lose fight of the Regiment, or at least be out of the hearing of the Drum; for which Reason there should be a Drummer ordered to beat in the Rear-Platoon or Division, as well as in the Front; but

more particularly in Night-marches.

Before the Regiment marches from the Parade, or the Head of their Encampment, these Guards are to be Drawn out; and if your March is towards the Enemy, or that you apprehend more Danger in the Front than the Rear, your Van-Guard should consist of a Captain's Command, and the Rear-Guard only of a Subaltern's: However, this depends on the Discretion of the Commanding Officer.

As foon as these Guards are Form'd, the Officers who command them should receive their Instructions from the Commanding Officer of the Regiment or Detachment. But young Officers can have but a very impersect Notion of

I 3

the Intent and Meaning of these Guards, without some fur. ther Infight than barely the mentioning of them; I shallen deavour to give them a clear Idea of the Nature and Defign of those Guards, by fetting down the Duty of each.

General Instructions to the Van-Guard.

The Van-Guard is to march before the Regiment. The Distance which they are to be advanced, cannot be absolute ly determin'd; fince it must depend on the Nature of the Country you march through; fo that in an inclosed Country it can hardly exceed two hundred Yards without lofing fight of the Regiment, which they are by no means to do, unless they have Orders: And in an open or champain one, they ought not to be above three or four hundred Yards, left they should be attack'd and cut off by a superior Party, before the Regiment could come up to their Relief.

The Van-Guard is to reconnoitre, or view, every Place where any Number of Men can lie conceal'd, fuch as Woods Copfes, Ditches, hollow Ways, straggling Houses, or Ville.

ges through which you are to march, or pass near.

That the Regiment may not Halt upon every Occasion of this Nature, the Officer who commands the Van-Guard must order a Serjeant, and 6 or 12 Men, to advance before him, but not to march out of his Sight, who are to reconnoitre all suspected Places; and where there are more than one of those Places to be looked into at a time, by having them both on the Right and Left of the Road, he is to order out another small Party for that Purpose.

When there are any Woods or Villages which will reguire fome time to view, the Officer must halt his Guard at fome Distance from them, and remain there till his Advance Parties have reconnoitred them thoroughly, and fent him a Account that all is fafe; after which he is to march on.

Upon every Halt of this kind, he is to fend one to the commanding Officer of the Regiment to acquaint him with the Reason of his Halting; upon which he should halt the Regiment as foon as they come in fight of the Van-Guard; and when it marches again, the Regiment is to do fo too.

The Reason for the Van-Guard's halting at some Distance from a Wood or Village 'till it is reconnoitred, is for fear of an Ambuscade: for should they march up too near before it is viewed, they might be drawn too far into the Snare to be able to extricate themselves, and, by that means, draw the Regiment

Ground

Chap. VIII. Regiment into the same Misfortune; whereas by Halting at fome Distance, that Danger is avoided; at least so far, that they cannot furprize you, by falling upon you unprepared, which is all that can be expected from an Officer.

The fame Reason holds good for the Regiment's Halting,

when the Van-Guard does.

When the Van-Guard discovers any Body of Men it is to Halt, and the Officer is to fend back immediately and acquaint the Commanding Officer with it, and to know what particular Commands he has for him; and when he difcovers any thing further, he is to do the same, whether it relates to their Numbers, Quality, (as Horse or Foot) Movement and Disposition, that he may take his Measures accordingly. Thus I have given as full an Account of the Duty da Van-Guard as the Nature of the thing will admit of, or General Rules can direct.

General Instructions to a Rear-Guard.

The chief Employment of a Rear-Guard is to take up all the Soldiers who shall fall behind the Regiment, and march them Prisoners, in order to their being punish'd, for leaving it; which but too many will do, without a great deal of Care, in order to Plunder or Marode.

This Precaution is therefore abfolutely necessary, without which a great many Men may be loft, and the Country fuffer extreamly, by being left to the Discretion of those

Gentlemen.

The Officer commanding the Rear-Guard, must therefore be very diligent, in examining every Place in which the Sol-

diers can hide themselves, to prevent these Disorders.

As the Rear-Guard is not to be at any great Distance from the Regiment, it will likewise prove a Security, in preventing their being fallen upon in the Rear, before they have Notice to prepare for their Desence: For the Moment that any Troops appear in the Rear, the Officer of that Guard must fend and acquaint the Commanding Officer with it, that he may have Time to make a Disposition suitable to the Occasion; to gain which, the Officer of the Rear-Guard is to oppose them in the best Manner he can; but if the Superiority of the Enemy obliges him to give way before he can receive further Orders from the Commanding Officer, he must endeavour to join the Regiment by a slow and regular Retreat, in making a Stand at every Spot of I 4

Ground that can be disputed. If he finds it impracticable for him to join the Regiment, by his Retreat being cut off, he must endeavour to gain the nearest Place of Security, whether Inclosures, Woods, Hollow-ways, Morasses, Villages or Towns, in order to save himself and Party; but this should not be attempted while there are any Hopes left of his putting a Stop to the Enemy, or his joining the Regiment, since it will be weakened by his going off.

ARTICLE III.

Having explained, in the foregoing Article, the Nature and Design of the Van and Rear-Guards, I shall now proceed to what relates to the Body of the Regiment, or Detachment, and in what manner the Commanding Officer is to conduct himself for the Security of the Whole.

A good deal of Care and Judgment is required in the Marching of a Regiment in good Order, and to prevent is

running out into too great a Length.

The Officers on the feveral Platoons, or Divisions, must endeavour to avoid it, by keeping up their Divisions to a proper Distance from those before them; for if they once suffer the Division in the Front to march any confiderable Distance from them, they will not only fatigue their Men, but find it a very difficult Matter to regain the Ground fo loft; and if it proves so to one Division, it will be much more difficult to those in the Rear: For which Reason, the Officers can't be too exact in the Marching of their Divisions, and the keeping of their Ranks to their true Distance, particularly in inclosed Countries, where the Roads are generally narrow; but if the Officers neglect this Precaution, the Regiment may run into fuch a Length, that the Front may be attack'd and beat, before the Rear can be brought up to fustain them. But lest the Officers should fail in this Part of their Duty, the Commanding Officer should order the Major and Adjutant to Halt by turns every Half Hour, to see the Regiment pass by, and bring him an Account in what Order they find it, that he may direct his March, by moving faster or slower, according to the Report made him.

When the Regiment is to pass a Defile, where a Division can't march entire, but are obliged to Rank off, that is, to pass by Half or Quarter Ranks, the Officer who leads the first Division should Halt, or march extream slow, after he has pass'd it, 'till he has an Account that they are all over and

and come up to their proper Distance, upon which Notice he

is to march on as before.

The Officers must make the Men of their respective Divifions pass the Defile as fast as they can without Loss of Time. and fall into their Ranks the Moment they are over; and when their Divisions are form'd, they must march them as quick as possible, without running, 'till they join those in their Front, and then march as they do.

If the above Directions are observed, the Regiment will not only march more fecure, but also quicker, and with less Fatigue to the Men; but if they are neglected, it will be impossible for the Rear Divisions to keep up, so that in Half a Day's March the Regiment may extend it's felf from Front to Rear a Mile or two, which may prove of dangerous Con-

fequence.

Particular Care should be taken that the Soldiers don't fasten the Tent-Poles to their Firelocks, (which is frequently done for the Ease of carrying them) left they should be attack'd before they have time to untie them, and by that means render'd useless; a fatal Example of which, and of neglecting the above Precautions, I believe, will not be thought impro-

per to be here inferted.

A Regiment of Foot, confishing of above 600 Men, being order'd to march from one Quarter to another, the Commanding Officer imagined, from the Distance of the Enemy's Frontier Garrisons which was at least ten Leagues, that he had nothing to apprehend, and therefore neglected the common Precautions usually taken, in ordering his Van-Guard to examine all suspected Places where Horse might lye conceal'd. Befides, he took no Care in the keeping up the Divisions, but fuffered the Regiment to run into a Train of a Mile long, in

a very short Time.

About half Way lay a little Wood, close to the Road where the Regiment was to march, in which a famous Partizan with eighty Horse lay conceal'd; which Wood the Van-Guard pass'd without examining; and as soon as the Center of the Regiment came opposite to the Wood, the Partizan with the 80 Horse rush'd out upon them, and after Killing about 50 Men, and Wounding as many more, the lest threw down their Arms and surrender'd themselves Prifoners: The Men having their Tent-Poles fastened to their Firelocks could make little or no Resistance. Besides, their Marching in a straggling manner made the Conquest easy, which the Surprize did not a little contribute, by making

the Number of the Enemy appear infinitely more than they were.

The Officer who commanded the Rear-Guard hearing the Fire in the Front, and being about Half a Mile in the Rear, had Time to put his Men in Order (which with his own, and those he had pick'd up, amounted to 50) and stand upon his Desence: And notwithstanding the Disaster which hap pen'd to the Regiment, and some Attempts to take him, he saved both himself and Party, and retired back to the Town

in good Order.

I would not have the World imagine, that I mention this Affair, in order to reflect on the Memory of the Gentleman who commanded the Regiment; but by way of Precaution to others: For he was known to be a brave Man, and a very good Officer. His prefuming too far on his Safety, from the Enemy being at fuch a Distance, occasion'd the Infatuation with which he was then seiz'd, (for I can call'a nothing else, since it did not proceed from Ignorance) the Effect of which plunged both him and the Regiment into that Missortune. The Disgrace of being surpriz'd and taken by a Handful of Men, lay so near his Heart, that it put a End to his Life in a sew Years; and tho' the World sorgare him, from the Knowledge they had of his good Qualities, yet he could never forgive himself.

The above Misfortune is fufficient to convince us that we ought not to flight or neglect our Duty, particularly, when the Lives and Safety of those under our Command depend on

our Conduct.

To have the Lives of Men lost by our Neglect, must touch our Breast with unspeakable Grief, unless we are void

of Humanity.

But how can we answer it to our King and Country? Or should they, like indulgent Parents, pass it over, how can we reconcile it to our selves? The Thoughts of it will sing us with Remorse, and imbitter our Lives to such a Degree at to become a Burthen to us. Such was the Case, as I was form'd, and which I am apt to believe from the good Character he bore, of the unfortunate Gentleman before mertion'd.

Had the common Precautions been observ'd, without carrying of it to a Nicety, that Missortune could not have happen'd, tho' the Enemy's Horse had been of an equal Number with the Regiment; but, by the foremention'd Negled, that trifling, that inconsiderable Body made a bold Push, and carried

Chap. VIII. rarried their Point; which redounded very much to their Ho-

nour, and the Difgrace of the others.

We may draw Advantages from the Misfortunes of others, if we reflect justly on them. It is with that View purely the bove Case was mentioned, and no other. Let us therefore avoid falling into the fame Snare, by acting with Caution when we are intrusted with a Command; and tho' we can't ecertain of Success, with all our Care and Diligence, it is a great Step towards it : For if we take proper Measures, our failing will then be attributed to the Chance of War; and we may be unfortunate, tho' we don't deferve to be fo.

I will end these Reflections, and this Article, with a French Maxim ; La Mefiance est la Mere de Seurete'. Distrust is

the Mother of Security.

ARTICLE IV.

When a Regiment, or Detachment, marches through an Inclos'd or Woody Country, the Danger which they are to apprehend must be from Foot, and not Horse; and lest 2 Partizan Party should escape the Discovery of the Van-Guard, it would be proper to have small Parties, commanded by Serjeants, marching on the Flanks of the Battalion. with Orders to examine all the Hedges, Ditches and Copfes which lie near the Road, those being the Places in which they generally conceal themselves; and though the Danger from such Parties cannot be very considerable, yet the neglecting them may occasion you the Loss of all your Stragglers, your Baggage, and perhaps your Rear-Guard; Confiderations, in my Opinion, of too much Weight to be flighted.

The Parties on the Flanks must by no means go too far from the Regiment, for fear of being cut off by the Enemies slipping behind them; for which Reason they must be very circumspect in their examining all Suspected Places, taking Care to leave none behind them which they have not look'd into, that their Retreat may not be intercepted. Neither must they venture too rashly into a Thicket or Copse, lest they fall into their Hands before they are aware of them, and by that means be taken Prisoners without being able to make a proper

Desence, 'till reliev'd by the Regiment.

Without these Precautions your Parties may be taken within a hundred Yards of the Battalion, in an inclos'd or woody Country, or have their Retreat cut off by the Enemy gettingbetween

between them and the Regiment. When this is the Cale, they should give Notice by the Firing off of a Piece or two, that Relief may be sent them, and then make all the Ress. ance possible 'till it comes, and not surrender upon any Term, but defend themselves to the last Man.

When this happens, it would be very proper to fustain them immediately, by Detaching the Granadiers, or a Platoon or two from that Part of the Battalion which lies nearest; but with positive Orders not to engage too rashly, for fear of being drawn into an Ambuscade, and only endeavour to refore their own Men, without attempting any thing further 'till they receive fresh Orders from the Commanding Officer how they are to proceed: For the usual Decoy by which People are drawn into an Ambuscade is, by laying of small Parties at fome Distance from the Place where the Body lies concealed, which, at your Approach, shew as if they were frighten'd, and retire with Precipitation before you, in hopes to draw you into the Trap; but when the Officers fo detached, have defected what they were fent for, that of Disengaging their own Men, they ought to purfue it no further, without fresh Orders from the Commanding Officer; otherwife, they may be engaged fo far, that the Commanding Officer shall find himself under a Necessity to sustain them with the Whole, and by that means be drawn into an Engagement before he has thoroughly confidered whether it was proper or not.

Young Officers are but too apt to commit these Mistakes, by exceeding their Orders; being hurried on, by the Heat, and Impetuofity of their Temper, to do fomething that is Great and Noble, without Confidering the Confequences that may attend it. I own it is an Error on the right fide; but 'tis still an Error: for Orders are, for the most Part, Positive, and leave us no room to Act according to our Inclination; a Restraint that prove rather indulgent than hard in Cases of Danger, into which Youth would precipitate themselves and others, were it not check'd by the cool Reason of Men of Experience. Let us therefore be subservient to the Commands of our Superiors, and fubmit to their Judgment in all Things relating to the We shall gain Honour and Reputation enough, if we Adhere strictly to our Orders; but Disgrace may attend the Exceeding of them, as well as the falling Short; the one, however, is more excusable than the other, the' the Consequences may prove as fatal, fince it proceeds from 2 mistaken Zeal, but the other from the Want of Courage. To blame a Man for want of Courage when Nature has not bestow'd

Chap. VIII. bestow'd it on him, is not only hard, but unjust; but a Man that continues in the Service when he knows himself defective in that Point, betrays both his King and Country, and therefore merits the severest Punishment.

As foon as the Advanc'd Parties discover any Troops, they are to acquaint the Commanding Officer immediately with t, and whether they appeared to be Horse or Foot, what Number, and which Way they were marching; and fo from ime to time, in Case they discover any thing further. Upon fuch a Discovery, the Advanc'd Parties are to Halt, and to remain there 'till they are order'd to Retire, or forced to it by the Enemy; in which Case, they are to Retire in a regu-lar Manner, and not with Precipitation, lest they should in-

imidate the Whole by a disorderly Flight.

Upon fuch Notice being given, the Commanding Officer hould immediately order the Whole to Halt, and prepare for Action, and fend the Major, or an Officer that is well mounted, to Reconnoitre them near, in order to discover what he can of their Numbers and Quality, and whether they appear to be Friends or Foes. But lest the Closeness of the Country won't permit him to do it without the Danger of being intercepted in his Return, small Parties may be order'd to follow him at some Distance, to secure his Retreat ; after the Performance of which, they are to join the Regiment.

The Commanding Officer must direct his Measures actording to the Report he shall receive from the Officer who was sent to Reconnoitre; and if it is only judg'd to be a Partizan Party sculking about to pick up Stragglers, or to take the Baggage, he ought, no doubt, to order out a proper Deachment to Attack them; but with Directions to the Officer who commands it, to be very cautious in the Execution, by not pursuing too far, for fear of an Ambuscade; and that if he should discover the Body to be greater than what they apprehended, or find them too advantagiously Posted to be easily isologed, to defer the Execution 'till he acquaints him with t, and receives his further Orders. Restrictions of this Kind re not only Proper, but absolutely Necessary; without which, the Party so detached may not be only lost, but the Regiment thereby involved in insuperable Difficulties.

When the Case happens, as above related, by their being numerous, or too strongly Posted to be Attack'd by the Detachment so fent; the Number of the Enemy, and their situation should be thoroughly consider'd, and a proper Dif-

position made to attack them to the most Advantage, which must be done if they obstruct the March of the Regiment; but if they don't, I presume, the Commanding Officer may desist from the Attempt, if he finds much Difficulty and Danger in it, and pursue his March, taking care to Securetive Baggage (by marching it in the Front, or on the Flanks) and Rear-guard, which he may do, by ordering it to be reinsored.

and keeping near the Rear of the Regiment.

This, however, must depend on his Instructions, and by them alone he must be determined; it being impossible to by what should, or should not be done, without seeing them. For if his Orders are only to march from such a Place, to such a Place, he is not to hazard his Men in looking out for Adventures; but to pursue his Instructions to the best of his Power, and attack those who shall oppose his March, provided they are not too powerful a Body to encounter, or too advantagiously Posted to be forced; in which Case, he may very justly Retire to the Place from whence he came, or into any other of Sasety that shall be nearer to him, acquaining the General, or Officer from whom he received his Orden, with the Reasons for his so doing, and wait there for his surther Directions.

ARTICLE V.

The foregoing Directions being more particularly calculted for the marching thorough an inclosed Country, where the Danger from Foot was the chief thing to be apprehended, I shall, in the next Place, lay down the necessary Precautions

for marching in an Open, or Champain one.

In quitting the Inclosed Country, and entering into a Plan or Open one, the Commanding Officer must take the need-fary Precautions against being Surprized and Attacked by the Horse; and tho' they may be discovered at a considerable Distance, the Quickness of their Motions makes it proper that a Disposition should be thought on before there is a Necessary to put it in Practice.

As the Square is the principal Figure into which a Regiment of Foot can throw themselves against a considerable Body of Horse, they should be prepared to Form it at the first Order.

The Method I propose for their marching in an open Cour-

Upon their coming into the Plain, or open Country, the Distance between the Platoons should be no larger than what is required to Form in, when order'd to wheel to the Right

Chap. VIII. or Left; by observing of which, the Battalion may be form'd in a Moment, by one Word of Command, and ready to enter upon Action,

The Parties on the Flanks may join the Regiment, the

Van and Rear-Guards being sufficient.

In marching by Platoons, the Regiment will take up the less Ground, and become thereby more compact, and consequently not liable to a Surprize; and while they discover none of the Enemy they may purfue their March in that Order; but upon the Appearance of any Troops, or Notice given them of their being near, the Battalion should then march in four Grand-Divisions. the Platoons being order'd to Double up to the Left, according to the Number into which it was Told off: For if it confifted of 16 Plateons, belides Granadiers, then each Grand-Division will confist of 4; but if only into 12, then each Grand-Division will confift of 3 Platoons.

The Reason why I mention the Battalion's being Told off into 16 Platoons, or 12, is, because the Grand-Divisions are form'd from one of those two in a Moment, and from thence the Square, without any Alteration in the Officers or Platoons in the forming of both; whereas a new Division, both of the Officers and Platoons, is required, should the Battalion be Told into 13, 14, or 15 Platoons, before either the Grand-Divitions or Square can be form'd; which Inconveniency, and loss of Time, is avoided, by dividing the Battalion's into 16, or 12 Platoons, exclusive of the Granadiers, as may be fren by the Plan of forming the Square by Divisions, in Article 3. Chap. 7.

But as that only shows how the Square is form'd by Grand-Divisions, when drawn up in Battalion, I shall shew how it is to be form'd from Grand-Division upon the March. I shall

begin with 16 Platoons.

How a Battalion of 16 Platoons is to be form'd into four Grand-Divisions on the March, and then into the Square.

As foon as the Commanding Officer gives Order for the forming the Grand-Divisions, the first Platoon is to Halt, or move on as flow as possible; the second Platoon marches immediately, and draws up on the Left of the first, the third on the Left of the fecond, and the fourth on the Left of the third, which forms the first Grand-Division.

The

The fifth Platoon marches straight forward in the Rear of the first, and when it comes to a proper Distance, it is to Halt or March as it does, on which, the fixth, seventh, and eighth Platoons draw up on the Lest of the fifth, which some the Grand-Division.

The ninth Platoon marches straighton, 'till it comes to a proper Distance off the fifth, after which, the tenth, eleventh and twelfth Platoons draw up on the Left of the ninth, which

forms the third Grand-Division.

The thirteenth Platoon is to march straight on, 'till it comes to a proper Distance off the ninth, then the fourteenth, fifteenth and sixteenth Platoons draw up on the Lest of the thir-

teenth, which forms the fourth Grand-Division,

While the Grand-Divisions are forming, the Granadiersare to be divided into two Platoons, and those Sub-divided into two each, to be ready to form on the Angles of the Square. After which, the Granadiers may be either kept in a Body, or divided in the Front and Rear of the Grand-Divisions, or on the Flanks, as the Commanding Officer shall judge most proper for the Service.

By the above Method, the Battalion may be formed into four Grand-Divisions, even without Halting, when the Commanding Officer thinks proper; and from thence into the

Square, in the following manner.

As foon as the Word of Command, Form the Square, is given, the first Grand-Division Halts, and by that forms the Front Face.

The fecond and third Grand-Divisions divide in the Center, and wheel to the Right and Left outwards, and form the Right and Left Faces, thus: The two Platoons on the Right of each of those Grand-Divisions wheel to the Right, and form the Right Face; and the two Platoons on the Left of each wheel to the Left, and form the Left Face.

The fourth Grand-Division marches on 'till they come to the Flanks of the Right and Left Faces, and then face to the Right-about on their Left Heels, which forms the Rear Face; on which, all the Officers, except those who Command the Platoons, move immediately into the Square, as di-

rected in the forming of the Square.

The Enfigns with the Colours, being at the Head of the third Grand-Division, are only to move two or three Paces forward, and then stand, in order to give the Platoons room to wheel by them; by which, they fall into the Center of the Square without any further Trouble.

Upon the ordering of the Square to be form'd, the Granadiers are to repair immediately to their several Angles, the first Platoon to divide and cover the Front Angles, and the

fecond Platoon to divide and cover the Rear Angels.

By keeping the Grand-Divisions in the Center up to their proper Distance, and the Rear-Division close to the Third, and dividing the Granadiers on the Flanks, or in the Front and Rear, the Square may be form'd as quick, almost, as Thought, without running the least hazard, tho' the Enemy's Horse hould be within 30 Paces: For which Reafon, the Commanding Officer may continue his March in Grand-Divisions full he finds they have made a Disposition, and are actually on their March to attack him on all Sides, fince the March will be quicker, and with less Fatigue to the Men, in marching by Grand-Divisions than in the Square. Neither do I think that a Regiment of Foot can be under a Necessity to throw themselves into a Square for three or four Squadrons of Horse, fince they may be kept at a Distance by marching he Granadiers on the Flanks, and to fire on them whenever hey venture too near; but if that should not be sufficient, few Platoons from the Battalion will foon make them Re-

Upon discovering the Enemy's Horse, or Notice given of their Approach, the Van and Rear-Guards, as also the Bagage should be order'd to keep near the Regiment; and if bey find the Number of the Enemy confiderable; and that he Baggage cannot be preserved without running too great a lazard, it ought to be abandon'd, and nothing thought of ut the Security of the Regiment: However, they need not ive up the Baggage 'till they are under a Necessity of doing

nor defer it when they are.
When this is the Case, the Van and Rear-Guards should be wided into the several Platoons, that they may not be expod to the Enemy, by being left out, when the Square is

orm'd.

If the Enemy should not think proper to attack you, on heir finding you drawn up in the Square, and ready to retive them in too warm a manner, but retire to a greater diance, the Commanding Officer may then pursue his March, ither in the Square, as has been shewn in Article 4. Chap. 7. in Grand-Divisions. If their Distance is such, that he may barch' with Safety by Grand-Divisions, the Square is to be be be be be be be the best of them, in the following Manner.

K

qI

ti

t

R

t

6

ti

t

S

6

I

V

i

0

1

0

P

2

h

(

C

When the Word of Command, From the Square, Form into Grand-Divisions, is given, the Platoons which wheeld up to form the Right and Left Faces, are to wheel back the they come to a Parallel Line with the Front Face, and then stand, by which the second and third Grand-Divisions will be form'd as before; for by wheeling back the two Platoons on the Left of the Right Face, and the two on the Right of the Left Face, the second Grand-Division will be form'd; so that the wheeling back of the two Platoons on the Right of the Right Face, and the two Platoons on the Left of the Left Face will form the third Grand-Division.

The Men of the Rear Face are only to face to the Leftabout on their Left Heels, by which Means the four Grand-Divisions will be form'd as before, and in the same Space of

time as was taken up in forming the Square.

The Granadiers may be order'd to fall in the Front and Rear, or march on the Flanks of the first and fourth Grand-Divisions; after which, they may march on 'till the Enemy comes again to attack them.

When the Regiment is Told off into 12 Platoons, ach Grand-Division will consist of but three Platoons; for which

Reason the Square must be form'd in this Manner.

The first Grand-Division forms the Front Face.

The Second wheels to the Right, and forms the Right

The Third marches on 'till they come opposite to the Right Flank of the second Division, and then wheels to the Let and forms the Left Face.

The fourth Division forms the Rear Face, as in the other

In reducing the Square, from hence, into Grand-Divisions, the Right and Left Faces are to wheel back, as they dup, entire; only the Right Face must not wheel back, quick as the Left, that they may fall into their proper Place and avoid the Confusion which their meeting, in wheeling back, might occasion.

This Manner of forming the Square requires a little more time than the other; but in all other Respects, it is quited regular, by requiring no new Telling off, or changing the Officers; whereas, should the second and third Grand-Divisions divide in the Center, and wheel to the Right and Le outwards, to form the Right and Left Faces, as the other did, the Center Platoon of each of these Grand-Division would

el'd

데

hen

wil

00

the fo

the ace

eft-

nd-

e of

and-

emy

each

hich

light

Right Left

other

)ivil

ey di

ace

celin

mor

Divi

Le

oth

ilion wou would be cut in two, and thereby occasion a new Telling off of the Right and Left Faces as soon as they were form'd, which would not be quite so proper, if the Enemy were very near, as that of wheeling up the Grand-Divisions entire.

But as the Difficulty feems to lie in the Time which is requir'd in the forming of the Right and Left Faces by Grand-Divisions entire; and that a greater will happen, by the dividing of them in the Center, when they consist but of 3 Platoons each, as has been observ'd; I shall offer therefore another Way of doing it as a Medium between both, as thus:

The Right Face may be form'd by ordering the two Platoons on the Right of the Second Grand-Division, and the Right Platoon of the Third, to wheel to the Right, to form that Face.

The Left Face will confift of the Left Platoon of the Second Grand-Division, and the Two on the Left of the Third; so that by ordering them to wheel to the Left, at the same time that the others wheel to the Right, the Left Face will be sorm'd at the same time with the Right; by which Method the Platoons, with their Officers, will be kept entire, and the Square sooner form'd than by Grand-Divisions.

If the foregoing Rules are observed, an Officer can never be so far Surpriz'd on his March, but that he will be ready to act upon the Offensive, or Desensive, which was all that I propos'd to treat of in this Chapter; in the Profecuting of which, I have endeavour'd to shew the Duty of the Whole, in such a Manner, that every Officer may plainly discover his own; either in the proper Directions for Marching the Whole, or a particular Platoon or Division, and passing a Defile, or the Command of the Van or Rear-Guard; or being order'd out with a Detachment to Sustain or Relieve any of his own Parties, or to attack a Partizan Party that shall be discovered on the March, with the Precautions how they are to proceed in the Execution, for fear of further Danger than at first appear'd, and how they are to act when it so happens; but more particularly in the Conduct requir'd of a Commanding Officer, for the Security and Preservation of the Whole, both in an open and an inclos'd Country.

It is impossible to say in what Manner he is to act when he meets with the Enemy, without knowing their Numbers, Quality and Disposition. His own Judgment and Experience must direct him in taking proper Measures; for without he has both, those who are under his Command, at such a Juncture, are much to be pitied, let his Courage be ever so great.

K 2 CHAP.

MARARARARARARA

CHAP. IX.

Consisting of general Rules for Battalions of Foot when they are to engage in the Line.

ARTICLE L



HO' it may be supposed that all Colonels will keep their Regiments in such Order, that they may be ready to march and enter upon Action when Commanded; however, it is absolutely Necessary, that they make a thorough Inspection into their Mens Arms and Ammunition, the

Day before they expect an Engagement, lest any thing

should be wanting, when their Service is required.

The Commanding Officers should take particular Care to have their Regiments as strong as possible on the Day of Action, by permitting no more Men to be out of the Ranks than what are absolutely necessary for the Security of the Baggage, or are commanded out upon Duty.

As foon as the Battalions are form'd, they should be Told off into Platoons, and the Officers appointed to them, as di-

rected in Article 1. Chapter 6.

When the Officers are posted to their Platoons, they should view their Mens Arms and Ammunition, and make a Report of the same to the Officer commanding the Regiment; this Inspection should not be omitted, lest several Men, by having lost, or embezzled their Ammunition, may be rendered useless for want of being supplied in due time, which they will be apt to conceal, for sear of being Punished.

In Marching up to attack the Enemy, and during the Action, a profound Silence should be kept, that the Commanding Officers may be distinctly heard in delivering their Orders: Neither are the Officers who command the Platoons to use any more Words than what relate to the Performance

of their Duty.

Chap. IX. The Commanding Officer is to give the Word of Command for all the Movements which his Regiment is to perform, whether it is to Advance, Retire, or Halt; but lest He hould not be distinctly heard by the Whole, they are to regulate their Motions by the several Beatings of the Drum; for which end, the Drummers in the Center Platoons are to e very attentive to the Words of Command, and to Beat, in the Delivering of them, according to the following Directions.

When the Battalion is order'd to march Forward, they re to beat a March; and when the Word Halt is given,

hey are to cease.

When they are to Retire, as foon as the Battalion has faced o the Right-about, and the Word March is given, the Drummers are to beat a Retreat; and not to cease till the Bat-

plion is order'd to Halt.

The Drummers on the Flanks are to govern themselves, oth in their Beatings, and in Ceasing to Beat, by those in the Center; by which means, those Men who could not ear the Word of Command, from their being at too great Distance from the Center, or the Noise of the Drums, rill know, by the different Beatings, what they are to perform.

The Drummers in the Center must be ready to beat a Preparative for the whole Battalion to Make ready, if the Commanding Officer thinks proper to have it perform'd in

bat Manner.

ARTICLE II.

In marching up to attack the Enemy, the Line should hove very flow, that the Battalions may be in Order, and he Men not out of Breath when they come to engage.

The Commanding Officer of every Battalion should march p close to the Enemy, before he suffers his Men to give their ive; and if the Enemy have not given theirs he should pre-ent their doing it, by falling upon them, with the Bayonets on he Muzzles the Instant they have fired, which may be done nder the cover of the Smoke, before they can perceive it: that by the Shock they will receive from your Fire, by eing close, and attacking them immediately with your Baynets, they may, in all Probability, be beat with a very inunfiderable Loss: But if you don't follow your Fire that soment, but give them time to recover from the Disorder

K 3

yours may have put them into, the Scene may change to your Disadvantage. I therefore don't recommend this Way of Proceeding, but when the Enemy are obstinate, and perfevere in not giving theirs first; it being a received Maxim, that those who preserve their Fire the longest, will be sure to Conquer: But if the Method here propos'd is duly executed, that Maxim, I believe, will be found Fallible. However, it should only be pursued in the Case spoken of, as a proper Expedient when you can't draw the Enemy's Fire from them 'till you come up close; but if you can draw away their Fire at some Distance without giving yours, and that the Execution has not diforder'd the Battalion fo much but that it keeps moving on towards them, you may be fure of Succefs; it being certain, that when Troops fee others advance, and going to pour in their Fire upon them, when theirs is gone, they will immediately give way, or at leafit happens feldom otherwise. The Point then to be aimed at is, that of receiving the Enemy's Fire first; but when both Sides pursue the same Maxim, in preserving their Fire last, I don't know a more proper Expedient than the one already mentioned: For when the Fire is given near, there won'the only a great many killed and wounded, but those who remain unhurt will be put into fuch Diforder and Confusion by it, that it will contribute to their being beat without much Diffculty, if the Blow is followed.

When it is apprehended that the Enemy will persist in Referving their Fire, the Commanding Officers should prepare their Men for it before they go on, and direct them how they are to give their Fire, and in what manner they are to proceed afterwards, with the Advantages that will be gain'd by the following of it, and that their own Sasety, as well as the Destruction of the Enemy, depends on the due Execution.

ARTICLE III.

When any of the Battalions have forced those they attacked to give way, great Care must be taken by the Officen to prevent their Men from Breaking after them; neither must they pursue them safter than the Line advances: For is a Battalion advances out of the Line, it may be attack'd on the Flanks by the Enemy's Horse, who are frequently posted between the first and second Lines for that Purpose. The Commanding Officers must therefore remain satisfied with the Advantage of having obliged the Enemy to give way,

way, and not break the Line by advancing before it in the Pursuit; but in order to keep up the Terrour of the Enemy, and to prevent their Rallying, the Granadiers may be order'd to advance 20 or 30 Paces before the Line, and to fire upon them from time to time: And while the Granadiers are thus employ'd, the Commanding Officers should take great Care to keep their Regiments in good Order, that they may be ready to engage the second Line of the Enemy, which they may reasonably expect will come up to sustain those they had routed.

The Granadiers being detached in the Front only to prevent those who were routed from Rallying, they must by no means advance too far from the Line, less they should be cut off from it by the Enemy. They must therefore act with Precaution, and as soon as they perceive the Second Line of the Enemy, or a Body of their Troops, marching towards them, they are to quit the Pursuit and return to their Regiments, or halt 'till their own Line comes up, if

the Enemy don't advance too fast upon them.

Unless these Directions are punctually observed by every Battalion in the Line, the Advantage so gained may be fnatch'd from them in a Moment: For by pursuing the Enemy too far, they may be furrounded by fresh Troops, and cut to Pieces before the Line can come up to their Assistance. It is therefore the Duty of every Commanding Officer, to regulate his March according to the Motions of the Line, and not fuffer themselves to be too much elated on the first Success, left it hurry them on too fast without reflecting on the Danger that may attend it: For which Reason the whole Line must act like one Battalion, both in Advancing, Attacking and Pursuing the Enemy together. While they keep in a Body, they can mutually affift one another; but if they should separate in Pursuing those they beat, the Enemy may defroy them one after another, with fuch an inconsiderable Number of Troops, that were they in a Body, would fly at their Appearance. The Confequence therefore of Separating during the Action, is of fuch Weight and Moment, that by doing it, the Enemy may not only re-establish their Affairs in such a manner as to renew the Action, but in all Probability likewife gain a compleat Victory, if they make a proper Use of the Advantage fo given; which we are always to suppose they will, and for that Reason we ought not to give them an Opportunity by which they may have it in their Power.

ARTICLE IV.

Whereas it is ordered by the 14th Article of War, 6 that Whoever after Victory, shall, instead of Pursuing the Enemy.

quit his Commanding Officer or Post, to plunder and pile lage; every such Offender being duly convicted thereof.

fhall be reputed a Disobeyer of Military Orders; and shall fuffer Death, or such other Punishment as by a General

" Court-Martial shall be inflicted on him."

After what has been mentioned in the above Article of War, relating to those who shall quit their Posts to plunder and pillage, it appears almost unnecessary to enlarge on the Necessity of its being duly observed; His Majesty's Commands being sufficient to determine our Obedience, without entring into the Reasons for which they were given: However, it may not be altogether improper, for the Information of those who have not had Experience of the Danger which generally attends the Neglect of it, to shew that our own Safety is thereby consulted and preserved.

Should the Soldiers be permitted to disperse, and run in Search of Plunder, before the Enemy are entirely routed, and reduced beyond a Possibility of Forming themselves again into a Body, they may renew the Action and fall upon them while they are employed in Plundering the Baggage; the Consequence of which would not be only certain Destruction to those who commit it, but perhaps prove so to

the whole Army likewife.

Examples of this Kind: and a Passage occurs to my Memory, which I have read somewhere, that is very pat to the

Purpose.

Difficulties, by being obliged to engage a Superior Force; and being apprehensive that the Battel would go against Him, without some extraordinary Means could be thought on to effect it, at last came to the following Resolution. As som as he drew near the Enemy, he ordered all the Baggage of his Army to be placed in their sull View; after which he gave Orders, that, upon the making such a Signal, they should make their Retreat; which, however, should not be given 'till he found that the Battel was likely to go against him; and as he conjectured, so it happened, from the Superiority of the Enemy: Upon which He ordered the Signal to be made,

hap. IX. made, and his Army retir'd in pretty good Order, leaving the Enemy Masters of the Field of Battel and all his Baggage; he Temptation of which, and their apprehending that they ad nothing to fear from a Beaten Army, made them quit he Pursuit, and fall a Plundering. The General finding that he Bait which he had laid had taken Effect, return'd with his Troops, and fell upon them in the height of their Plundering, nd by that means gain'd a compleat Victory.

Whether the above Story is true or false, is of no great Conquence. The Carrying an Air of Probability in it, was futcient to my Purpose: And I believe, if the same Stratagem as to be made use of, even in this Age, it might have a very good Effect in faving a great Part of a Broken Army, by aking the Enemy off from the Pursuit; for such is the Love f Plunder in the Private Soldiers, that were they not rerained from it by their Officers, no Hazard would deter

hem from it. As Example is beyond Precept, I beg Leave to infert anoher of a more Modern Date, the Truth of which I can

ffert.

In the Year 1710, the late Earl Stanhope, with a Body English Troops, was attack'd in Brihuega by the whole panish Army, confisting of above 20,000 Men, under the Conduct of the present King of Spain, and the late Duke of Indosnie; to Relieve which, Marshal Staremberg march'd with the Remainder of his Army, amounting to 11,000 len; but before He came up, the Town was taken, and he Earl and his Troops made Prisoners; of which Marshal taremberg could have no Intelligence, till he had adanced too near to retire without Fighting. The Spanish army looking upon their vast Odds, and being elated with heir Success the Night before in the taking of Brihuega, oncluded on nothing less than the cutting of Marshal Staemberg and his little Army to Pieces. With this View, he Duke of Vendosme detach'd a Body of 3000 Horse to fall pon the Rear of Marshal Staremberg's Army, at the same me that He attack'd him in Front with the rest of the army; but the Baggage of the Marshal's Army being placed the Rear of his fecond Line, faved him from the Danger hich threatned him there; for the 3000 Horse, instead f doing their Duty, carried off the Baggage. As soon as he Duke of Vendosme had given a sufficient Time for the 000 Horse to march round, as directed, he attack'd the sarshal's Army in Front; but with so litle Success, notwithHorse, that the Marshal did not only repulse the Spanish Army in every Attack they made, but beat them entirely out of the Field of Battel, and obliged the King of Spain and the Duke of Vendosme to retire five Miles that Night: Whereas, had the 3000 Horse desisted from the Plunder, and pursued their Orders, in attacking the Marshal's Army in the Rear, when the Duke attack'd it in the Front, sew or none could have escaped.

As this short Account is only to shew the ill Consequences of suffering the Soldiers to quit their Officers or Posts, to plunder or pillage, before the Enemy are entirely beat; I hope, that the Inserting of it here, will not be thought foreign to the Affair in hand; but will rather serve as an Example to deter others from committing the like Error, and oblige every Officer in his Station to exert Himself on these Occasions, that the Danger here complain'd of may be avoided.

ARTICLE V.

The Commanding Officer and Major of each Regiment should observe the Disposition of their own Troops, what they are drawn up in the Line of Battel, that they may know what Regiment sustains theirs, or whom they are to sustain according as they are posted in the first or second Line. The should likewise endeavour to know their own Troops from the Enemy, either by their Colours or Cloathing, that in the Consustant, either by their Colours or Cloathing, that in the Consustant to which Battels are generally subject, they may not mistake the one for the other: For as the Battalions are obliged to separate when a Battel is fought in a close of woody Country, this Mistake is easily made, without the a foresaid Precaution, and therefore it is absolutely Necessary to prevent your Destroying one another.

ARTICLE VI.

When the Enemy act upon the Defensive, and only to deavour to maintain their Post, if there are any House Hollow-ways, Ditches or Hedges in their Front, they commonly place Men in them to annoy the Line in their marching up to attack them. When this is the Case, the Grand diers should be ordered to march 30 or 40 Paces before the Line, either in single Companies or Join'd, as the Service may require, in order to dislodge those Advanced Parties

at the Line may not be ruffled, or interrupted in their farching up to attack. As foon as the Granadiers have perormed that Service, they should Halt'till the Line comes up, nd then join their Battalions.

ARTICLE VII.

When a Battalion is order'd to retire, or oblig'd to it withut being beat or put into Disorder; before the Word of Command, To the Right-about, is given, the Commanding Officer should acquaint the Men with the Reason for so doing, At they should apprehend the Danger to be greater than it is, nd thereby occasion their falling into Confusion, instead of naking a Regular and Soldier-like Retreat.

The Reason for a Regiment's being order'd, or obliged to

when a Regiment has fustained a great Loss in the first Line, it may be thought proper to relieve it by one from the cond Line; and therefore order'd to retire to make room for that coming up.

When a Regiment is expos'd to the Cannon of the Enemy, hey may be order'd to move to the Right and Left, or to re-

ire to a Place of more Safety.

Or when a Regiment is drawn up in some advanced Post, where it is likely to be overpower'd by Numbers, and can-not be easily sustain'd, they may be order'd to quit their Post and retire to one more secure; but however just the Motives may be for their Retiring, yet without they receive Orters from their Generals for it, they are not to quit their Pofts, but must maintain them to the utmost of their Power.

As every Battalion is to observe the Motions of the Line, when they see the greatest Part of it retire, they are to do the fame, without receiving a particular Order, from the General who commands the Line, for it, it being impossible for him to fend fuch Orders to every Regiment, in the Heat of Action: for which Reason, it is a fix'd Rule for every Battalion to act, as near as possible, in concert with the Whole, both Advancing, Attacking, Pursuing, or Retiring together: however, we are not to conclude from hence, if some of the Battalions should be ruffled in the Attack and forced to give way, that the Rest are obliged to follow their Motions ; neither are two or three Battalions to go on, when the rest retire. But whatever the Motives may be for their retiring, whether those above-mentioned or others, the Commanding

Officer should always acquaint the Regiment with it, and give his Orders clear and distinct, without shewing any Concern; otherwise the Men may fall into Consustion, for want of being apprized and duly prepared to perform what shall be ordered them; for if this Precaution is omitted, and the Words of Command, for the Changing of Ground or Retiring, are given in a Hurry, the Men are apt to perform them in the same Manner, and by that means occasion their falling into Disorder, which, in the Presence of the Enemy, may produce dangerous Consequences, by not only losing the Reputation of the Regiment, but occasioning several others to be seized with a Panick, and sollow their Example.

ARTICLE VIII.

When the first Line is put into Disorder by the Enemy and forced to give way, the Battalions are to retire thro' the Intervals lest between those of the Second Line; but, to prevent their being too closely pursued, the Officers in the Front should rally some of their boldest and most resolute Men, and form them into small Platoons, and Fire upon them from time to time, as they retire; which will not only oblige the Enemy to advance with more Deliberation, than they would do were there none to oppose them; but it will likewise do them considerable Damage, and give their own Battalions an Opportunity of making a more safe and orderly Retreat.

The Officers who were posted in the Rear of the Battalion, as also the Major and Adjutant, must prevent their Men from Retiring too fast, and endeavour to keep them in a Body, and from mixing with those of another Regiment, and to march them in the best manner they can thro' the Intervals of the second Line, which when they have passed, they are to Halt and form them again into Battalion, with the utmost Expedition, in order to march up and sustain the second Line.

On these Occasions, the Danger which the second Line runs of being broke by the first, is very great: For when the first Line is put into Disorder, instead of Retiring thro' the Intervals of the second Line, they frequently run directly into the Battalions, and either carry them off with them, or put them into such Consusion, that the Enemy are upon them before they have Time to repair the Disorder: For which Reason, the Officers of the first Line must use their utmost

hap. IX. most Diligence and Care to prevent their Men from comiting this Error, by observing the above Directions; withwhich, their own Preservation is not only obstructed, the Loss of the Whole must inevitably follow.

ARTICLE IX.

As the Case above-mention'd, that of the second Line beg broke by the First when they are forced to give Way, very common, I shall therefore offer the following Expeent, in order to prevent the Evil complain'd of, and what,

my Opinion, will be very conducive thereto.

As foon as the first Line gives way, the Granadiers of the gond should be order'd to advance 20 Paces in the Front, nd directly opposite to the Center of their own Regiments, a order to keep the Men of the first Line clear of them, nd oblige them to retire thro' the Intervals, or compel them oit by Force; but that should be used with Moderation: However, in Cases of Danger, as this is, it is better that a few should suffer than the Whole.

By advancing the Granadiers into the Front of each Batalion, the Intervals of the fecond Line will be confiderably plarged, which confequently opens a greater Passage for hole of the first Line to retire thro'; by which, the Danger of the second Line's being put into Disorder by the First, will k less; which Consideration alone appears to me of suffici-

at Weight for its being done.

But I am likewise of Opinion, that it will not only prevent the second Line from being thrown into Confusion, but rove, in some measure, a Security to the First, by putting Check to the Enemy in their Pursuit, and either oblige them to Halt, or Advance slower, when they perceive the Granadiers of the Second advancing in Order, and ready to oppose them: But whether it has this Effect or not, the other Advantages proposed by it, that of Securing the second Line from being broke or put into Disorder, and the Enarging of the Intervals for the first Line to march thro', are Sufficient Motives for doing it.

The Design of Advancing the Granadiers, being only to prevent the first Line from mixing with the Second, and to fop the Pursuit of the Enemy, by shewing themselves to them, in order to facilitate the Retreat of the Men of the full Line, and to prevent a further Execution on them, they must therefore by no means engage; but as soon as the Men

of the first Line have gain'd the Intervals, they are to jo

their Regiments.

The Method, of ordering the Granadiers of the fecon Line to advance upon the first Line's giving way, being purely a Notion of my own, neither having feen nor her that it was ever put in Practice, I shall not lay it down a fix'd Rule; therefore every Body is at liberty to reject its Pleafure.

ARTICLE X.

Upon the first Line giving way, the Second should mare up briskly to their Relief, and attack the Enemy before the have time to repair the Diforder which both the Action and the Pursuit must, of course, have thrown them into; by do ing which, they may, with Ease, retrieve what was lost and, in all Probability, do fuch Execution, that those Troom who were before victorious, may be render'd uncapable of any further Service that Day: For we may reasonably sup pose, that they will be considerably diminish'd, and put int Disorder, by their Action with the first Line; and as the first Fire is spent, which is the one that does the most Exe cution, the others, from the too great Hurry in Loading, an of no great Consequence; at least in Comparison with the First: Whereas, on the other hand, the fecond Line being entirely fresh, in good Order, and their Arms well loaded, by being ramm'd down, and the Edge of the Enemy's Vigour some what blunted, we may justly conclude, that they will no be able to refift the Attack of the second Line, if perform'd like brave and resolute Soldiers: So that by the Loss which they fuftain'd from the first Line, and the immediate Attack of the Second, the above Supposition, that of rendering those Troops unserviceable, appears both a reasonable and a well-grounded Affertion.

But the greatest Difficulty which we have to struggle with on these Occasions, does not proceed so much from a Real as an Imaginary Danger: For when the Men of the second Line perceive those of the First give way, they are apt to form to themselves vast Idea's of the Enemy, which, by working strongly on the Imagination, become so terrible, that, by the Time they approach near, they frequently betake themselves to a shameful Flight, or make but a weak Resistance: So that by being feiz'd with a false Fear, they do not only lose the Opportunity, which Fortune throws in their way, of

aining an Advantage over the Enemy; but quit even the leans by which their own Lives might be faved: whereas, they would but give themselves Time to consider, their wn Reason must tell them, that fresh Troops will always yore too powerful for those who have been already engag'd; and that, if they acted as became Soldiers, they could not all of Success in the present Case. But we cannot expect hat the Majority of the Private Men will reason in this manner, fince their Reflections proceed rather from what is convey'd to them by the Eye, than from the Understanding: However, I must do the Common Soldiers of our Kingdom the Justice to fay, that they are as feldom guilty of the Failing ere complain'd of, as those of any other Nation in Europe: And that whenever it does happen, it proceeds oft'ner from the Want of Conduct in the Officers, than Courage in the Men: For the English are naturally Active, Strong, Bold and Enterprising; always ready to go on to Action; but impatient when delay'd or kept back from it. I should therefore think it adviseable, in the Case we speak of, for the second Line to move on briskly upon the First's giving way; by which means, they will not only fave the Lives of a great many Men of the first Line, but may fall upon the Enemy before they can have Time to put their Battalions in Order. which is a great Point towards rendering their Success both certain and easy: But if the second Line should halt, or move but flowly on, it will give the Enemy Time to do great Execution on the Men of the First, the Sight of which may strike those of the second Line with a Panick; whereas, the Carrying them on briskly will divert their Eyes from the Sight of the Slain, or at least not suffer them to remain so long as to prove of any ill Consequence, or abate their Courage.

As there is not any one Part of the Service more difficult to manage, than what is above treated of; or where the Courage and Conduct both of the Officers and Soldiers are put to a greater Tryal; I was therefore induced to be the more particular on that Head, in order to remove the wrong Impressions, which those of the second Line generally receive, upon their seeing the first Line give way; and likewise to shew how easy it is to repair that Loss, and gain immortal Honour, if they act as they ought to do; which Design, (tho' I am afraid very unskilfully executed) I hope will ex-

cuse the Length.

ARTICLE XI

It being a general Remark, that the Private Soldiers, who they are to go upon Action, form their Notions of the Darger from the outward Appearance of their Officers; an according to their Looks apprehend the Undertaking to homore or less difficult: (For when they perceive the Officer dejected, or thoughtful, they are apt to conclude the Affai desperate:) In order therefore to diffipate their Fears, and fortify their Courage, the Officers should assume a serent and chearful Air; and in delivering their Orders to, and in their common Discourse with, the Men, they should address themselves to them in an affable and affectionate Manner.

When the Private Soldiers have an Opinion of the Military Capacity of their Officers, or have had Experience of their Courage and Conduct, the above Method will effectually prevail, and create in them such an Opinion of their own Superiority over the Enemy, that they will look upon them with Contempt, and conclude them, in a manner, beat before they begin the Action. When such a Spirit is once raid in the Men, they seldom or never fail of Success: But when Officers have not had Experience of the Service, or neglect the Means by which they might attain to it, so which the Private Men are strict Observers, and from thence form their Judgment of them) the Case will not hold: For unless the Men have an Opinion of their Conduct, as well as their Courage, they won't be able to influence in the manner above spoken of.

ARTICLE XII.

When the Line is marching to attack the Enemy, and that a Battalion is so straitened for want of Room that they can't march the Whole in Front, by the others pressing too much upon them, or that the Ground will not admit of it, an entire Platoon should be order'd to fall back and march in the Rear of the Regiment, 'till the Interval will allow of its moving up; and in case the Battalion should engage before the Platoon can move up, it will not only prove a good Reserve, but be of considerable Service in keeping the Rest up to their Duty.

A R T I-

ARTICLE XIII.

Having treated at large, in the feventh Chapter, how a Battalion of Foot, when detach'd, is to proceed when attack'd by Horse; and as those in the Line may be liable to it during fome Part of the Action, the Commanding Officer of every Battalion should be prepared to receive them according to the Method laid down in the faid Chapter; with this Difference, that when they are attack'd by Horse in the Line, or in Brigade, they are not then to act separately, but in Conjunction with one another. The Method of acting in this Case, must depend on the Manner you are attack'd: For if they endeavour to fall on the Flank of the Line, by is lying open to them, a Battalion or more must be wheel'd back to secure it. But as this would carry me into a higher Scene than what I proposed, or am qualified for, I have therefore endeavour'd to avoid it as much as possibly I could; and have only enter'd fo far, as not to leave the Parts treated on dark or obscure, that the young Officers, for whom it is writ, may have a clear and perfect Notion of the several Parts of their Duty, in order to execute what shall be commanded them by their Superiors; without which, it was impossible for me to make them comprehend it.

ARTICLE XIV.

Iintended to have ended this Chapter with the above Article; but as the Infantry of Holland begin the Action, when they engage in an open or champain Country, with Firing by Platoons as they advance upon the Enemy; I believe it will not be improper to fet down their Method of performing it, with the Advantages and Disadvantages that

may arise from that way of proceeding,

Upon the Line's approaching so near the Enemy that they can do Execution on them with their Fire, which I suppose to be about 60 Paces, all the Battalions make ready, and march on with Recover'd Arms; a little after which, the Platoon on the Right of each Battalion advances forward, till the Rear Rank comes even with the Front Rank of the Regiment, then Halt, Kneel, Lock, Present and Fire. As soon as the Platoons on the Right have Fired, those on the Lest advance and do the same; and so from the Right and Lest of each Battalion 'till they finish in the Center, by ma-

king every Platoon Fire once. This Way is call'd, Aiter.

nate Firing.

In performing the Alternate Firing, the whole Line moves as flow as Foot can fall, that the Battalions may not fall into any Diforder, by the Platoons advancing to Fire; as also to give the Men Time to load their Arms before they approach too near the Enemy; which when they have done, the Line then moves on briskly; and when they come up close to the Enemy, they give them their whole Fire, as the English do.

By this Way of proceeding, the Enemy must receive two Fires; but it has sometimes happen'd, that, by their Alternate Firing only, they have done such Execution, that the Enemy did not wait for their second Fire; or if they did, they were too much weaken'd and disorder'd by it to make their Resistance prove of any great Consequence; by which means, they have often beat those they attack'd with a very inconstitution.

derable Loss to themselves.

When a Body of Foot can be brought to perform the Alternate Firing in a cool and regular Manner, it must be own'd, that they will have a great Advantage over those they attack, if they don't act in the same Manner: But unless the Officers have a thorough Knowledge of the Service, or at least those who command the Platoons, and the Private Men be very exact in obeying the Words of Command, and expert in loading after they have fired, it will be dangerous to attempt it.

For should the Enemy, by a quick and sudden Motion, advance upon them before they have all loaded (which would be right for them so to do) those who have not loaded will the apt to give Way, from a Notion of their being then defenceles; the Consequence of which may throw a Panick into the Whole, and involve them in the same Missortune: Therefore, unless it is managed with great Conduct, it may

very eafily turn to their Difadvantage.

But the Dutch, from the Excellency of their Discipline, which they strictly adhere to, have surmounted these Disseculties: For as the Selling and Buying of Commissions is a Traffick (and I believe the only one) unknown, or at least not allow'd of, in the Republick; their Officers are generally promoted by their Service; by which Means, the Majority of them are Men of Experience, and therefore may undertake it without running much Hazard: For as they are Judges of the Service, they will easily perceive, by the Motions

ions of the Enemy, when they should continue or desist from the Alternate Firing, and, consequently, can avoid the Danger above-mention'd, that of being attack'd by the Enemy before all their Men have loaded.

We have a common Notion, that this Sang Froid, or Obedient Quality in the Dutch, is owing chiefly to Nature, by their having a greater Proportion of Phlegm in their Constilution than the English, by which their Minds are not so soon spitated as ours. But I look upon this Way of Reasoning, to be rather a plausible Excuse for our own Neglect, in not bringing our Men to the same Perfection of Discipline, than the Production of any natural Cause in the Dutch. But, allowing that Nature does contribute something towards it, yet, it is evident, Art has the greatest Share, since their Troops are generally compos'd of different Nations.

The French form the same Notion of us, as we do of the Dutch; but I am surprized that Nation should still entertain such an Opinion, considering how often we have given sufficient Reasons to convince them that we don't want a due Proportion of Fire: And I hope we shall never have an Occasion of being convinc'd, by such powerful Arguments,

that the Dutch are not defective in that Point.

It is allow'd by all Nations, that the English possess Counge in an eminent Degree; but, at the same time, they accuse us of the Want of Patience, and consequently that which it produces, Obedience; fo that by our being defective in the Latter, the great Advantages which might be reap'd from the Former are often loft, or at least fall short of what might be justly expected from it. This Accusation is something severe, since by it they deprive us of an essential Quality (and, I was going to fay, the most effential one) towards the Forming of a Soldier, without which, no Man can be justly styled a Compleat one. They might say as well, that our Courage is the Effect of Passion, and not Reason: And, indeed, as it generally appears to them, they have too much Colour for the Affertion, by our Neglect of Discipline; and from thence conclude, that the English can't be brought into it: but they are certainly mistaken in that, fince none are more capable of Instruction than the English; and when proper Means are used, neither Patience, nor Obedience, are wanting in them.

Cha He Room Regu ous t Lots,

the F

are q

ral F of (

intl

gime

of o

in

Ti

whi

vin

be:

Qu

of

Pa

tre

16

he



CHAP. X.

Confisting of the Duty of the Infantry in Garrison.

ARTICLE I.



AVING treated in Chap. 8. of the necessary Precautions for Marching a Regiment of Foot, &. I shall proceed to the several Parts of the Duty which is to be perform'd before they arrive at, and during their Stay in, Garrison; according to the

modern Practice of the Garrifons abroad.

The Day before the Regiment is to arrive, the Commandding Officer should send the Regimental Quarter-master, or a proper Officer, with an exact Copy of his Route or Orders to the Governour, or Commander of the Garrison, to apprife him of their coming, that he may give the necessary Orders for their being quarter'd.

When the faid Orders are given, the Quarter-Matter is to go along with the Barrack-Master, or Person appointed for that purpose, to take Possession of the Caserns, or Barracks allotted for the Regiment, and to examine nicely into the Condition of the faid Quarters, in order to have them repaired, if they want it, before the Regiment arrives.

He is likewise to take an exact Inventory of all the Furniture, as Beds, Tables, Stools, and the Utenfils for the dreffing of Victuals, &c. and what Condition they are in, that it may be inferted in the Receipt which he is to give to the Person who delivers them.

If there is no Conveniency for the Lodging the Officers with the Men, they should be billetted on the Houses which lie most contiguous to the Caserns, or Barracks of the Regiment, that they may be ready, on all Occasions to join their Men.

He is to make an exact Division of the Caserns, or Rooms, according to the Number of the Companies in the Regiment; placing the Number design'd for each, contiguous to one another; after which they are to be put into Lots, to be drawn for when the Regiment arrives.

He is likewise to receive the Fire and Candle allotted for the Regiment, and to deliver it to the Men as soon as they

are quarter'd.

.

d

2

-

0

ARTICLE II.

If the Troops in the Garrison are so numerous, that several Regiments must be quarter'd on the Inhabitants, for want of Caserns or Barracks to contain them; the Town should, in that Case, be devided into as many Parts as there are Regiments to be so quarter'd; that the Officers and Soldiers of each Regiment may have a distinct Part to themselves, in order to their being drawn together without Loss of Time, in case of an Alarm; as also to avoid Disputes which might arise betwixt Regiment and Regiment, by having them intermix'd with one another. It will likewise he a great Ease to the Officers in the visiting of their Men's Quarters; and to the Serjeants and Corporals in delivering of Orders to the Men, and in assembling of them for the Parade, Exercise, or the viewing of their Arms and Accouttements.

This way of Quartering, is call'd in the Military Phrase, Cantoning of a Town.

ARTICLE III.

When the Regiment comes near the Garrison, the Commanding Officer should fend an Officer, to acquaint the Governour, that he shall arrive at such a Time, and to desire he will send Orders to the Officer of the Port-Guard to permit the Regiment to march into the Town; without which Precaution they will be kept without the Barrier, 'till the Officer of the Guard sends and receives the Governour's Orders for their Admittance.

On this Notice, the Governour commonly fends the Town-Major, or one of the Town-Adjutants, with Orders for their Entrance, and to conduct the Regiment to the

Grand-Parade.

Chap. X. The Quarter-Master, or Officer who was sent to prepare the Quarters, should meet the Regiment at some distance from the Town, to acquaint the Colonel with his Proceedings; as also to find out some convenient Place near the Town for the Regiment to draw up before they enter, and to conduct them to it. This small Halt is only to give the Mentime to roll their Cravats, cock their Hats, and put themselves in the best Order they can, that they may appear in a decent and Soldier-like manner upon their entering the Town.

While the Men are putting themselves in Order, the Officer's Billets may be distributed amongst them, which is commonly done by Lot, to avoid shewing any Partiality; that is, those of each Rank are to draw with one another, The Reason why I think that the Officers Billets should be distributed before they march into the Town, is, that they may fend their Baggage directly to their Quarters, and not lose time by deferring of it 'till they come to the Parade; but this may or may not be done as the Colonel shall think proper.

As foon as the Men have put themselves in Order, and the Files are compleated, they may then purfue their March; and when they come near the Barrier, all the Officers, except the Colonel, Major and Adjutant, must difmount, and march at the Head of their Divisions with their Half-Pikes

in their Hands, and the Enfigns with the Colours.

It is a standing Rule, that when the Officers are order'd to difmount, and the Enfigns to take the Colours, the Drummers are to fall into their Divisions, and beat a March, unless the Service may require their being filent; in which

Case, Orders are given accordingly.

The Colonel, or Commanding Officer, marches always on Horseback at the Head of the Regiment; but when the Governour (as a Superior Officer) is to see the Regiment march by, as foon as he has Notice of the Governour's Approach, he is to difmount, and march with his Half-Pike in his Hand, and pay him the Complement due to his Character in the Army.

ARTICLE IV.

As foon as the Town-Major, or the Officer appointed to act for him, has Notice from the Centinels that the Regiment is in View, he should take a Serjeant and a File of Men,

Men, and go to the outermost Barrier, and order one of the Draw-bridges to be drawn up after him, 'till he has examin'd the original Orders or Route of the Regiment, lest the Enemy, by having Notice of the March of the Regiment, should, under that Pretence, endeavour to surprize the Town.

The Town-Major and the Party from the Guard are to remain within the Barrier; and when the Regiment approaches near it, he is to order the Gate to be shut; upon which the Colonel should halt the Regiment, and send the Major with the original Order for his Marching to that Garrison, to be perused by the Town-Major, who is to receive it over the Barrier; and when he finds it authentick, and has discover'd the Regiment to be Friends, he then orders the Gate of the Barrier to he open'd, the Draw-bridge to be let down, and the Regiment to march in.

When the Colonel comes up to the Barrier, the Town-Major is to return him the Route or Order, and then conduct the Regiment to the Grand-Parade, where they are to draw up in Battalion; after which, the Colonel, attended by the Town-Major, is to wait upon the Governour, to whom he is to deliver the original Order for his Marching to that Garrison, and at the same time acquaint him with the State of the Regiment, and deliver him a Return of it in Wri-

ting.

During the Time the Colonel is at the Governour's, the Regiment may order their Arms; but no Man must be suffer'd to stir out of the Ranks.

After the Governour has perused the Route, and the Return of the Regiment, and ask'd such further Questions concerning it, as he shall think proper, he then orders the Town-Major to wait upon the Colonel back to the Regiment, and to read the general Orders of the Garrison to the Officers and Soldiers, that they may not commit a Crime through Ignorance; and then to conduct the Regiment to the Alarum Post assign'd them, and afterwards to their Caserns, Barracks, or Cantonment, where he is to dismiss them.

Upon the Colonel's returning from the Governour's, he is to be received with rested Arms, and all the Officers at their Posts with their Half-Pikes in their Hands; which Ceremony is always due to a Colonel from his own Regiment.

It is a standing Rule, that whenever the Complement of Rested Arms is paid to any Person, or from one Body of Troops to another, it is always to be done from shoulder'd Arms.

The Colonel then orders the Men to Shoulder, and the Battalion to be told off into three Grand-Divisions; after which, the Flank Grand-Divisions to be wheel'd to the Right and Lest inwards, and the Granadiers to draw up opposite to, and facing the Center Grand-Division. This being done, he commands them to keep a profound Silence; and the Town-Major being placed in the Center of the Square, reads the General Orders of the Garrison, and delivers an Extract of the same in Writing to the Major, that each Officer may have a Copy of them.

After this they are to be reduced into Battalion; then the Town-Major conducts them to their Regimental Parade, from thence to their Alarum Post, and afterwards to the Quarters affign'd them, where (after a proper Guard is appointed for the Security of the Quarters, and for relieving the Colonel's Sentry, and the Colours lodg'd) they are to

be difmis'd.

It is a General Rule for every Regiment to furnish their Proportion of Men to the Town-Guard the Day after they arrive; but when that can be dispensed with, it would be proper to give them that Day to clean their Arms and Accoutrements: However, this depends on the Governour, whether he will or will not allow of it.



LEXE EXECUTE SERVING SERVING

CHAP. XI.

The usual Guards in a Garrison, with Directions for Forming the Parade.

ARTICLE. I.

HE Guards are compos'd of a Detachment of Men taken from each Regiment, who are to mount daily for the Security of the Place.

The Number of Men who mount daily, must depend on the Strength of the Troops in Garrison, and the Number of Posts to be guarded; according to which the Duty is calculated: However, it is a fix'd Maxim in most of the Garrisons Abroad, to calculate the Duty in such a Manner, that the Soldiers shall mount Guard every third Day; and tho' the Troops should be very numerous, they never suffer them to be above three Days off, and the sourth on Duty. This is done by Mounting of more Guards than usual, or by adding to the Number of each Guard.

The Main-Guard is generally compos'd of a Captain, 2 Subalterns, 2 Serjeants, 2 Corporals, 2 Drummers, and 48 or 50 Private Soldiers.

Each Port has a Subaltern, Serjeant, Corporal, Drum-

mer, and 25 or 30 Private Soldiers.

Where there are Outworks of Consequence, such as Redoubts, detach'd Bastions, &c. Officers Guards mount commonly in them; but more particularly so, in Frontier Garrisons; otherwise Serjeants Guards may be sufficient.

The Citadel has generally a Garrison for its own Security, composed of an entire Regiment or more; in which case, those Troops do the Duty of the Citadel only, without interfering with that of the Town, or furnishing any Men for its Guard.

In Frontier Towns, they commonly mount another Guard, all'd the Reserve, being much in the same Nature as a Picquet-

quet-Guard in Camp, which is to be ready to march whenever the Governour shall order them.

The Reserve Guard consists commonly of a Captain, 2 Subalterns, 2 Serjeants, 2 Corporals, 2 Drummers, and 50

Men, or a greater Number if requifite.

The Time of mounting the Town Guards, is commonly at eight, nine or ten in the Morning: However, that depends on the Governour.

ARTICLE II.

The Men who mount the Guard, are to affemble at their Captains Quarters, to be view'd by them, or their Subalterns, to fee that their Arms, Ammunition and Accounterments are in good Order, and that they are clean and well drefs'd; after which, the orderly Corporals are to march them to the Regimental Parade, and deliver them over to the Adjutant, who is to draw them up according to the Seniority of their Companies, and to fee that each Company has furnish'd the Number appointed. He must likewise Size them as soon as they are form'd, which should never be omitted even in a Detachment of 12 Men, since it will add vastly to their Appearance.

As foon as the Detachments from the feveral Companies are drawn up, the Men fiz'd, and the Files compleated, the Adjutant and the Officers of the Regiment, who mount that Day, are to view the Men's Arms, Ammunition, Cloaths and Accourtements, that there may be nothing wanting when

they come to the Grand-Parade.

By this Inspection, the Adjutant will know if the Officers of the several Companies have complied with their Duty, in viewing their Men before they were brought to the Regimental Parade; and when he finds that they have been remis, by the Men not being clean and well-dress'd, or any thing wanting, he is to acquaint the Colonel with it, that they may be reprimanded for their Neglect.

In some Garrisons it is the Custom to have the Men, who mount, on their Regimental Parade two Hours before the Beating of the Assembly; in order to be exercis'd a-part by their own Adjutants. In others, they are to be at their Regimental Parade only half an Hour before the Assembly; in which Case, the whole are exercise'd together on the Grand-Parade by the eldest Officer who mounts the Guard.

hap. XI. It may be done in this Manner, when the Garrison is comod of Troops of one Nation, and that the Number who ount do not exceed 600 Men; but when it is compos'd different Nations, or that the Numbers are too great to exercis'd together, the former Method must be follow'd, hat of the several Corps being exercis'd a-part, on their Reimental Parade, by their own Adjutants.

ARTICLE III.

The Drum-Major, with all the Drummers of that Reginent which gives a Captain to the Main-Guard, and the nummers of the feveral Regiments, who are order'd to nount the Guard, are to beat the Assembly together.

They are all to parade at the Head of the Main-Guard half n Hour before the Time of Beating; and when the Hour pointed is come, the Drum-Major is to form them into lanks, and placing himself at the Head of them, orders hem to beat the Assembly, which they are to do quite round he Grand-Parade, and back to the Main-Guard; after shich, the Drummers, who mount, separate, and march to heir Regimental Parade, beating the Assembly the whole Way; but the Drum-Major, with the others who don't mount, beat back to the Grand-Parade, where they are to remain'till the Guards are march'd off.

As foon as the Drummers return to their Regimental Parde, the Officers, who mount the Guard, are to march their Men to the Grand-Parade, where they are to draw up, not by Seniority of Regiments, but according to Lot, which the Adjutants are to draw for, before the Detachments arrive, that they may shew them where they are to

draw up.

The Main-Guard is always composed of the Officers and Soldiers of one Regiment, each taking it in his Turn, and be-

ginning with the Eldeft.

The Regiment which mounts the Main-Guard, draws up on the Right of the Parade; the Detachments of the other Regiments having no fix'd Post, are to draw up according to the Lot drawn for them.

The Reason why they draw for their Posts on the Parade,

appears to me as follows.

Should the Regiments have a fix'd Post on the Parade, by drawing up constantly by Seniority of Regiments, the Men fould then know what Guard they were to mount, and by

that Means have it in their Power to carry on a treacherous Correspondence with the Enemy, for the Delivering up of a Post or Outwork of Consequence; but as their Posts are drawn for daily, they can't know where their Lot will fall, the Uncertainty of which will keep them out of Temp tation, and effectually prevent any Design of that Nature; for which Reason, neither Officer nor Soldier is allowed to change his Guard with another: Which Maxim, of the Regiments drawing for their Posts on the Parade, and the not suffering of the Officers and Soldiers to change their Guards with one another, I presume, is sounded on the sad Experience which a contrary Proceeding had produced.

When the Detachments from the several Regiments are drawn up on the Grand-Parade, the Serjeants who mount are to form themselves in a Rank entire opposite to their own Detachments, facing the Men, and four Paces advanced, in order to be posted to the Guards, as the Town-

Major tells them off.

ARTICLE IV.

The Town-Major begins on the Right to form the Guards; and as each is told off, he posts the Serjeants to them, taking them first from the Right. As each Guard is told off, and the Serjeant or Serjeants posted to them, he commands the Men to order their Arms, in which Position they are to remain 'till order'd to shoulder.

As the Serjeants are posted to the Guards, they are to fall into the Intervals on the Lest of the Front-rank of their Guards; but where there are two to one Guard, the other is to fall into the Rear of it, in order to prevent the Men from leaving their Ranks, or changing their Guards, which those

in the Front are likewise to have an Eye to.

When the Guards are form'd, the Drum-Major, with all the Drummers, who affembled at the Main Guard, are to beat the Affembly along the Head of the Guards, beginning at the Center, and marching to the Right, from thence to the Left, and back again to the Center, where they are to finish.

During the time the Assembly is Beating, all the Officers are to draw for their Guards, those who mount the Main-Guard and Reserve excepted; after which they are to give in their Names, with the Regiments they belong to, and the Guard they have drawn, to the Town-Major, who enters them

Chap. XI. hem in a Book. The Names of the Officers who mount he Main-Guard are to be given by their Adjutant, to be ntered with the Rest.

The Reserve being a distinct Duty from that of the Town Guards, it is always to be drawn up on the Left of the Paade, or form'd after the rest are march'd off. It is commo'd of an equal Number of Men from each Regiment, and Roll of Duty kept apart for the Officers.

When a Guard of Horse mounts, it is to be drawn up on the Right of the Main-Guard, leaving an Interval between

them. As foon as the Town-Major has enter'd all the Officers Names in his Book, he is to order a Drummer to beat a long Ruffle; at which, the Officers are to take theit Half-Pikes in heir Hands, and Place themselves at the Head of their Guards. being the Men; the Serjeants are at the same time to fall into their Divisions, and the Drummers to place themselves between the first and Second Ranks of their Guards.

After this, he orders the Drummer to beat three Flams; at the first of which, the Men are to rest their Firelocks; at the second they are to poize; and at the third, to shoulder. He then orders a short Russle to be beat; at which, the Officers are to Face to the Left-about to their proper Front, and immediately Dress in a Line.

When the whole Parade is to be exercis'd tog ther, the eldelt Officer, who mounts, is to give the We as of Command, and to proceed in the fame Manner as is directed from the Exercising of a Battalion, by opening the Files, ordering the Officers to take their Posts in the Rear; but to go no further than the Manual Exercise; after which, he orders the Officers to take their Posts in the Front, and closes the Files. If the eldest Officer has not a Voice strong enough, or any other Impediment, upon his speaking to the Town-Major, I prefume, he will excuse him, and order an Adjutant of one of the Regiments to do it, or order to be done by Beat of

As foon as the Exercise is over, the Town-Major orders the Guards to March off, one after another, beginning on the Right; but no Guard is to move 'till he fays to every Officer who Commands a Guard, March. The Reason for this is, that he may have time to View every Guard distinctly, to see if they are in order, and that they have their Complement of Men.

When the Main-Guard is posted on the Parade, all the others march off before it.

As foon as the Guards of Foot are marched off from the Parade, the Guard of Horse is then to march; but it is no

to move 'till all the Foot are march'd.

This must proceed from an old Custom, that of the Foo having the Rank in Garrison, and the Horse in the Field; by which the youngest Captain of Foot commanded all the Captains of Horse, while in Garrison; and the youngest Captain of Horse commanded all the Captains of Foot in the Field, without any Regard to the Dates of their Commission ons. But that Custom is now abolish'd, and every Officer commands according to Seniority, whether of Horse, Foot, or Dragoons; however, that Custom, of the Foot Guards marching off first, still subsists; because they are not only more numerous, but the immediate Security of the Place is committed to their Charge: Whereas, the Guard of Horfe's only employ'd to patrol during the Night in the Streets, and to reconnoitre the Avenues leading to the Town at the Opening of the Gates, to discover if the Troops of the Enemy are near, that the Town may not be furpriz'd.

When the Drummers of the Main-Guard, or that which marches off first, beat a March, all the Drummers of the

other Guards are to do the fame.

As foon as the Guards are marched off, the Town-Major should wait upon the Governour, or Commander of the Garrison, and acquaint him with it, and know if he has any Commands for the Garrison; after which, he returns to the Parade and difmisses the Adjutants, or sends them Notice by an orderly Serjeant, that there are no further Commands for them at that time; 'till which they are not to leave the Parade.

The Orderly Serjeant and Corporal of each Company are to attend the Parade every Morning, and to remain there 'till the Adjutants are difmissed, that if any Orders are to be

deliver'd, they may be ready to receive them.

In all the French Garrisons, as soon as the Parade is form'd, and the Guards ready to march, the Town-Major acquaints the Governour, or Commandant, with it, who is obliged to come and fee the Guards march off; but in the Garrisons of Holland, the Governours lie under no fuch Injunction, tho' they frequently do it.

In Garrisons which are remote from the Enemy, the Orders are generally deliver'd out immediately after the Guards

marched off from the Parade; but in Frontier Towns ware never given out to the Adjutants 'till the Gates are

When the King, a Prince of the Blood, the Captain-Gend, or a Person of Authority who is entituled to a Guard, mes into a Garrison, the eldest Regiment is always to ount a proper Guard on him during his Stay there, with-Rolling with the others, or having any Allowance for it the Town Duty; being to furnish the same Number of an for the Parade, Referve and Detachments as before: his is the Custom abroad; but I presume it is meant only ben fuch great Persons stay a Night or two; for should ey continue any confiderable time, the Duty would fall too rdupon one Regiment; which Rule, in my Opinion, may every juftly broke thro' by either allowing them for it in e other Duties, or by ordering each Regiment to take that Guard in its Turn; the latter of which appears the most equible, because the Town-Guards and Detachments are much ore fatiguing than those mounted on great Persons.

ARTICLE V.

The Officers who are to be reliev'd, are to order their len to fland to their Arms as foon as they hear the Drum those who are coming to relieve them; and when they ome in Sight, they are to order their Men to Shoulder their Arms. When the new Guard approaches very near, the Officer of the old One orders his Men to rest their Fire-

The Officer who comes to relieve, is to draw up his Guard opposite to the old One, in the same Manner that they are, whether fix or three Deep, or in a Rank entire; and when the Ranks are drefs'd, he then orders his Men to rest their Firelocks; in which Position both Guards are to remain 'till those who mount in the Outworks have march'd past them, which they are to do between the two Guards, provided they are the Port-Guards, otherwise they can't interfere with those sent to the Outworks. After this, the Officers advance towards one another, paying the usual Ceremony with their Hats, and the Officer who is to be reliev'd delivers all the Orders relating to the Guard to the Officer who comes to relieve him, acquainting him with the Numter of Sentrys by Day and by Night, what Patrols, &c. The Serjeants and Corporals of the old Guard deliver their

Chap. X Orders to those of the New at the same time; and wh that is over, the Men of both Guards should be order'd Shoulder; the Corporal of the new Guard is to number Men, and to draw out the Number of Sentrys who are the to be posted, forming them into Ranks, and, being conduct by the Corporal of the old Guard, march with them Relieve the Sentrys. They go first to the Sentry who posted the furthest from the Guard, and Relieve him, a fo one after another 'till they end with him at the Guard Room Door.

The Corporal of the new Guard when he Relieves th Sentrys, is to examine whether the Sentry-Boxes, Platforms Carriages of the Cannon, Palifades, &c. are in order, o damag'd. If he finds any of those Things damag'd, he not to Relieve that Sentry who had the Charge of them'til the Town-Major is acquainted with it, otherwise he mut be answerable for the Things fo damaged, or loft; but when he finds every thing in Order, he is to Relieve the Sentry, The Corporals are likewise to be attentive when the Sentry are delivering their Orders to one another, left they should omit fome Part of them.

As foon as the Sentrys are reliev'd, the Corporal of the old Guard returns with those reliev'd, forms them on the Left of the Guard, and acquaints his Officer with it. The Corporal of the new Guard returns at the fame time, and acquaints the Officer with his Proceedings, and whether he has reliev'd all the Sentrys, or not; and if not, the Reasons for it, that the Town-Major may be acquainted with it.

Where there are two Corporals on a Guard, one of them is to take the Charge of the Guard-Room, which he is to have deliver'd over to him clean, and the feveral Utenfils belonging to it in good Order, by the Corporal of the old Guard, which may be done while the others are Relieving the Sentrys; but where there is but one Corporal, it must be done either before or after the Sentrys are reliev'd; the Corporal must take an exact Account of what Things are deliver'd to him, and the Condition they are in, fince he must answer for what are lost are spoilt thro' Carelessiness.

It being a Custom for the Drummers to take care of the Offcers Guard-Room, with all the Utenfils belonging to it, and to keep it clean, the Drummer of the old Guard is to deliver it over to the Drummer of the new One in proper Order.

When these things are done, the Officer of the old Guard is to order his Men to Rest their Firelocks, then Club; after which, Chap. XI. hich, to Form their Ranks to the Right or Left, accordas they are to march from the Place they are drawn up n, and then March off, the Drummer beating a Troop; for which Reason, when a Guard dismounts, it is call'd, Troopof a Guard. When the Men of the old Guard Club heir Firelocks, those of the new One are to be order'd by heir Officer to Rest, and his Drummer is to beat a March, then the other beats the Troop.

When the Officer of the old Guard has marched his Guard about an hundred Yards, he may then dismiss the Men, first halting, and then dismiss them with the Ruff

f a Drum.

The Captain of the Main-Guard is to march to the Grand Parade, and draw up his Men before he difmiss them.

Those who Command the Guards in the Outworks, are, then Reliev'd, to march their Guards an hundred Paces with-

in the Gates before they dismiss them.

When a Guard which Mounts with Colours is reliev'd, or order'd to be dismiss'd, the Men are not to club their Firelocks, but to March with shouldered Arms, and the Drummers to beat a March to the Grand Parade, and draw up: after which, the Officer who commands the Guard is to fend he Enfign to Lodge the Colours with a proper Detachment to guard them, and to remain on the Parade with the Rest fill he returns with the Detachment; after this he orders them to Club their Firelocks, and then dismisses them; but If the Place where the Colours are to be Lodg'd is at a considerable Distance, or that the Weather is very bad, he may then order the Enfign to difmifs his Detachment as foon as he has lodg'd the Colours; in which Case he dismisses the reft, as foon as the Colours are marched out of fight.

As foon as the old Guards are marched off, the new Guards are to be drawn up on the Ground where the old Ones food; after which, the Officers may order the Men to Ground their Arms, or place them against the Wall of the Guard-Room, or lodge them in it, according as the Con-

veniency of the Place, or the Weather will permit.

When a Sentry has not been reliev'd by the Corporal, for the Reasons already mention'd, that of suffering any Thing to be loft, &c. the Officer of the Guard is to fend the Corporal to acquaint the Town-Major with it; on which, he to fend one of the Town Adjutants to enquire into the Damages done, and order the Sentry to be reliev'd. and fent to

the Provost Marshal's, or Place appointed for Prisoners, 'ill

he can be try'd in a regular Manner for the same.

When the Guard-Rooms are damag'd, or the Utenfils belonging to them loft, or that the Gates of the Town, and Barriers, or the Draw-Bridges are spoil'd, or out of order, the Officer is not to Relieve the Guard 'till he has sent to the Town-Major to acquaint him with it, otherwise he will be oblig'd to repair those Damages.

ARTICLE VI.

The Manner of Relieving the Sentrys, with Directions how they are to behave on their Posts.

When the Corporal goes to Relieve the Sentrys, as foon as he comes within fix Paces of the Sentry who is to be reliev'd, he orders his Men to Halt, and then to Rest their Firelocks; the Sentry who is to be reliev'd is to Rest his Arms at the fame time; the Corporal then orders the first whois to go on Duty, to Relieve the Sentry; upon which he Recovers his Arms, and Advances within a Pace of the Sentry, then Halts, and Rests his Arms, and receives the Orders, relating to that Post, from the Sentry who is to be reliev'd; to which the Corporals are to give Attention, left some Part of the Orders might be omitted. As foon as they have deliver'd their Orders, they both Recover their Arms, and exchange Places, then Rest their Arms again. This being done, the Corporal orders the other Men to Shoulder, at which the two Sentrys do the same, and the Sentry, who is relieved, falls in the Rear of those who are going to Relieve; then the Corporal Marches to the next Post.

If the Sentrys are required to have their Bayonets fix'd, when the Orders are deliver'd, they are to Poize their Firelocks, Rest on their Arms, and he who Relieves draws his Bayonet, and fixes it, and he that is reliev'd unfixes his Bayonet and returns it; then they Recover their Arms, exchange Places, and perform all the other Motions above-mention'd.

All Sentrys are to be Vigilant on their Posts; neither are they to Sing, smoke Tobacco, nor suffer any Noise to be made near them. They are not to fit down, lay their Arms out of their Hands, or sleep; but to keep moving about their Posts, if the Weather will allow of it.

They

They are to have a watchful Eye over the Things comuited to their Charge, and not to suffer any of them to be renoved, or taken away, 'till they have Orders from the Cororal of the Guard for it.

They are not to fuffer any one to touch or handle their Arms; or, in the Night-time, to come within the Reach of

hem.

They are not to suffer any Light to remain, or any Fire be made near their Posts in the Night-time. Neither is my Sentry to be reliev'd, nor removed from his Post, but a the Corporal of the Guard.

w the Corporal of the Guard.

No Body is to strike or abuse a Sentry on his Post; but when he has committed a Crime, he is to be reliev'd, and then punish'd, according to the Rules and Articles of War.

When a Sentinel is taken ill on his Post, or that the Cold is so great that he can't support himself under it, he is to all the Corporal of the Guard, and acquaint him with it, in order to his being reliev'd; but when the Sentry, so taken, is at too great a Distance to be heard by the Corporal, thenext Sentry to him is to Pass the Word for the Corporal of the Guard, and so from one to another, 'till it comes to the Guard; for which Reason, it is a standing Rule to post Sentrys within Call of one another, particularly on the Ramparts of a Town.

When Sentrys have Orders to stop People in the Nighttime, in order to their being examin'd, or to make Rounds
stand; as soon as they come within twenty Paces of them,
they are to Challenge boldly, Who comes there? If the Persons so challeng'd don't answer, but approach, the Sentrys
are to Make Ready their Arms, and Challenge a second
time; and if they still advance without answering, they are
to Cock their Firelocks, and Challenge a third time; and if
they advance after that without answering, the Sentrys are
then to Fire, and return to their Guard, if they find it netessary; otherwise they may continue at their Posts, and Load
again immediately; but when the Persons challeng'd answer, the Sentrys are to order them to Stand, and call the
Serjeant of the Guard.

A Sentry on his Post in the Night, is to know no Body but by the Counter-Sign. When he Challenges, and is answer'd Relief, he is to order them to Stand, by saying, Stand Relief, advance Corporal; upon which the Corporal Halts the Men, and advances alone within a Yard of the Sentry's Firelock, (first ordering his Men to Rest their Firelocks, on which the Sentry does the same, as is directed in the Re-

M 2 lieving

lieving of Sentrys) and gives him the Counter-Sign, taking care that no other Person shall hear it; after which, the Re-

lief goes in the manner before mention'd.

All Sentrys, except those at the Guard-Room Docr, when they Challenge, and are answered Round, or Patrol, they are to say, Pass Round, or Patrol, and to Rest their Firelocks 'till they are pass'd, and not suffer them to come within the Reach of their Arms.

When two Sentry's are placed at one Post, which is always done at Advanced Posts, they are to be very attentive, and keep a profound Silence; and when they hear any Noise, such as the March of Horse or Foot, or any Number of Men approaching towards them, one of them is to return immediately to the Guard, and to acquaint the Officer with it, but without any Noise, and then to go back to his Post. The Sentry who remain'd is to listen with great attention to the Noise, in order to discover what it was, and to make his Firelock Ready, and stand upon his Guard, that he may not be taken by Surprize; and when any Person or Personscome near him, and won't answer or stand when he has challeng'd and commanded them to do it, according to the foregoing Directions, he is to Fire, and return to his Guard.

The Sentry at the Guard-Room Door is to Challenge briskly when any Person comes within twenty Paces of him; and if he is answer'd Round, he is then to say, Stand Round, and Rest his Firelock, and call the Serjeant of the Guard. He is not to suffer the Round to approach after that,

'till order'd by his Officer.

When an Officer goes to Visit the Sentrys, the Sentry is to Challenge when he comes within ten or twelve Paces of his Post; and when he is answer'd, the Visit, he is to say, Stand Visit, advance one with the Counter-Sign; upon which he Rests his Arms, and permits the Person, who is to give the Counter-Sign, to approach within a Pace of the Muzzle of his Firelock, that none else may discover the Counter-Sign; therefore all Counter-Signs for Foot ought to be a Name, Word, or Number, and that to be spoke very near, and no louder than is necessary for the Sentry to hear; it being easy in the Night for the Enemy to approach undiscover'd, near enough to distinguish a Hem, Whistle, or Slap on the Pouch, should they be given for Counter-Signs, and by that means be able to impose on the Sentry and seize him, and after that Surprize the Guard.

A Sentry who is found Sleeping on his Post, or attempts to deliver it up to the Enemy, or suffers it to be surprized thro' Negligence, is to be punish'd with Death; therefore all Sentrys must be very alert, that they may avoid falling into these enormous Crimes, since the Articles of War, and the constant Practice of all Nations, make it absolutely Death to those who shall be found Guilty of them.

When the Counter-Sign is chang'd during the Night, the sentrys are to take it from none but the Corporal of the

Guard.

When a Town is Besieg'd, or that they are apprehensive of the Enemy's making some Attempt to Surprize them, it iscustomary for the Sentrys posted on the Ramparts to call out, every Half-Hour, with a loud Voice, All is well; when this is order'd, the Town-Major is to affign the Post it hall begin at, and which Way it shall go round. Upon the Full's faying, all is well, the next to him is to fay the fame, and so from one to another 'till it comes quite round to him who began it. The Defign of this is to keep the Sentrys alert on their Posts, and to prevent their falling asleep. Sentrys at the Guard-Room Doors are to be very attentive to the Word (all is well) coming round; and when they find that it does not come punctually to the time, they are to acquaint their Officers with it, who are to fend a Corporal with a File of Men round their Sentrys, lest any of them should have fallen asleep, or quitted their Posts, in or der to find out where it stopped, that the Offender may be brought to Punishment.

The Word going round in this Manner, is never used but in time of Danger; or now and then to Instruct young or unexperienced Troops in their Duty: For when Things of this Nature, which should be only practised on proper Occasions, are constantly used when there is no Necessity for them, they grow so samiliar 'till at last they fall into Contempt, and, perhaps, are Neglectedwhen there is a real Occasion for their being punctually observed. I am therefore of Opinion, that it should not be used but for the Reasons abovemention'd, that of real Danger, and to instruct young Sol-

diers.

I believe what I have already faid, relating to the Duty of a Sentry on his Post, will be sufficient to give any one a sull and clear Idea of it: However, I don't pretend to say that this is all, since particular Cases will require particular Orders; and without they are mention'd, it is impossible to

M 3

Sive the necessary Directions; but whatever Orders a Sentry shall receive, whether those above-mentioned, or other he is to execute them with the utmost Exactness, since the Sasety of an Army, or the Preservation of a Town, may of ten depend on the due Personmance of his Orders.

इस्ट्राइस

CHAP, XII.

Consisting of Instructions to the Officers on Guard, from the Time of Mounting 'till they are Reliev'd; with the Manner of going and receiving Rounds, and sending Patrols; with the Design of them.

ARTICLE I.

O Officer is to leave his Guard during the Time he is on his Duty, which in Garrison never exceeds twenty four Hours, but must fend for what he wants.

He must not suffer above two Men at a time to leave the Guard, and then only for their

Victuals and Drink; when they return, he may allow two more to go off on the fame Account; they should be allowed no more Time than what is absolutely Necessary, that each may have his Turn; which if they transgress, the Officer should punish them for it at their Return. But lest some of the Men should ask Leave just before they are to go Sentry, in order to escape or avoid their Duty, the Officer of the Guard should always send for the Corporal before he gives a Man Leave, that he may inform him when he is to go Sentry; as also to order the Serjeant or Corporal to set down their Names, with the Hour they went, and the Time allow'd them; when they return they are to acquaint their Officer with it, that he may know whether they have been punctual or not.

The Officers of the Port-Guards are to examine all Strangers who come into the Garrison, taking their Names in Writing,

Writing, with the Place where they are to lodge, and the Time they intend to stay; which they are to mention in the next Report they send to the Captain of the Main-Guard; but when a Person of Distinction comes into the Town, the Officer of the Port-Guard is to send an Account of it in Writing immediately, by an Orderly Man, to the Captain of the Main-Guard, who is to acquaint the Governour, or Commandant, with it as soon as he can. When any Person comes into the Town, whom they have reason to suspect, by his not being able to give a good Account of himself, the Officer is to send him to the Captain of the Main-Guard, who is to secure him 'till he can acquaint the Governour with it, in order to his being further examin'd.

ARTICLE II.

The Officers of the Port-Guards, are to fend a Report Night and Morning, in Writing, to the Captain of the Main-Guard, in which they are to infert the Names of all Strangers who have come into the Town, the Place where they lodge, and the Time they intend to remain, and of those who go out of the Town; as also of ev'ry Thing that shall happen on their Guard; which Reports are to be sign'd by the Officers, specifying the Day of the Month, and the Port it came from, and to be sent by the Serjeants who go for the Keys to shut and open the Gates.

All the other Guards, except the Referve, are to fend their Reports in the same Manner, and at the same Time, to the Captain of the Main-Guard. These are called the Ordinary Reports, as being sent constantly Night and Morning, at a

fix'd Time.

Those which are called extraordinary Reports, are only sent when any thing extraordinary happens on or near a Guard, or a Person of Distinction comes into Town, that the Captain of the Main-Guard may acquaint the Go-

vernour with it immediately.

As foon as the Captain of the Main-Guard receives the Night Reports, he is to write them over fair in a Sheet of Paper, or more if requifite, putting the Report of each Guard distinctly by it self, with the Officer's Name who commands it; after which he is to sign it; and when the Gates are shut, and the Orders are given out, he is to wait on the Governour, give him the Parole, and deliver him the Report of the whole.

M 4

The

The Captain of the Main-Guard is to enter the Morning Reports in the same manner, with every Thing that has occurr'd during the Night, either relating to the several Rounds or Patrols, with the Time each went and finish'd, that it may be known whether the Officers have complied with their Orders, or not; as also what Prisoners are on the Main-Guard, with the Reasons for their being committed; and whether Soldiers, Townsmen, or Strangers taken up on Suppicion. In short, he is to put every Thing down which has happen'd between the Evening Report and the Time of Relief, in order to give a faithful and exact Report to the Governour, which he is to do as soon as he is reliev'd by giving him the Parole first in his Ear, and then deliver him the Report.

When any thing happens on any of the Guards between the Morning Report and the Time of Relief, such as Strangers coming into a Town, &c. the Officers are to send an Account of it to the Captain of the Main-Guard, that it may be enter'd with the rest, before he delivers it to the

Governour.

When any of the Rounds neglect going, or don't perform it at the Hour appointed, the Officers of those Guards to which the Round or Rounds have not gone, or gone after the Time directed, are to mention it in the Morning Report to the Captain of the Main-Guard, who is to enter it in that which he gives to the Governour, that the Reason

for fuch Neglect may be enquired into.

The Referve-Guard being only a Number of Men kept in a Readiness, to act either in the Town, or to March out of it, as the Governour shall have an occasion for their Service; the Officer who commands it, is therefore to receive no Orders but from the Governour, or the Town-Major, by his Directions, which he is to be ready to execute at a Minute's Warning. He is therefore to keep no more Sentrys than what are necessary for the Security of his Guard, and only to Patrole near his own Guard-Room; Neither is he under the Direction of the Captain of the Main-Guard, nor to make any Report to him; but when he is reliev'd he is to wait on the Governour, give him the Parole, and deliver him a Report of his Guard in Writing, sign'd.

ARTICLE III.

The Officer of the Port-Guards are to keep the Barriers shut, and the Draw-Bridges up, on Sundays and Holidays, during

the Time of Divine Service; as also every Day from

Twelve a Clock 'till One.

They are likewise to shut the Barriers, and draw up the Draw-bridges, at the Approach of any Party of arm'd Men, tho' it should be Detachments of their own Garrison, and acquaint the Captain of the Main-Guard with it immediately, that he may wait on the Governour to receive his Orders for their Admittance, without which they must not be permitted to come into the Town. One Officer or a Serjeant may be allowed Entrance, to shew the Order or Route, that the Governour may have an exact Account of them.

When any Detachment, or a Number of arm'd Men, enters the Town, the Officer of the Port-Guard is to have is Men under Arm's: And if it is a Detachment commanddby an Officer, the Men of the Port-Guard are to Rest their Arms, and the Drummer to beat a March, provided the Party which enters beats a March; but if it is only a Serieant's Party, the Guard is to remain Shoulder'd, and the Officer remains at the Head of it without his Halfe-Pike in his Hand. This may be look'd upon, by fome, as too great a Complement from an Officers Guard to a Serjeant's Party; but they must know that it is not done by Way, of Refred to those who enter, but for the Security of the Town; left the Enemy, by having forg'd or procured a Route or Order, might send such a Party to seize the Gate, while the Body lay-concealled at some little Distance, and ready to advance on the first Signal. It is therefore a standing Rule in all Garrisons, for the Port-Guards to be under Arms, when any Number of arm'd Men march into the Town, tho' they belong to the Garrison.

When a Fire breaks out in a Garrison, the Officers of the Port-Guards are to put their Men immediately under Arms, and order the Barriers to be shut, and the Draw-Bridges drawn up, and to keep them so 'till the Fire is extinguish'd.

This Precaution is absolutely necessary in Frontier Garrisons, otherwise Towns might be easily surprized, should the
Gates be left open on such an Occasion; it being natural for
every Body to run to that Part which is set on fire; which
might be contrived on purpose by the Enemy, by procuring
proper Emissaries to do it, and who, by lodging Troops,
at the time appointed, within a proper Distance of the Town,
might, during the Consternation which always attends such
Accidents, seize one of the Gates, and by that means pos-

fess themselves of the Town; but by the shutting of the Barriers, and raising the Draw-bridges, that Danger will be effectually prevented, and leave them no Room for fuch a Undertaking, at least with any Hopes of Success.

When a Riot, or a tumultuous Assembly, happens nea a Port, the Officer of that Guard is to use the same Precau tions, in shutting of the Barrier, drawing up the Bridges and keeping his Men under Arms 'till it is over, for th Reasons above mention'd; but when these Things happen to be only some small Disorder, occasion'd by a Quarrel, h may fend a Serjeant and a File of Men to quell it.

When a Riot happens in those Parts of the Town which are at a Distance from the Ports, the Captain of the Main-Guard is to fend Parties, both from his own and the Horfe-Guard, to disperse the Mob, and seize the Offenders.

In all Frontier Garrisons, it is necessary to double the Guards on Market-days, and to examine strictly all cover'd Waggons, or those loaded with Hay or Straw; as also Boats, Barges or Ships, and every Thing in which Men. Arms, or Ammunition may lie conceal'd; and when any Thing of that Nature is discover'd, they are to stop it, and acquaint the Captain of the Main-Guard, that he may inform the Governour with it, and receive his Directions.

ARTICLE IV.

Half an Hour before the Gates are to be thut, which is generally at the Setting of the Sun, a Serjeant and four Men must be fent from each Port to the Main-Guard for the Keys; at which Time the Drummers of the Port-Guards are to go upon the Ramparts and beat a Retreat, to give Notice to those without, that the Gates are going to be shut, that they may come in before they are. As foon as the Drummers have finished the Retreat, which they should not do in less than a Quarter of an Hour, the Officers must order the Barriers and Gates to be flut, leaving only the Wickets open; after which, no Soldier should be suffer'd to go out of the Town, tho' Port-liberty should be allow'd them in the Day-time.

The Town-Major, or, in his Absence, one of the Town-Adjutants, must take a Serjeant and 12 Men from the Main-Guard and go to the Governour for the Keys of the Town, bring them from thence to the Main-Guard, and deliver them to the Serjeants of the feveral Ports, who are to

carry

carry them to their Guards, Escorted by the Men they brought with them. As foon as the Sentinels at the Ports perceive the Serjeants coming with the Keys, they are to give Notice of it, on which the Officers are to turn out their Guards, ranging the Men under the Vault or Arch of the Port, in two Ranks, Facing one another, that the Keys may pass between them. As soon as the Serjeants arrive with the Keys, the Officers are to order their Men to Reft their Firelocks, and the Drummers to beat a March 'till the Gates are Lock'd. He must order a Corporal and four Men more with Arms to escort the Keys to the outermost Barner, and to place two Men with Rested Arms, on every Draw-Bridge, 'till they return from Locking the Barriers. He must send likewise a sufficient Number of Men without Arms to affift in the Locking of the Gates and Drawing up the Bridges.

When there are any Guards to be posted in the Outworks during the Night, the Town-Major, or one of the Town-Adjutants, should go along with the Keys of that Port from whence they are to be detached, in order to see them Posted, and to give the Officer or Serjeant who commands them the Word, Counter-Sign, and the necessary Orders relating to the Care of the Post or Posts to be Guarded, and then see the

Gates of that Port immediately Locked.

When there are Guards to be placed in the Outworks at different Parts of the Town, and that the Town-Major and his Aids can't fee them all Posted themselves, without keeping the Gates open beyond the usual Time, the Town-Major may send Directions to the Officers of the Port-Guards, from whence they are to be Detach'd, to go and Post them, with the Orders, Parole, and Counter-Sign, in Writing, seal'd up, to leave with those who command them, with Directions not to open it 'till the Gates are shut. As Cases of this Nature seldom happen, I don't know that the above Method was ever practis'd; and therefore won't recommend it, but when it can't be avoided, by the Night-Posts in the Outworks being too numerous for the proper Officers to see them all Posted themselves; but whenever this should be the Case, I believe the Expedient won't be thought improper.

When the Gates are shut, which the Officers on the Port-Guards are always to see done, the Keys are to be carried back to the Main-Guard, by the Serjeants and Escorts who brought them, and deliver'd to the Town-Major, or Adjutant, who, when they are all return'd, is to carry them to

the Governour's, escorted by a Serjeant and 12 Men from the Main-Guard.

As foon as the Gates are shut, all the additional Night. Sentrys within the Walls are to be posted, and to take Postession of all other Night Posts which shall be order'd; as ter which the Officers are to order their Men to Recover their Arms, and lodge them in the Guard-Room, taking care to place them in such Order, that every Man may take his own Firelock, when commanded, without any Bustle or Consusion.

The Serjeants who carried the Keys back to the Main-Guard, are to remain there 'till they have receiv'd the Night Orders from the Town-Major, and the Tickets for the Rounds from the Captain of the Main-Guard; after which they are to return to their Guards, and deliver the Orders, Parole, and Counter-Sign, with the Tickets, to their Officers, and then to the Corporals of the Guards.

As foon as the Gates are shut and the Keys return'd to the Governour, the Town-Major should come to the Main-Guard, and deliver out the Night Orders to the Majors and Adjutants of the Garrison, and to the Serjeants from the

Port-Guards and others.

The Captain of the Main-Guard is to deliver to the Serjeants from the Port-Guards, as many Tickets as there are Rounds order'd to go, taking care that the Names of the Officers Guards are named on the Tickets, one of which is

to be deliver'd to every Round as they pass.

In Frontier Garrisons, they commonly order so many Rounds as to have an Officer always walking on the Ramparts in the Night. When this is necessary, they compute the Time that the first Round will be going round the Town; and when that has almost finish'd, the Second is to begin, and fo one after another 'till the Reveille Beats. These are called the Visiting Rounds. The Officers who dismount in the Morning, are always appointed to go to these Rounds; because they are furthest from Duty. They are to affemble at the Main-Guard at the Time of delivering the Night Orders, to draw by Lot for the Hour each is to go his Round at; after which the Town-Major is to enter their Names, Regiments they belong to, and the Time of going their Rounds, in his Book; that if the Governour should find by the Morning's Report, that no Round went fuch an Hour, or staid beyond the usual Time, he may inform Him who should have gone then, that the Reason may be enquired into. The The Retreat, or Tat-too, is generally beat at Ten a-Clock t Night in the Summer, and at Eight in Winter. It is perform'd by the Drum-Major, and all the Drummers of that Regiment which gives a Captain to the Main-Guard that Day.

They are to begin at the Main-Guard, beat round the Grand Parade, and return back and finish where they began. They are to be escorted by a Serjeant and a File of Men

from the Main-Guard.

They are to be answer'd by the Drummers of all the other Guards; as also by four Drummers of each Regiment in their

respective Quarters, if the Town is very large.

The Tat-too, is the Signal given for the Soldiers to Retire to their Chambers, to put out their Fire and Candle, and go to Bed. The Publick Houses are, at the same time, to that their Doors, and sell no more Liquor that Night.

In Frontier Garrisons, the Burghers are constantly obliged, when they go out after Tat-too, to carry a Light with them. Those who don't, are taken up by the Patrols, and kept Prisoners all Night upon the Guard, in order to be punished next Morning by the Governour, for disobeying the Orders of the Garrison.

ARTICLE V.

The Patrols are to go every Hour in the Night, from the Bating of the Tat-too 'till the Reveille. The Patrols are commonly compos'd of a Serjeant and 6 or 12 Men from ech Guard. They are to walk in the Streets to prevent Diforders, or any Number of People affembling together, and to oblige all those who keep Publick Houses to send away their Guests and shut their Doors. When they see any Light in the Soldiers Caserns or Barracks, to oblige them to put it out, or acquaint the Guard of those Quarters with it, that they may see it done. To take up all the Soldiers they and out of their Quarters; as also all the Inhabitants who go without Lights, if the Orders of the Garrison are such, and tarry them Prisoners to the Guard. When any of the Pubick Houses entertain Company after the Patrol has forbid them, they are to carry the Landlords to the Guard, that the Governour may punish them the next Day for their Disobedience.

The Town-Major is to Affign a proper District for each Guard to Patrol in, by Dividing of the Town in such a Man-

ner, that every Street may be included in one Patrol or another. The Diffricts should lie Contiguous to the several Guards, that the Patrols may not interfere with one another. The Middle of the Town belongs to the Main-Guard, and the Streets near the Ramparts, to the Port-Guards.

It is the Custom, in some Garrisons, for the Horse-Guard to perform these Patrols on Horse-back. When the Town is very large, it will be very proper to order them to Patrol through the Principal Streets of the Town, and the great Squares and Market-Places, to prevent any tumultuous Assembly, or Rising of the Inhabitants; but as to the performing of the other Parts, for which Patrols are designed, as above-mention'd, how is it possible for them to comply with it? For as the Noise of the Horses Feet will be heard at a considerable Distance, it will be easie for those who disobey the Orders of the Garrison to avoid the Patrol, and thereby escape due Punishment: For which Reason Patrols of Horse, in Towns, are generally laid asside, except in the Case above-mentioned, and those of Foot appointed in their Room; which, as being more useful, are infinitely more proper.

When the Patrols are Challeng'd by the Sentries, they are to answer Patrol; upon which the Sentry replies, Pass

Patrol

When they return from Patroling, and are Challeng'd by the Sentry at the Guard-Room Door, they are to Answer Patrol of the Guard, naming it, as Main-Guard, Reserve, or such a Port; upon which the Sentry permits them to go

into the Guard-Room and Lodge their Arms.

As foon as the Patrol Returns, the Serjeant is to make a Report to his Officer of every Thing that happen'd during his Patrol, and what Prisoners he has brought to the Guard, that he may examine them himself, and set down their Names in Writing, the Time and Reason for their being taken up, the Place of Abode, if Towns-Men, or if Soldiers, the Regiment and Company they belong to; all which must be inserted in the Morning Report to the Captain of the Main-Guard, at which time the Prisoners must be conducted there also.

ARTICLE VI.

The ordinary Rounds are Three. The Town-Major's

ound, the Grand Round, and the Visiting Round.

The Extraordinary Rounds, are those which are appointed ago every Hour of the Night, or every Two Hours, as a Governour shall think proper; which Rounds are permid by the Officers who dismount the Guard that Morney, and are call'd the Visiting Rounds, as before mention'd. As soon as the Gates are shut, and the Night Orders destrict to the Garrison, the Town-Major may begin his sound; the Design of which is, that he may see whether the Gates are shut, the additional Night Posts and Sentices posted, and the Officers and Soldiers all on their Guards.

Manner of going the Rounds, and receiving them.

When the Town-Major goes his Round, he comes to the Main-Guard and demands a Sergeant and four or fix Men befort him to the next Guard; and when it is dark one of the Men is to carry a Light. He may go to which Gate iff he pleases: whereas, all the other Rounds, except the Governour's or Commandant's, are to go according to the

Method prescrib'd them.

As foon as the Sentinel at the Guard-Room Door pertives the Round coming, he should give Notice to the
Guard, that they may be ready to turn out when order'd;
and when the Round comes within 20 Paces of the Guard,
he is to Challenge briskly, and when he is answer'd by the
depend who attends the Round, Town-Major's Round, he
sto say, Stand Round, and Rest his Firelock; after which,
he is to call out immediately, Serjeant turn out the Guard,
som-Major's Round. No Round is to advance after the
sentinel has Challeng'd and order'd them to stand.

Upon the Sentinel's calling, the Serjeant is to turn out the Guard immediately, drawing up the Men in good Order with shoulder'd Arms, and the Officer is to place himself at the Head of it with his Arms in his Hand. After this, he is to order the Serjeant and four or fix Men to advance towards the Round, and Challenge. When the Serjeant of the Guard comes within fix Paces of the Serjeant who escorted the Round, he is to Halt and Challenge briskly. The Serjant of the Escort is to answer, Town-Major's Round; up-

on which the Serjeant of the Guard replies, Stand Round Advance Serjeant with the Parole, and then orders his Me to Rest their Firelocks. The Serjeant of the Escort advance alone, and gives the Serjeant of the Guard the Parole in h Ear that none else my hear it, and while he is giving it, the Serjeant of the Guard holds the Spear of his Halbard at the other's Breaft. He then orders the Serjeant to return to h Escort, and, leaving the Men he brought with him to kee the Round from Advancing, goes to his Officer and give him the Parole he receiv'd from the Serjeant; the Office finding the Parole right, orders the Serjeant to return to h Men, and then fays, Advance Town-Major's Round, an orders the Guard to Rest their Arms; upon which the Ser jeant of the Guard orders his Men to wheel back from th Center and form a Lane, thro' which the Town-Major to pass, the Escort remaining where they were, and go up to the Officer and give him the Parole, laying his Mouth to hi Ear. The Officer holds the Spear of his Half-Pike, or Par tizan, at the Town-Major's Breast while he gives him th Parole. The Reafon of this Ceremony, is, I presume, le he should prove an Impostor, and come to betray the Guard and that if he should give a wrong Word, or appear not to be the Person whose Character he assumes, the Officer ma be prepared to punish him as he deserves; as also to be in State of Defence, left he should attempt his Life; the Sur prize of which might throw the Guard into fuch Confusion for want of an Officer to command it, that the Men would perhaps abandon their Post, or deliver themselves up, with out making any Refistance, on the Appearance of the Ene my's Troops, or a Body of Arm'd Men Advancing to wards them: So that unless the above Precautions wen that of obliging the Round to stand at some taken, viz. Distance 'till the Guard is put under Arms, with all the other Parts of the Ceremony, as above-mention'd, it might be easy for the Enemy to surprize an Out-Post or Camp Guard, by lodging a Party of their Men at some convenien Place near them, and then fend out a small Party in the Nature of a Round, with an Enterprizing Person to command it, and affume the Character, in order to kill the Officer which, with the Enemies appearing that Moment, would effectually prevail, and make them yield without any confiderable Resistance, or abandon their Post: but the strict Examination they are to go thro' before they are fuffer'd to ap proach the Guard, makes the Enterprize too difficult to be attempted mempted with Safety to the Person who shall undertake it. Resides, it is a standing Rule, both in Camp and Garrison from Officer on Guard to know no Body in the Night, but the Parole; and 'till that is given in the usual Form, he

to fuffer none to approach his Guard.

Tho' an Enterprize of this Nature would be more diffialt in a Garrison than in Camp, it might, however, be efthed, were these Ceremonies laid aside: For if the Enemy andraw the Inhabitants into their Interest, they may fend Men into the Town on Market-days in the Difguise of Persants, on pretence to fell Provisions (it being impossible or the Port-Guards to diffinguish who are really Peafants, and who are not) with Directions how they are to conduct hemselves 'till the Time appointed for the Undertaking. We may suppose that the Inhabitants, who have enter'd into the Plot, will not be wanting on their Part, to make the acessary Preparations of Arms and Ammunition, and to lodge them in some House near the Gate which they propose to fize; and conceal the Men who are fent in, 'till the Time it is to be executed. When the Time appointed comes, the Enemy will fend a Body of Troops superiour to those in Garrison, and take Care to conceal themselves in the Day Time, and not approach the Town 'till Night, and even not then 'till the appointed Hour, for Fear of being discover'd; with full Directions how they are to proceed, and when to awance to the Gate which is to he seized.

Were Measures of this kind well concerted, both within and without the Town, it would be no difficult Matter to fize a Port-Guard, and, with proper Instruments, break open the Gates, let down the Draw-Bridges, and give a free Entrance to the Enemy, before the Troops of the Garrison

could be got together to prevent it.

This Digression may be thought foreign to the present subject, and therefore might have been omitted; but my Defign in it, is to shew young Gentlemen the Necessity there is, for the Ceremony in Going and Receiving the Rounds; sending frequent Patrols; Sentinels not suffering any one to come within the Reach of their Arms; none permitted to come near a Guard at Night, 'till they are strictly examin'd; the Scarching of Waggons, Boats, &c. which come into the Town, less Men, Arms or Ammunition should be conteal'd; Strangers who enter, giving an Account of themselves, and obliging the Inhabitants to give an Account of all Strangers who lodge in their Houses, without which no Frontier.

Chap.

Repor

In t

Guards his Abs

Round,

gone by

of Cor

the Par

f they

be be c

any m

Officer

Round

Th

Princi

of the

Guard

not go

the Pr

from

pline,

it mu

perfec

Garri

one m

of a

think

Tow

ofy it

Al

B dir

Gran

And

Roun

give 1

the (

him.

T

Whic

mant

How

Town could be fafe from the Enemy in Conjunction with the Inhabitants, who may always be gain'd by the Force of Money, or at least a sufficient Number to carry on the Defign; so that the Danger within is to be guarded against, a well as that without; and how is it possible to be done, unless the foregoing Rules and Ceremonies are strictly ad-

hered to, and duly executed?

The Town-Major having given the Officer of the Guard the Parole, he is then to examine if the Gates are Lock'd and well fecur'd; whether they have taken Possession of their Night Posts, and placed the additional Night Sentinels; and to count the Men who are under Arms, to see if they are all on Guard, and if not, to enquire into the Reason of their Absence. He may likewise enquire into the Night Orders, as also all others relating to the Guard, that if there should be any Mistake in them he may then rectify them. After these Things are done, he should send back the Serjeant and Men, who attended him, to the Main-Guard, and take the same Number from this Guard to escort him to the next; and so from one Guard to another 'till he has sinish'd his Round. He is to be receiv'd at all the Guards in the same Manner as he was at the first.

As the Town-Major's Round is design'd to see if the Gates are lock'd, the Night-Posts posted, and the Orders deliver'd right, I presume, he may go either along the Ramparts, or thro' the Streets, from one Guard to another, as he shall think proper; but all the other Rounds, except the Gover-

nour's, must go along the Ramparts.

As foon as the Round is gone, the Officer is to order his Men to Lodge their Arms; and when the Serjeant returns from conducting any of the Rounds, he is to acquaint his Officer with it, and whether the Centinels, as they pass'd, were alert or not.

When it was faid that the Town-Major is to go his Round when the Night Orders were deliver'd, it is to be understood, that he is not to go 'till they are, and that the Gates are shut; after which he may take his own Time, there being no certain Hour prescrib'd him, provided he goes and sinishes before Twelve-a-Clock. Besides, it is even necessary for him to go at uncertain Hours, and change his Way of going, in order to keep the Guards alert: However he must always go the first Round, to verify the Night Orders.

When the Town-Major has finish'd his Round, he is to wait on the Governour, give him the Word, and make him

Report of the State of all the Posts, and the Condition he

found them in.

In the French Garrisons, all the Officers who command Guards are to give the Parole to the Town-Major, or, in his Absence, to the Town-Adjutant when he goes the first Round, which is always call'd the Town-Major's Round, tho' gone by one of his Aids. The Reason for this, is not by way Complement to the Town-Major; but that by receiving the Parole from the Officers of the Guards, he may know they have received it Right, otherwise, they say, how can the certain if they know it? When the Town-Major goes my more Rounds that Night, he must give the Parole to the Officers every Time he goes. except the first; as the other Rounds do.

This Method, in my Opinion, is grounded on a very just Principle, and therefore preferable to the other, which is that of the Town-Major's giving the Word to the Officers on Guard, even the first Time of his going: However, I am not going to introduce new Customs here; but only set down the Practice abroad; and where they differ from the Dutch. from whom we have taken the greatest Part of our Discipline, by having been in a long Alliance with them: and tho' it must be own'd, that we could not have follow'd a more perfect System of Discipline than theirs, both in Camp and Garrison; yet, in particular Parts, tho' perhaps not many, one may be allow'd to diffent from them, and prefer those of a neighbouring Nation, when we find them better; as I think that is, just above-mentioned, of the Officers giving the Town-Major the Word, in his first Round, in order to venty it.

All other Rounds must be received in the same Manner as I directed for the Town-Major's; only with this Difference, that the Officers on Guard are to give the Parole to the Grand Round; but all other Rounds are to give it to them: And tho' the Governour should go his Round after the Grand Round is made by the Captain of the Main-Guard, he is to gre the Word to the Officers on Guard; but in this Case, the Governour may carry an Officer to give the Word for

The Captain of the Main-Guard is to go the Grand Round, which is commonly made about Midnight; and the Lieuteant is to go the Visiting Round, which is made about an Hour before Day.

When the Governour intends to go the Grand Round, he is to fend Notice of it to the Captain of the Main-Guard, to prevent his going it, and that he may be prepar'd to receive him; it being usual for the Governour to come to the Main Guard first, and take an Escort along with him from thence to the next Guard, or to conduct him quite round if he thinks proper, and order the Lieutenant of the Guard to attend him. The Governour may order what Number of Men for his Escort he pleases, which generally consists of a Serjeant and 12 Men.

When the Governour goes the Grand Round, the Captain of the Main-Guard is to go the Visiting Round.

The Grand Round, or any Round which the Governour, or Commandant, shall make, may begin where they please, because whatever Round they meet is to give them the Word; whereas when two other Rounds meet, that which Challenges first has a Right to demand the Word of the other. But as this might occasion Disputes in the giving the Word. should both Challenge together, or imagine they did, the Place where they are to begin, and the Hour which each Round is to go at, must be particularly mention'd; by which Method they cannot possibly meet, but will follow one another in a regular Manner, provided they are punctual in the Execution.

All Rounds (the Town-Major's, Grand, and Governour's Rounds excepted) are to demand a Ticket from the Officer of each Guard, as they pass it; and when they have finish'd their Rounds, they are to deliver them to the Captain of the Main-Guard, who is to examine them very carefully, to fee if they have miss'd any of the Guards; after which, he is to fet down the Officers Names that went the Rounds, and the Hours they return'd at; as also every Thing that happen'd extraordinary to them in the going their Rounds; such as Officers being absent from their Guards, or negligent in their Duty; Sentinels drunk, afleep, or off their Posts; if they discover any thing from the Ramparts, or heard any Noise in the Country; or saw any Number of People affembled together in the Town, or found any Disturbance, that he may mention it in his Report next Morning to the Governour.

When a Round discovers from the Ramparts any Number of Troops, or hears any confiderable Noise which may induce him to believe there are Some near, he must give Notice of it to the Captain of the Main-Guard, who is to acquaint

he Gove erve to eard, a diately t ing Surp If the they are with it, into it i he must Govern draw ou

Chap.

Sentrys Orders thing f may co poral n acquail immed

ral rou

it, the

'till it

tempt 1

Town.

Th necess Defig TUOY fome real 1 the V peara

T my; geth be pr T

first (

in t Offi and Dit

keep

he Governour with it immediately, that he may fend the Retree to strengthen that Post from whence the Noise was hard, and to give Orders for the Troops to repair immelately to their Alarum Posts, to prevent the Garrison's be-

ing Surprized.

If the Sentrys on the Ramparts make the same Discovery, hey are to call the Corporal of the Guard and acquaint him with it, who is to inform his Officer, that he may enquire into it immediately; and if he finds it of any confequence, e must fend an Account of it to the Main-Guard, that the Governour may be acquainted with it; after which, he is to draw out his Guard, that he may be ready to oppose any Atempt that shall be made, either from without, or within the Town. He should fend a Corporal and two Men round his sentrys, to see that they are all alert, and to give them ffrict Orders to be very watchful; and when they discover any thing further, to Pass the Word for the Corporal, that he may come and know what they have discover'd: the Cormust have Orders to go on to the next Port-Guard, and acquaint the Officer with what they faw or heard; who is immediately to put his Guard under Arms, fend his Corpoal round his Sentrys, and acquaint the next Port-Guard with is, that they may do the same; and so from one to another 'all it has gone quite round.

This Precaution, of fending to every Guard, is absolutely necessary, fince it is certain, that when the Enemy have a Design to Surprize any Place, they will endeavour to draw your Attention from it, by making a Show of Attacking some remote Part, and thereby draw your Forces from the real Attack; therefore Prudence directs us to be careful of the Whole, and not suffer ourselves to be amused by Appearances; but to suspect a deeper Design, than what may at

first offer itself to our View.

The Officers of the Guards should likewise send out Patrols, less the Inhabitants should be in Concert with the Enemy; which they will easily discover by their assembling together, and by that means avoid the Danger from within, or

be prepar'd against it.

The Design of Rounds is not only to Visit the Guards, and keep the Sentrys alert, but likewise to discover what passes in the Outworks, and beyond them; for which Reason, the Officers who go the Rounds should walk on the Banquet, and go into the Sentrys Boxes, that they may look into the Ditch, and discover with more ease what Passes there; they

must likewise enquire of the Sentrys if they have discover

any thing on their Posts, or heard any Noise.

Some Governours have a Round to go just before the Open ing of the Gates; their Reason for it is this: As it is the pretty light, that Round, by the Elevation of the Rampart will be able to discover a good way into the Country. Whe they have no Horse in Garrison to Patrol, it is not only proper, but absolutely necessary. When such a Round is or dered, it should begin just at the Reveille, which is then so light that they may see an hundred and fifty Yards, and when the Officer has sinished his Round, and return'd to the Main Guard, the Keys are to be sent to the Gates.

ARTICLE VII.

In Frontier Garrisons, as soon as the Reveille beats, the Officer of the Horse-Guard, with his Men mounted, is to repair to the Main-Guard, and, according to his Orders from the Captain, he must go, or send Patrols of Horse out of the Gates to Reconnoitre the Country. The Patrols are generally compos'd of a Corporal, and sour or six Troopers each.

At the Beating of the Reveile, a Serjeant and twelve Mer from the Main-Guard are to attend the Town-Major, or one of the Town Adjutants, to bring the Keys from the Governour's to the Main-Guard, and to deliver them to the Serjeants from the Ports, who are to be there, with four Men each, at the fame time; and after they have receiv'd them, they are to carry them to their Guards, follow'd by the Patrols of Horse who are to be let out to Reconnoitre.

Upon the Serjeant's coming with the Keys, the Officer are to have their Guards under Arms in the same manner as is directed for the shutting of the Gates. When the Keys are come, the Officer orders the first Gate to be open'd, and lets out the Patrol of Horse, and then shuts it; when that is done, the Draw-Bridges are let down, and as soon as the Patrol has pass'd them, they are drawn up again; after that, the Barriers are open'd, the Horse Patrol let out, and clos'd again after them, the Corporal and sour Men of the Guard remaining within the Barrier.

The time which the Horse are to Patrol, and the Parts which they are to Reconnoitre, must depend on the Orders they shall receive from the Governour: However, they generally Reconnoitre those Places from whence they apprehend the Danger may proceed; such as the Roads leading to the Garrisons

Chap.
Garrison
Woods,
bould be
which or
is a con
with their
ers of
more cir
the Office
rer'd;
to be o
rois to
Report
is to ma

Report re oper Guard, jor, and Duri Keys re Arms;

to remain and the rem

no let i

Gates the Par the G

Carrifons or Territories of the Enemy; hollow Ways, Woods, or Thickets, which lie near the Garrison, lest Troops hould be conceal'd there; and to get upon the Eminences hich overlook the Country, in order to discover what passa considerable way in it; and when they have complied with their Orders (which takes them up generally three Quarers of an Hour, unless their Situation requires them to be nore circumspect) they return to the Garrison, and acquaint he Officers of the Port-Guards with what they have discoer'd; and if all is well, the Officers then order the Gates be open'd, the Draw-bridges to be let down, and the Parols to enter, who return to their own Guard, and make a Report to their Officer; and when they are all return'd, he to make his to the Captain of the Main-Guard, which Report he is to enter with the Rest. As soon as the Gates re open'd, the Keys are to be carried back to the Main-Guard, in the usual Form, and deliver'd to the Town-Maur, and from thence Escorted to the Governour's.

During the time that the Horse are Patroling, and that the Keys remain at the Ports, the Guards are to continue under Arms; the Corporal and sour Men who open'd the Barrier to let the Horse out, are to shut the Barrier after them, and to remain within it 'till they return. As soon as the Draw-Bridges are drawn up, after the Horse have passed them, the Wicket of the innermost Gate should be open'd, that the Men who are placed at the Draw-Bridges may come and give the Officers an Account when the Patrols return; upon which the Officers of the Guard must go and examine the Corporals of the Patrols themselves; after which, if they have no Reason to the contrary, they are then to order the Gates to be open'd, the Draw-Bridges to be let down, and the Patrols to enter; but 'till the Officers have examin'd them,

the Gates are not to be open'd, or they admitted.



AMERICALAMANAMA

CHAP. XIII.

Of Detachments, Visiting the Soldiers Quarters, and the Hospital.

ARTICLE I.

A S

Garrison, are either to Guard Posts which lie at a Distance from the Place, for Escorts or Partys.

The Detachments are composed of an equal Number of Officers and Soldiers from the Regiments in Garrison, as is done for the Town Guard; but a separate Duty from it, and a Roll is kept apart by the Town

Major.

When a Captain, Lieutenant, and Ensign are commanded, they order the eldest Regiment to give a Captain, the second Regiment the Lieutenant, and the third Regiment the Ensign, with an equal Proportion of Men from each Regiment in the Garrison. When another Captain is order'd, he is taken from the second Regiment, and so on 'till every Regiment has given one, and then it begins again with the eldest. The same Method is observed by the Lieutenants, Ensigns, and Serjeants.

There is no Roll kept for the Drummers, because the Regiments send as many Drummers as they have Officers order'd on Duty: So that whatever Guard, or Detachment, an Officer is posted to, he takes his own Drummer along with him; which is a standing Rule both in Camp and Gar

rison.

Every Battalion, whether strong or weak, surnishes an equal Proportion of Officers and Soldiers to all Detachments; whereas, in the Town Guards, they are so far indulged sometimes, as to give only in Proportion to their Numbers, when the Disproportion between them is very considerable; occasion'd by the Loss of Men in Action, violent Sickness, or from

Chap. XIII.

from the different Establishments as to Numbers: For it rould be highly unreasonable that a Battalion of 400 Men hould do equal Duty with one of 600. But if their Establishment is the same, and that they have not one of the above seasons to plead, or that the Difference in Numbers is but intended they must then do the Town-Duty equal with me another, as well as all Detachments.

The ordinary Complement of a Captain, when Detach'd, Lieutenant, Ensign, 2 Serjeants, 2 Drummers, and 45

150 Men, Corporals included.

A Lieutenant has a Serjeant, Drummer, and 25 or 30

Men.
An Enfign has a Serjeant, Drummer, and 20 or 24 Men.
A Serjeant has 12, 15, or 18 Men; but on Detachment

always 18 Men.

When a Serjeant is Detach'd from a Garrison, he should never have less than 18 Men; because it is a Rule with the french, and their Neighbours, never to fend out a Party of a smaller Number; and whenever they seize a Party under it, they treat them like Party-Biews, or Robbers, unless they should have lost some of their Men, which will appear by their Order or Route.

A Major's Command is from 150 Men to 300. A Lieutenant-Colonel's from 400 Men to 600. A Colonel's from 600 Men to 800, or 1000.

But notwithstanding the ordinary Complement above-mention'd, yet an Officer must not scruple to March with a much smaller Number, when the King's Service requires it; they are likewise often Commanded with a greater Number than what is mention'd: However, when the Command comes up to, or exceeds 1000 Men, they appoint General Officers to command them, in Proportion to the Number detach'd, all which must depend on the Will of the Governour, or Commandant of the Place.

They generally fend a Lieutenant-Colonel and a Major along with a Colonel when he is Detach'd; but always one Field Officer with him, if there are any; when a Colonel

s commanded he takes his own Adjutant with him.

ARTICLE II.

If an Officer, after he has march'd his Detachment beyond the outermost Barrier of the Place, should be order'd to Return, it passes for a Duty; but if he should be order'd back before

Char

be tre

nken

fent o 25 A

ty un

to use

were Opin

and n

W

fend

or Ca

to W

Direc

are t

Passp

not

Party

with

puné

by t

orde

of Sa

in w

beyo

Con

1

dier

mof

wife

ticu

Off

on

6

pan

kin

eve

70

W

on I

before he has pass'd the Barrier, it won't be allow'd as a Duty; but he must go with the next that is commanded; for his Marching off from the Parade don't excuse him, as great many imagine: It holds the same with the private Men.

If an Officer's Tour of Duty to Mount the Guard should come while he is on Detachment, he is not obliged to take it when he returns; but if he comes into Town the Day that he is to Mount, and that his Detachment is difmis'd before the Guards are march'd off from the Parade, he must then Mount the Guard, without any Difficulty or Scruple,

All Parties or Detachments of Infantry which are fent out of a Garrison, should not consist of less than 19 Men, that is, a Serjeant and 18 private Soldiers. But unless there is 2 Necessity for their fending no more, they should not Detach

less than an Officer and 25 Men.

All Parties are to have a Passport, or Order, in Writing, fign'd by the Governour or Commandant of the Garrison, and feal'd with his Coat of Arms; in Failure of which, should they be taken, they won't be treated like Prisoners of War, but left to the Discretion of the Enemy; and the Governour to whom they belong'd, has no Right to claim them.

If a Party under 19 Men are taken, and have not a Pals under the Governour's Hand and Seal to shew that there were fo many detach'd, they will be treated as abovemention'd, and condemn'd by a Court-Martial, either to the Gal-

lies for Life, or a Punishment equally as bad.

This Custom, I presume, is only to prevent a smaller Number from being detach'd, who can only be fent to pilfer and steal, which is look'd upon, by all Sides, as an ungenerous way of making War, fince it can only make a few People unhappy, without contributing any thing to the Service, or the bringing the War to a Conclusion.

It is likewise to prevent Party-Blews, which are Parties of Robbers, who fometimes drefs themselves like Soldiers, and plunder every one they meet, without Distinction; for which reason, they are always hang'd by both Sides when taken: therefore, to diffinguish real Parties from those, it is absolutely necessary that they should have Passports sign'd and seal'd by the Governour, or Commandant of the Garrison.

Another Reason, why smaller Parties than 19 Men ought not to be fent, may proceed from the Danger of their being overpower'd by a Party-Blew, or the Peafants.

Tho' the Rules abroad declare positively, that any Party which shall be taken, consisting of less than 19 Men, shall be treated like Party-Blews; yet, I think, it can never be taken in the literal Sense, but must mean, that if they are sent out with less, they will be treated in that manner: For a Action, Sickness, or Desertion may reduce a greater Party under that Number, it would be the Height of Barbarity, to use those ill who remain'd, for a Crime which they were not Guilty of: Therefore it can't be doubted, in my Opinion, but the producing their Passport will clear them, and make them be used like Prisoners of War.

When an Officer, who commands a Party, is oblig'd to fend a Detachment from his Party, either out of his Sight or Call, he is not to fend less than a Serjeant and 18 Men; to whom he must give an exact Copy of his Passport, with Directions what they are to perform, and the Time they are to return to him, or the Garrison, writ under the said Passport. It is therefore presum'd, that an Officer who has not the Command of 40 Men or upwards, won't send a Party out of his Sight or Call, otherwise he will be lest with a smaller Number than the Custom of War allows of.

All Parties or Detachments must return to their Garrison punctually at the time appointed; unless they are prevented by the Enemy's getting between them and Home, and, in order to avoid them, are oblig'd to retire to the next Place of Sasety, or to go a great way about for fear of being taken; in which Case, an Officer is not only excusable for staying beyond the Time, but deserves Thanks for his Care and Conduct.

The Time limited, with the Number of Officers and Soldiers, is always inferted in the Pass or Order; and, for the most part, the Service which they are imploy'd on, is likewise mentioned: however that may be committed to a particular Paper, and only communicated to the Commanding Officer of the Detachment, when the Service they are sent on requires Secrecy.

ARTICLE III.

There must be a Serjeant and a Corporal of each Company Orderly for a Week, the Serjeants and Corporals taking it in their Turns to perform this Duty; which, however, does not excuse them from Mounting of the Guard, or going on Party, when their Tour comes for either. When this happens, the Serjeant or Corporal, who is to be on the Orderly Duty next, must perform the Orderly Duty for them them, 'till they are reliev'd, or that their Orderly Time expires; after which they commence the Orderly Duty for themselves: Neither are the Orderly Serjeants or Corporals, who are on Guard or Party during their Orderly Week, oblig'd to repay the orderly Duty, which is done for them during that Time, when they return; it being a fix'd Rule for those who are next in Turn to perform it, without being repaid it.

The Orderly Serjeants and Corporals are to receive all Orders which shall be deliver'd, either to the Garrison in general, or to the Regiment and Company they belong to

in Particular, and deliver them to their Officers.

They are to march the Men of their Companies, who are to mount the Guard, to their Captain's Quarters, to be view'd by one of their Officers, before they are fent to the Regimental Parade; and if they carry any Man that has not his Arms, Ammunition, Cloaths, and Accoutrements in good Order, they are answerable to their Officers for it, and liable to be punish'd for the fame; in order to avoid which, they must inspect these things before they present the Men to their Officers. They are to march them from thence to the Regimental Parade, and deliver them to the Adjutant of the Regiment, who is to examine the Men again, to fee that they are in Order, and that he has his Complement, Atter this, they are to attend the Adjutant 'till the Guards are march'd from the Grand Parade, that if any Orders are to be deliver'd that Morning, either from the Governour, or their Colonel, they may be ready to receive them.

They are to remain confrantly at their Caserns, or Barracks, when they are not employ'd in receiving or delivering of Orders, and Carrying their Men to the Parade, as abovemention'd, that they may be ready to execute all Commands which shall come at any time from the Governour,

or their Colonel.

They must take care to keep 6 or 8 Men in a Company, of those who are to go first on Duty, always in the way, in case there are any order'd for Parties, or any other Occafion, for which they may be wanted; and when any Men are order'd, they must see that their Arms, Ammunition, &c. are in good Order, before they go to the Parade, and take care to provide them with Ammunition-Bread and Pay for the Number of Days they are to be out on Party, or that Proportion of both which shall be order'd for them. The Corporals are to march the Men to the Parade, and deliver them

hem to the Adjutant, and the Serjeants may remain at their Barracks, (unless they are employ'd in getting the Money and Bread for them) there being no occasion for their going with any Men to the Parade, but those who Mount in the Morning, without the Rules of the Garrison order it therwise.

They are likewise to see that the Men keep the Cains or Barracks very clean and in good Order, and that
the Utensils belonging to them are neither spoil'd nor loft.
They are to make the Men sweep their Rooms very clean
thereof Morning, and make their Beds; and afterwards to wash
themselves very clean, and dress in a Soldier-like way, by
the wing their Shoes well black'd, their Stockings and Cravats
well roll'd, their Hats cock'd, and their Hair tuck'd under
them, and their Cloaths brush'd and put on to the best Adtantage; but 'till these things are done, they are not to suffer
them to leave their Quarters, that they may not appear slotensy in the Streets.

They are to call over the Roll of their Companies as oftm as it shall be order'd, and make a Report of the absent Men to their own Officers and the Adjutant, that they may

kepunish'd for it.

They must go through every Room immediately after the Tat-too, and oblige the Men to put out their Fire and Can-

de, and go to Bed.

The Men of each Company should be divided into Messes, each Mess consisting of four or fix Men, or according to the Number in each Room; and every Pay-Day, each Man fould be oblig'd to appropriate fuch a Part of his Pay to by Provisions, which Money should be lodg'd in the Hands of one of them, in order to be laid out to the best Advanage, which the Orderly Serjeants and Corporals are to fee duly executed, and make each Mess boil the Pot every Day. Without this is carefully look'd into, the Soldiers will be apt to spend their Pay on Liquour, which will not only occanon their Neglect of Duty, but, in all probability, the Lofs of a great many Men by Sickness for Want of proper Victuals to support them. It is therefore a Duty incumbent on every Officer to be more than ordinary careful in this Particular, and not to think themselves above the looking into these Things, since the Preservation of their Men depends so much on it; For in those Regiments where this Method is duly observ'd, the Men are generally Healthful; but when itis neglected, great Numbers fall fick and die. The The Captain should visit their Men's Quarters at least once a Week, and the Subalterns twice, to see that they are keept clean and in good Order; as also to inspect into the several Messes of their Companies, and to see whether their Provisions are good, and the Money laid justly out.

In some Regiments there is an Officer appointed daily to visit the Caserns or Barracks of the Regiment, to see that they are kept clean, and that the Men dress their Victuals, and to make a Report of the whole to the Colonel; However, that should not prevent the other Officers from looking into

it also.

The Major should visit the Whole very often, that he may know whether the other Officers do their Duty, and represent the state of the

ARTICLE IV.

In all Garrisons, there is an Officer of a Regiment order'd to visit their sick Men daily. They are to examine nicely into the Manner their Men are treated, and if they are kept clean; what Medicines and Diet they have given them, take their Bread and Broth, and see their Proportion of Bread and Meat, and enquire of them how they are used; a Report of which, with the Number belonging to each Company, they are to make to their Colonels.

Besides this Regimental Inspection, the Governour appoints an Officer or two of the Garrison to visit the Hospital, to see how the Men are Treated, with the Number helonging to each Regiment, and to make him a Report of the

Whole.

A Captain, who has any Regard for his Men, won't think these general Visits sufficient; but will go from time to time himself, and enquire into their State, and send his Officers and Serjeants to do the same. There are a great many little Things which may save the Life of a poor Soldier, and which they can't have but from their own Officers; so that unless they go to see them, they may Perish for the want of them: Therefore common Humanity requires this Duty of us even to Strangers, but much more so to those who are immediately under our Care, and share the Danger of the War with us.

There is one Rule which should be strictly observ'd, which is, not to suffer the Men to continue too long in the Hospital.

an: For it often happens, when they stay too long after hey are Recover'd, that they Relapse and Die; occasion'd by the Badness of the Air, which must be in some Dere insected by the Breath of the Sick, in spite of all the care that can be taken to prevent it. But the least Evil that an happen by their remaining too long in the Hospital, is, that they will thereby contract a slothful, lazy, idle Habit, and turn, according to the Military Phrase, Malingerors; that is, Men who have lost all Spirit to the Service, and tight themselves Sick when there is a Prospect of Action, or that they are to undergo any Hardship or Fatigue, in order to be sent to the Hospital; which Life, through Habit, becomes agreeable to them.

Where there is no Publick Hospital, there should be some soms in the Quarters appointed for the Sick Men, to which they may be removed, less they infect the others; and that the Surgeon of the Regiment may attend them with the more ease. They should likewise have Nurses appointed to mend them, and proper Care taken about their Diet: And, makes the Distemper is of a very malignant Nature, I am of Opinion, that they should not be sent to the Hospital upmevery slight Indisposition, but removed into the Instrument of the Regiment, the Air of which must be much purer than the other, and therefore there is a greater Probability of their quick Recovery. Besides, the Evil above complain'd of will be avoided; which is an Article of no small Consideration to the Service.





CHAP. XIV.

Relating to the Command of the Governous in his own Town, with the Respect on Obedience due to him from the Troops which compose the Garrison; as also what Com plements are to be Paid to all the other Officers.

ARTICLEL



HOEVER is Governour of a Town has the entire Command of the Troop which compose the Garrison, tho' Office of a Superior Rank to him in the Arm should be order'd in with them: For the Town being committed to his Charge, H is answerable to his Master for it, and con

fequently cannot give up the Command without express Order from him in due Form, or from him to whom he shall delegat

his Power.

In the Absence of the Governour, the Command devolve on the Lieutenant-Governour: And if the Town-Majo has a Commission of Town-Major Commandant (which fometimes conferr'd on those Abroad) the Command fall to him in the Absence of the Governour and Lieutenant Governour; otherwise it goes to the eldest Officer in the Garrison, whether he is of the Horse, Foot, or Dragoons who is called, during the time, Commandant of the Gard This is the general Rule; but as they may be obliged on particular Occasions, to throw a considerable Body Troops into the Garrison (either for the Desence of it, o to annoy the Enemy) and that a general Officer of a con fiderable Rank may be Order'd in with them, it is usual to give him a Commission of Commandant of the Troops, the Body of which is particularly specified, how far hi Power over them is to extend, to avoid all Disputes that migh might h tho' thi vernour generall Admin Town, with t

Chap

The I fuppe Rank i ver the mand ; nence Dignit W25:

render.

into th Comn the fa And if Comr for his

m a m Office

nours mand trime in Fr they

> appoi the 1 hall Tro fon !

> of ti that cifio Con

only

muf Cou

of t

might happen betwixt him and the Governour about it: And the this may, in a great measure, lessen and divide the Governour's Power, yet the outward Marks of Distinction are generally lest with him, such as the giving the Parole; the Administration of the Civil Assairs, Keeping the Keys of the Town, &c. as also the Signing of the Capitulation, jointly with the Commandant of the Troops, in case of a Sur-

render.

The Reason for appointing a Commandant of the Troops, I suppole, may arise from the Governour's not being of a Rank in the Army fufficient to give him a due Authority oterthem, or that he may not be thought equal to the Command; but supposing him equal to it, both from his Expefence and Ability, unless he is distinguished with Titles of Dignity, his Orders will not be fo readily executed as if he was: And tho' a Commission of Governour creates hims in a manner, Captain-General in his own Town, yet when Officers of an Equal Rank to him in the Army are order'd into the Garrison, it is a hard Matter for him to keep up his Command as it ought to be, or get them to obey him with the same Deserence as they would one of a Superiour Rank: And if it proves fo, when only those of an Equal Rank are Commanded into the Garrison, it will be much more difficult for him to exert his Authority over those who are his Supenours in the Army, as well as shocking to them to be Commanded by an Inferior; the Truth of which; with the Detriment that arises from it to the Service, is so well known in France, that when the Case happens so there, and that they have no Mind to superfede the Governour, they always appoint an Officer of Rank and Ability (in Proportion to the Number of Men; which; upon occasion of Dangers hall be ordered into the Garrison) Commandant of the Troops; in which case Care is generally taken, that the Peron so appointed be of such a Rank in the Army; that not only all Dispute about Command in relation to him is out of the Question; but likewise any Contests of this Kind that may arise in the Garrison are terminated, and his Dethons more readily submitted to, than if they came from one of an inferiour Character. I shall now proceed to the Command of a Governour, when there is no Commandant of the Troops appointed.

How far the Governour's Power extends over the Civil, must be determined by the Laws and Constitution of the Country: However, all Persons in the Town, whether Ec-

194 A TREATISE of Chap. XIV.

clesiastical or Civil, are subject to his Jurisdiction, as far as it relates to the Order and Preservation of the Town; and whoever Offends therein, tho' he may not have the Power of Punishing, yet he may secure their Persons 'till they can be Tried in a regular Manner for the Crimes they have committed.

His Power over the Military is very Extensive; for all the Officers and Soldiers in the Garrison are obliged to obey

him, without Control.

He may order the Troops under Arms as foon as he shall think proper, either to Review them, or upon any other Account.

He may fend out Detachments, or Parties, without being obliged to give a Reason to the Officers for it, or come to an Explanation with them on that Head. Neither have they a Power to demand it; but if they think themselves grieved, they may represent it to him in a respectful Manner; that is, Singly, and by way of Request, and not in a riotous Way, and in Numbers, since that will be deemed Mutiny,

which, by the Articles of War, is Death.

Neither Officer nor Soldier must lie a Night out of the Garrison without the Governour's Leave; but that the Colonels, or those who command Regiments, may have a proper Authority over their own Corps, a Governour feldom grants his Leave of Absence to either Officer or Soldier but at their Request. A Governour who has a true Notion of the Service, will act according to this Rule; and it appears to me Reasonable that he should do so; otherwise, how can they answer for their Regiments, if their Officers and Soldiers have Leave of Absence given them without their Knowledge? Befides, as the Colonels are supposed to have a thorough Knowledge of those under their Command, they must be proper Judges who ought or ought not to have Leave given them, and therefore won't importune the Governour but when it is reasonable they should have it; which will not only ease him of a great deal of Trouble, but likewife prevent his being imposed upon, by their pretending to have Business, when perhaps Pleasure, or the Love of Idleness is the chief Motive which induces them to ask it; the Truth of which cannot be so easily entered into by the Governour, as by the Colonels, who, in Justice to their Regiments, will limit the Number they ask Leave for, that the Duty may not fall too hard on those who Remain. What Chap. XV.

What is above mentioned, without entering into the Defrence due to Colonels, when it relates to those immediately under their Command, is fo equitable, that it is generally followed: But however Just this Rule may appear, yet a Governour has an undoubted Right to diviate from it when he shall think Proper, by granting his Leave of Absence to other Officer or Soldier, without the Confent of their Colonels: And tho' particular Regiments may fuffer now and then by fuch a Proceeding, yet that Evil is of less Confemence to the Service, than what the Limitting of the Goremour's Power might produce, viz. the Loss of Subordination; which is of fuch Weight and Confideration, that it s the very Life and Soul (if I may be allowed the Expresfion) of Discipline, without a due Observance of which, the service can never be carried on: For whoever endeavours weaken it, by making the Officers or Soldiers Independent of the principal Persons who are placed over them, whether Governours or Generals, must do it either through an evil Delign, or Ignorance; fince both Produce the same Effect. Didorder and Confusion; a State which Soldiers may be afily brought into, (from a natural Love of Independancy with reigns in all Mankind) but not fo foon Remedied; for when a Licentious, Independent Humour has prevailed mongst Troops, it must be Time, infinite Pains and Seveity, to reduce them to their proper Obedience; the Want of which may prove as prejudicial to the State, as the Want of Troops; fince the Lofs of Subordination produces not only the Neglect of Order, but, in a great measure, of the Powr, or at least an Imaginary one, to dispute them; the Conlequence of which is too well known to be farther enlarged

The Practice of the Army in this Case is, that when an Officer has Business that may require his Absence from the Garnson, he is to make his first Application to his Colonel, and to desire him to interceed with the Governour for Leave; and if the Colonel complies with the Officer's Request, he should wait upon the Governour in his behalf; but if the Colonel resuses the Officer, he may then, no doubt, apply to the Governour; tho' such a Step should not be taken without he is necessitated so to do, either from extraordinary Business, or that he finds himself hardly used by his Colonel; since the doing it is, in a manner, putting him at Desiance,

and therefore not to be rashly undertaken.

Chap.

tion, P

Perform

under

otherw

vernou

Regim

the G

one to

W

the Re nith a Town

when The'

2 Reg

T Regin

it w

and i And

it W

a be

it ha

OWI S

wit

np

201

the

ar

the

pai

(2)

T

ar

P

When any of the Private Men want Leave, they are to apply to their Captains first, the Captains to the Colone and if he agrees to it, he is to fend their Names by th Adjutant to the Town-Major, that he may acquaint the Governour that they have his Confent, and to defire he wil be pleased to grant them his Leave of Absence.

196

When the Soldiers have applied to their Captains, and an refused by them, they may then apply to their Colonels but they ought not to do it 'till they have been with the Captains, for the same Reason that an Officer ought not to apply to the Governour'till he has been with his Colonel,

ARTICLE II.

All Soldiers, who have Leave to go out of the Garrison. must have Passports sign'd by the Governour, specifying the Regiment to which they belong, the Place they are to go to, and the Time they have Leave to be Absent; the Particulars of which must be given in by the Adjutant to the Town-Whoever goes without one of these Passports, or is found taking a contrary Road to that which is expres'd in it, will be look'd upon as a Deferter, and when taken, Tri'd accordingly. It is therefore the Duty of the Officers on the Port-Guards, to examine all Soldiers who shall come into the Town, and don't belong to the Garrison; and when they find any of them without a Pass, or that they have taken a wrong Route, or have any Reason to suspect it Forg'd, they are to fend them to the Main-Guard, in order to their being further examin'd by the Governour, or those whom he shall appoint for that Purpose; and if they are found to be Deferters, they should be secured, 'till they can be sent to their Regiments to be Try'd as fuch.

When Officers on Party meet any Soldiers, they mult examine their Passports; and if they have any Reason to sufpect them, they must take them Prisoners, and deliver them over to the Main-Guard when they return to their Garrison,

and acquaint the Governour with it.

No Regiment can hold a Court-Martial, or Punish any of their Men, without first obtaining the Governour's Leave, or the Commandant's in his Absence: However, it is Customary, upon the first Application which the Colonel makes of this kind to the Governour, to give him a difcretionary Power to hold Regimental Courts-Martial, as often as he shall have Occasion, and to put the Sentence in ExecuChap. XIV. tion, provided the Regiment is not to be under Arms at the Performing it; because no Colonel can order his Regiment under Arms, either for Exercise, punishing Offenders, or aherwise, without having Leave every time from the Governour: Therefore, it is usual to punish the Soldiers on the Regimental Parade, in the Presence of the Men who mount the Guard in the Morning, unless the Sentence directs any one to Run the Gantlet thorough the Regiment.

When the Colonel, or Commanding Officer, would have the Regiment under Arms for Exercise, Review, or to Puhih any of his Men, he must send the Adjutant to the Town-Major, that he may acquaint the Governour with it when he goes to receive the Night-Orders; and if granted, The Town-Major, is to give out, in Publick, Orders, that fuch Regiment is to be under Arms, &c. to-morrow Morning.

The Ceremony of giving out in Publick Orders, when Regiments are to be under Arms, has an Appearance, as if it was only to keep up the Authority of the Governour, and to shew his Command over the Troops in his Garrison: And indeed, I never heard any Reason given for it, but that it was the Custom: However, it can't be doubted, but that a better Reason than Custom can be given for it: but fince it has not come to my Knowledge, I beg leave to offer my

own Opinion on that Head.

n, he o, is

n

,

Should a Part of the Garrison Draw out in the Morning without the Rest being appris'd of it, they might imagine that it proceeded from some Attempt of the Enemy, who were going to Surprise the Town, and consequently occasion their Beating to Arms: Therefore to prevent these false Aarms, which would not only Fatigue the Troops, but, by their being too often repeated, make them Dilatory in repairing to their Alarum-Posts upon a real Occasion; as also cause a Bustle and Disturbance in the Town: It is therefore Necessary, that it should be given out in Orders by the Town-Major the Night before, when any of the Troops are to be under Arms, that all may know it. Besides, the Assembling of Troops, without the Governour's Leave, must put the Town in the Power of those Officers who Command them; especial ly if we will suppose any ill Intention, or Correspondence with the Enemy: For tho' it is to be perlumed, that Officers of their Rank are above Temptation, yet Instances of the Contrary may be given; and in War particularly, we ought not to relie on what they will not do, but what they cannot do.

ARTI-

ARTICLE III.

In case of an Alarum, the Officers and Soldiers, who are not on Guard, are to repair, with their Arms, immediately to their Alarum Posts.

Upon these Occasions, the Colonel's Company may be order'd to Assemble where the Colours are Lodg'd, which is generally at the Colonel's Quarters, to Guard them from

thence to the Alarum Post of the Regiment.

Sometimes all the Field Officers Campanies are order'd to Assemble there; but unless the Garrison is very Numerous, they will be of more Service with the Regiment, one Company being sufficient to Guard them; the Ensigns who are to carry the Colours are to Assemble there at the same time.

The Reason for the Troops being order'd to their Alarum Posts, may proceed from one of the Three following

Causes:

First, Upon the Appearance of the Enemy before the Town, or Intelligence being brought, that a Body of their Troops are marching towards it; therefore to prevent a Surprize, it will be proper to order the Regiments to repair to their Alarum Posts.

Secondly, Upon any confiderable Rifing of the Inhabitants, or Tumult in the Town, that the Governour may be able to disperse the Mobb and bring the Offenders to Justice.

Thirdly, Upon a Fire breaking out in the Town, it is extreamly necessary to have the Troops at their Alarum Posts; for by their being assembled, they may be sent under the Command of their Officers to Assist in the extinguishing of it, and to keep the Streets open that the Engines may be brought to play; as also to keep the Mobb from stealing the Goods which may be saved from the Flames. Besides, as the Town may be set on Fire by a Stratagem of the Enemy, and, by lodging a Body of Troops at some Distance from the Town, they may endeavour to seize one of the Gates, during the Consternation, which, by the Assistance of the Inhabitants, might be easily effected, were the Precaution of shutting the Gates and assembling the Troops omitted.

But on whatever Occasion the Alarum may be given, when the Troops are assembled, no Colonel must dismiss his Regiment, tho' it should prove a salse Alarum, 'till he receives the Governour's or Commandant's Orders for it. Thus far I have endeavour'd to shew the Command which a Governour

vernour of a Town has over the Troops in it, and how the Officers and Soldiers are to conduct themselves towards him on that Head; and in the following Article I shall shew the Respect which is to be paid to him, and the other Officers who shall come into the Garrison, by the Guards.

ARTICLE

All Governours whose Commissions in the Army are under the Degree of General Officers, shall have, in their own Garrisons, all the Guards turn out with Rested Arms, and beat one Ruffle; and tho' the Main-Guard turns out with Refled Arms every time he paffes, yet they give him the Complement of the Drum but once a Day; but all the other Guards beat as often as he appears near them.

If they are General Officers likewife, they are then to have the further Complements paid them, by the feveral Beatings of the Drum, as is Practis'd in the Army, and are as follows.

To Generals of the Horse and Foot, the Guards turn out, Reft their Arms, Beat a March, and the Officers Salute.

To Lieutenant-Generals, they turn out, Rest their Arms, Beat three Ruffles, but not Salute.

To Major-Generals, turn out, Rest their Arms, and Beat two Ruffles.

To Brigadier-Generals, they turn out with Rested Arms only; but of late they have added one Ruffle to the Complement.

To Colonels, their own Quarter-Guards turn out, and Rest their Arms, once a Day; after which, they only turn out with Order'd Arms.

To Lieutenant-Colonels, their own Quarter-Guards turn out with Shoulder'd Arms, once a Day; at other times they only turn out, and stand by their Arms.

To Majors, their own Guards turn out with Order'd Arms, once a Day; at all other times they fland by their

Arms.

When a Lieutenant-Colonel, or a Major, commands a Regiment, their own Quarter-Guards pay them the same

Complement as is order'd for the Colonel.

All Sentrys Rest their Arms to their own Colonel, Lieutenant-Colonel, and Major; but to those of another Regiment, they only stand Shoulder'd. This Ceremony is the fame both in Camp and Garrison.

The Main-Guard is to Rest their Arms to the Governour, and pay him the Complement with the Drum, as before directed. If he continues to walk on the Parade, or before the Guard, they may lay down their Arms.

All Sentrys are to Rest their Arms as he passes them, or

comes near their Posts.

A General of the Horse and Foot, when in Garrison, has

2 Serjeant and two Sentrys at his Door.

All Lieutenant-Generals have the fame; but the Complement paid them by the Guards in a Garrison, differs from that in Camp: For the they are to have but three Ruffles from the Main-Guard, yet the Officers of that Guard are to Salute them once a Day; but all other Guards are to Beat a March, and Salute them as often as they pass.

A Major-General is to have two Sentrys at his Door, and the same Complement paid him by the Guards, as in

Camp.

A Brigadier is to have one Sentry at his Door, and one

Ruffle from all the Guards in the Garrison.

All Colonels, or Officers who command Battalions, are to have one Sentry, which they are to take from their own Regiments; but those Colonels who have no Regiments in the Town, are to have the Sentry from the Main-guard, or one of the Port-Guards, if their Lodgings lie more convenient for them.

The Main-Guard is to turn out, and fland by their Arms once a Day to all Colonels; but all other Guards must Or-

der their Arms for them as often as they Pass.

The Main-Guard is to pay no Compliment to the Lieutenant Colonels, and Majors; but the other Guards, are to

stand by their Arms for them.

Lieutenant-Governours are to be treated in their own Garrisons as Colonels, and the Majors Commandant as Lieutenant-Colonels, unless their Rank in the Army entitles them to a greater Complement; but when either of them command the Garrison, they are then treated in all Respects as Governour.

When the Governour, Lieutenant-Governour, and the Major Commandant are absent, or by Sickness render'd incapable of Acting, the eldest Officer in the Garrison is to take the Command upon him, who is call'd Commandant of the Garrison, and has all the Respect paid him by the Guards as Governour, except that of the Drum; unless his Rank in the Army entitled him to it before.

These were Rules established by King William; but of at the Governours who are General Officers have a March set to them in their own Garrisons: However, by the best information I could get, I do not find that the Governours who are not General Officers, have exceeded the sormer Complement of one Russe.

A Captain-General of Great-Britain, a Marshal of France, and a Velt-Marshal of the Empire, being the chief Military Titles of those Kingdoms, which are given to Subjects, they are all treated with the same Degree of Respect, both in Camp

and Garrison.

When a Marshal of France comes into any of their own Garrisons, the Streets are lin'd, by the Troops, from the Gate where he enters, to his Lodging; the Soldiers Rest their firelocks, the Drummers Beat a March, and he is Saluted by all the Officers and Colours. His Guard, which consists of a Captain, Lieutenant, and Ensign with Colours, and 50 Men, are placed at his Door before he comes into the Town. He commands all Governours, and they are to receive the harole from him. This is the Custom in France, and establish'd by the King's Order.

How far this Method may be confistent in England, in regard to a Captain-General, is what I can't determine, there being no Regulation of this Kind establish'd by the Royal Authority, that I know of: but as the late Duke of Marl-brough (a Copy of Whose Commission of Captain-General is hereunto Annexed) had the same Honours paid him in all the Garrisons Abroad, I presume he look'd upon them as

his due.

ANNE R.

ANNE, by the Grace of God, &c. To Our Right Trufty, and Right Well-beloved Cousin and Councellor, John Earl of Marlborough, Greeting. When early Marlborough, Greeting. When early the Necessary for Our Service to Appoint and Constitute a Captain-General for the Commanding, Regulating, and keeping in Discipline Our Troops and Land Forces, which are, or shall be allowed by Act of Parliament to be raised and kept on Foot:

Know Ye, therefore, that We, reposing Especial Trust and Considence in the approved Wisdom, Fidelity, Valour, great Experience, and Abilities of You, the said John Earl of Marlborough,

borough, Have Constituted and Appointed, and by these Pr Sents do Constitute and Appoint You to be Captain-General all Our Troops and Land Forces, already raised, and have ter to be raised, as aforesaid, and Employed in Our Service within Our Kingdom of England, Dominion of Wales, an Town of Berwick upon Tweed, or which are, or shall be Em ployed abroad in Conjunction with the Troops of our Allies GIVING, and by these Presents granting unto you full Power and Authority, by Yourself, Commanders, Captains, and other Officers, them to Exercise, Array, and put in Readiness, and according to the Provision of Arms appointed for them, well and sufficiently cause to be Weaponed and Armed, and to take or cause to be taken, the Musters of them, or any of them, (b) the Commissary-General of the Musters, or his Deputies, or by fuch other Officers as he shall assign for that Purpose) as often as you shall see Cause; and the said Forces to divide into Parties, Regiments, Troops, and Companies, and with them, or any of them respectively, to resist all Invasions which shall be made by our Enemies, and to suppress all Rebellions and Infurrections which shall by levying War be made against Us; and all Enemies making fuch Invasion, and Rebels who shall fo levy War, and be found making Resistance, to Fight with, kill and defroy. As also with full Power and Authority for Us, and in Our Name, as Occasion shall require, according to your Discretion, by Proclamation or otherwise, to tender our Reval Mercy and Pardon to all such Enemies and Rebels as shall fubmit themselves to Us, and desire to be received into Our Grace and Pardon. And We do likewife Give and Grant unto You full Power and Authority to hold, or cause to be held, from time to time, as often as there shall be Occasion, according to your Discretion, one, or more, Military or Martial Court, or Courts, in pursuance of, and according to the purport and true Meaning of an Act of Parliament paffed in the Thirteenth Year of the Reign of Our lote dearest Brother King William the Third, of Ever Bleffed Memory, Intituled, An Act for punishing of Officers and Soldiers that shall Mutiny or Defert in England or Ireland: And in the same Court, or Courts, to hear, examine, determine, and punish all Mutinies, Disobedience, Departure from Captains, Commanders, and Governours, according to the Directions of the said Act, and to cause the Sentence or Sentences of the Said Courts to be put in Execution, or to suspend the same, as you shall see Caufe. To have, hold, exercise, and enjoy, the said Office of Captain-General, and to perform and execute the Powers and Anthurities

hatherities aforesaid, and all other Matters and Things which your said Office doth or may, of Right, belong, and apperin unto you, during Our Pleasure. Willing and Command as all Officers, Soldiers, and Persons whatsoever, any way meeri'd, to be obedient and Assisting to you Our CaptainGeneral, in all Things touching the due Execution of this our Commission, according to the Purport and Intent thereof.
In Witness, &c. Witness, &c.

Ex. EDW. NORTHEY.

May it please your Most Excellent Majesty,

YOUR Majesty is hereby graciously pleased to Constitute John Earl of Marlborourgh, Captain-General of all your Land Forces within your Kingdom of England, Dominion of Wales, and Town of Berwick upon Tweed, or which are, or shall be Employed abroad in Conjunction with the Troops of Your Allies, Impowering him to Execute all the Powers and Authorities thereunto belonging, during your Majesty's Pleasure.

Signified to be your Majesty's Pleasure by Warrant under your Royal Sign Manual, Countersign'd

By Mr. Secretary VERNON.

March 12, 170

EDW. NORTHEY.

ARTICLE V.

Whoever Commands in a Castle, Fort, Redoubt or Citadel belonging to the Town, must send every Day to the Governour or Commandant of the Town for the Orders.

The same Rules are to be observed by the Garrison of the Citadel as are given for those of the Town; only with this Difference, that the Governour of the Citadel is not to suffer above one Third of the Officers to be out at a time,

the?

Town. This the Citadels is the citadels is

te Office

M Stran

ronceal a

are a V

ake pro

cordin

Houses

then an

Whe

pointed

kk and

Major 1

The

done by

is kept

n Re

of Me

in the

ATO

ke

R

Regi

men

tho' they should only desire to walk into the Town. This the Method establish'd in France. But as the Citadels is that Kingdom are built to be a Check upon the Towns, is order to keep the Inhabitants in awe, this strict Rule may be very proper, lest, by suffering the Officers and Soldiers to go out at Pleasure, it might be surprized, when there remained only the ordinary Guards to defend it. But where the Case is not the same, I presume, the Governour may, in some degree, dispense with this Order, by not Adhering some degree, dispense with this Order, by not Adhering some degree, dispense with this Order, by not Adhering some degree.

strictly to it.

As there are separate Governours for the most part in France, the Governour of the Town has no Command over the Governour or Garrison of the Citadel; neither has he the Liberty of going into the Citadel without Leave of the Governour of it: However, the Governour of the Citadel is obliged to fend every Day to the Governour of the Town for the Parole, tho' his Rank in the Army should be Supeperior to the other's. This may be thought abfur'd, that a Superior must send to an Inferior for the Word; but thus it is establish'd in France; and it is very common there, to find the Governour of the Citadel an elder Officer, than the Governour of the Town; which may proceed from the great Dependance they have on their Citadels, and therefore chuie Officers of Considerable Rank and Experience for their Governours; and as there are no ill Confequences attending it, by being no Diminution to their Rank in the Army, they all Submit to it.

ARTICLE VI.

The Town-Major and the Town-Adjutants are to Visit all the Guard-Rooms, Caserns, and Barracks pretty often, to see that they are kept in good Order, and that the Furniture and Utensils belonging to them are neither lost nor damag'd more than what may be reasonably expected. They are likewise to View all the Parts of the Fortifications, the Sentry-Boxes, Platforms, Batteries of Cannon, spare Carriages, &c. and that the Palisades are not stolen or decay'd, and make a Report of the same to the Governour, that those Things, which are out of order, may be repair'd in time.

In Frontier Garrisons, those who keep Publick Houses must send an Account in Writing every Night of all their Lodgers to the Town-Major, specifying their Names, Quality, and Country, when they came into the Town, and from

om whence; that he may shew it to the Governour, in order to compare it with the Night-Report from the Capin of the Main-Guard, by which he will know whether the Officers of the Port-Guards do their Duty, in examining strangers who come into the Town, or the Inn-keepers onceal any of their Lodgers, or that those who came in are a wrong Account of the Place where they were to have, by having some evil Design to manage, that he may are proper Measures for their being sound out, and punish'd woording to their Deserts. In time of War, all private Houses are oblig'd to give an Account to the Town-Major when any Stranger lodges with them.

Where the Towns are large, they have Commissaries appointed to take an Account of the Strangers from the publik and private Houses, it being impossible for a Town-Major to perform this and all other Parts of his Duty.

The following Plan is a Table for all the Duty which is one by the Officers and Serjeants in a Garrison, and which is kept by the Town-Major, and the Adjutants of the sevent Regiments. As each Battalion gives an equal Proportion of Men, there is no Occasion for the inserting of a Column in the said Table for them.

Mable for the several Duties in a Garrison, to be kept by the Town-Major, and the Adjutants, of the Regiments.

	Town- Guards.			Reserve.				Detach. ments.		General Courts Martial			Exami- nation.			Vifiting of the Hospital		
Regi- ments	Captain	Subalt.	Serjeants	Captains	Subalt.	Serjeants	Captains	Subalt-	Serjeant	Captairs	Subalt.	Serjeants	Captains	Subalt.	1 Serjeants	1 Captains	Subalt.	Serjeants
	_	_			-				-		-	-			400	-		
_	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	_	-	-	-

CHECK SENTERS

CHAP. XV.

Confisting of Camp-Duty.

ARTICLE. I.



Y Camp-Duty, as I understand it, is meant Guards Ordinary and Extraordinary; tho' by taking it in its full Extent, it will include every Part of the Service which is to be perform'd by the Troops during the Campaign; but as I have treated on several Branches before, Ishal

now proceed to that which relates to the Ordinary and Extraordinary Guards: And as a great Part of the Camp-Duty is perform'd in the same manner as that of a Garrison, I shall only give Directions for those Parts in which they differ.

Guards Ordinary, are such as are fix'd during the Campaign, and are reliev'd regularly at a certain Hour every Day; and are as follows. The Grand Guards of the Cavalry, the Standard and Quarter-Guards, and the Picquet-Guards of each Regiment; the Guards for the General-Officers, Train of Artillery, Bread-Waggons, Quarter-Master-General, Majors of Brigade, Judge-Advocate, and Provost-Marshal.

Every Battalion of Foot has for the Quarter-Guard, a Subaltern, 2 Serjeants, one Drummer, and 40 Men; and for the Picquet-Guard, a Captain, 2 Subalterns, 3 Serjeants, 2 Drummers, and 50 Men. As every Battalion has the fame constantly, the Majors of Brigade keep no Detail of this Duty. The Complement of the other Guards are as follows.

GUARDS.	Capt.	Subalt.	Serj.	Drum.	Private Soldiers	
the General in Chief has	1	2	2	2	50	
General of the Foot		1	I	1	40	
ach Lieutenant-General		ī	I	1	30	
ach Major-General		1	1	1	20	
ach Brigadier		18	I		14	
Darter-Master-General, as such only,			1	10.1	10	
ach Major of Brigade			1		7	
udge-Advocate			1		7	
prooft-Marshal, as such, a Serjeant and 12 Men, but when he has Pri- soners, there is added a Subaltern,		1	2	1	9 Private 2 0 14 10 7 7 7 42	
Serieant, Drummer and 30 Men.						

The Train of Artillery, according to the Number they shall

require.

The Guard which mounts on the General in Chief, has

ARTICLE II.

Method of Mounting and Dismounting of the Quarter-Guards.

As foon as the Troop has done beating, which is generally about Nine in the Morning, the Men who mount the Quarter-Guard are to be form'd into a Rank entire, on the fift or outermost Line of Parade, facing outwards, and di-

rectly in the Front of the Colours.

When they are form'd, the Adjutants are to deliver them to the Officers who Mount, on which they are to place themselves at the Head of their Men, with their Half-Pikes in their Hands. After this, the Officer who commands the Quarter-Guard of the Regiment on the Right of the Line orders his Drummer to beat a short Preparative, which is to be follow'd by the Drummers of all the Quarter-Guards which are to mount. This Preparative is to give them Notice that they may be ready to march all at the same time.

As soon as the Officer on the Right judges that the Drummers on the Lest have answer'd his Preparative, he is to march his Guard straight forward, on which the rest are to to the same, keeping an equal Pace with him; and when

they

they come within fix Paces of the Old Quarter-Guards, the are to Halt, Face their Men 'till the Serjeants have Dress them, then order them to Rest their Firelocks, and then Fa to the other Guards; at which the Officers advance towar one another, and the Officers of the Old Guards desire their Orders to those of the New. Then goes on the R lief of the Sentrys, Delivering of the Quarter-Guard Tent &c. in the same Manner as is directed in Garrison-Duty While the Sentrys are Relieving; the Officers of the New Guards are to Face their Men to the Lest, and open them to a proper Distance, that the Men of the Old Guards may pa between them.

As foon as the Sentrys are Reliev'd, the Officer who Dimounts on the Right of the Line, orders his Drummer to Beat a Preparative, which is to be answer'd by all the other Drummers who are to dismount; after which they are to order the Men of the Old Guards to Club their Firelock and March, which they are all to do at the same time, taking their Motions from that on the Right of the Line. When the Old Guards Club, the New ones are to Rest.

The Officers who Difmount, are to Troop their Guard to the first Line of Parade, and then Halt; after which the are to order the Men to Rest their Firelocks, Recover the Arms, and March and Lodge them in their Bells of Arms The Officers are then to make a Report to the Comman ding Officer and Major of their own Regiments, of ever Thing that happen'd during the time they were on Guard with the Names and Crimes of the Prisoners in Writing and by whom committed.

When the Old Quarter-Guards are march'd off, the Officers of the New Guards are to order their Men to Recove their Arms, Face to the Right, and March into the Ground where the others stood; after which to lay down their

Arms

The same Orders which were given to the Guards in Garrison about the Officers keeping their Guards; their not allowing above two Men to go off at a time; the relieving of Sentrys, and how they are to behave themselves by Day and by Night; the Receiving of Rounds, and the Respect to be Paid to the General Officers, must be punctually sollow'd by the Guards, with this Difference only, that the Quarter-Guards are to give but three Russles to a Lieute nant-General, and no Salute.

The Quarter-Guards are to be placed about 74 Yards in the Front, and directly opposite to the Center of their own Regiments, Facing them. The Design of a Quarter-Guard, rather for preserving the Peace and Tranquillity within the Regiment, by quelling all Disputes that may arise, either between Officer and Officer, or amongst the Soldiers, than for a Security against the Enemy: However, they are not to negled that Part neither, but to have a watchful Eye to the Front, lest some of the Enemy's Parties should pass the Grand-Guards in the Night, and fall upon them before they have

ime to prepare for their Defence.

Immediately after the Tat-too, the Officer of the Quarter-Guard is to Detach a Serjeant and ten Men to the Rear of the Regiment, where they are to remain 'till the Reveille has Beat; after which they are to join their Guard. This Detachment is call'd the Rear-Guard of the Regiment. The Rear-Guard is to take care that no Disorders are committed in the Sutlers Tents or Booths; to oblige them to put out their Fire and Candle in due time, and that they entertain Nobody after the Retreat. They are likewise to take care that the Horses belonging to the Regiment are not Stole; and when any of them break loofe, they are to stop them, and all those who have the care of them to catch them. they find any Soldier or Soldiers drinking in a Sutler's Tent an improper Time, they are to carry both the Soldiers and the Sutler Prisoners to the Quarter-Guard, where they are to remain 'till the Commanding Officer thinks proper to Release them, or to have them Try'd by a Regimental Court-Martial, in order to their being punish'd for their Crimes.

An Hour after the beating the Retreat, the Officer of the Quarter-Guard is to fend a Patrol of a Serjeant and fix Men mund the Regiment, to fee if the Sutlers have obey'd the above orders; to oblige the Soldiers to put out all their Lights; and to visit all the Sentrys, to see that they are Aket on their Posts; and if they find any one assepp, they are to secure his Firelock, and send immediately to the Corporal of the Guard to have him reliev'd and committed a close Prisoner, 'till he can be try'd for his Crime. When the Serjeant returns with the Patrol, he is to make a Report of what happen'd, and what state he found every thing in, to

his Officer.

These Patrols should be sent every two Hours, that is, an Hour after each Relief, during the Night; so that with the Relief

Chi

T

to I

Brig

to o

Para

forn

Adj

that

the

ord

the

det

for

mi ral

for

fo

ti

1

Relief and the Patrol, the Sentrys, and the feveral Parts of

the Regiment, will be vifited every Hour.

Upon any Noise or Disturbance in the Regiment, the Officer of the Quarter-Guard is to send a Serjeant, and a File of Men, to enquire into the Reason of it, and to put a stop to all Disorders that may arise. If the Serjeant finds the Soldiers Quarrelling, he must bring them. Prisoners to the Guard; but if it is amongst the Officers, he must send immediately to his Officer, that he may come and confine them to their Tents; and in the mean time the Serjeant must not suffer them to Fight, which if they persist in doing, he is impower'd to use Force to prevent it, 'till the Officer of the Guard comes. In short, the Officer of the Quarter-Guard is to have the same Inspection over every thing that happens in the Regiment, as the Captain of the Main-Guard has over that of a Garrison.

ARTICLE III.

All the other Guards Ordinary, except the Picquet, Mount

immediately after the Beating of the Troop.

There are two Parades for the Forming of all Guards or Parties, that are done by Detachments from each Regiment.

The First is call'd the Parade of the Brigade, and the Se-

cond, the Grand-Parade.

The Parade of the Brigade is generally at the Head of the Eldest Regiment of each Brigade, and the Grand-Parade a-

bout the Center of the first Line.

The Adjutants are to draw out the Men, who shall be order'd to Mount, at the Head of their own Regiments, first, and to examine into the Condition of their Arms, Ammunition, and Accourrements, and to see that they are Clean and well dress'd; after which they are to Conduct them to the Parade of the Brigade, and deliver them over to the Major of Brigade, and to wait there 'till he has look'd into their State and Numbers, that they may answer for what is wanting.

The Adjutants are to do the same by all Detachments that shall be order'd from their Regiments, whether by Day or by Night, and not leave it to be done by the Serjeants-Ma-

jor, as is but too frequently practis'd.

of:

H-

of to

01-

he

m-

m

ot

nhe

rd.

ns er

nt-

10

71-

e-

he

2-

be

u-

an

he

or

Pir

it-

at

10

2-

he

The Majors of Brigade must therefore be on the Parade, to receive all Detachments, that shall be order'd from the Brigade, from the Adjutants of the several Regiments, and to oblige them to attend him 'till they are sent to the Grand-Parade.

Unless the Majors of Brigade are very punctual in performing this Part of their Duty, it is almost certain that the Adjutants will be remiss in theirs, particularly in those which shall be commanded out in the Night: For when they know that the Major of Brigade won't be at the Parade to Form the Detachment, they will be apt to lie in their Beds, and order the Serjeant-Major to Draw out the Men, and March them to the Parade; the Consequence of which may prove detrimental to the Service, both in the Loss of Time, and sor want of a due Inspection into the Mens Arms and Ammunition, since we may naturally suppose, that the Corporals will not be quite so Diligent in Drawing out their Men for the Serjeant-Major, as for the Adjutant, nor take so much Care about their Arms and Ammunition, by not having the Adjutant present to look into it.

'Tis from such Neglects as these, that a great many Defigns miscarry; for let a Scheme be ever so well concerted, one half Hour's Neglect, or Loss of Time in the Executive Part, may be sufficient to disappoint the Whole, or occasion a much greater Difficulty in the Success. It is therefore absolutely Necessary, that the Majors of Brigade see all the Detachments of their own Brigade paraded, at whatever time they shall be ordered, and oblige the Adjutants to at-

tend them 'till they are fent to the Grand-Parade.

When a Major of Brigade is of the Day, he must appoint one of the Adjutants of his Brigade, to see all the Detachments of it form'd during the time he is on that Duty.

The Detachments are to draw up on the Parade of the Brigade in the same manner as the Regiments are Encamp'd; thus: the Eldest on the Right, the Second on the Lest; and so on from Right to Lest, 'till the Youngest comes in the Center.

As foon as the Detachments from the several Regiments are Paraded, and that the Major of Brigade has examin'd into their Condition and Numbers, he is to order the Officers, who Mount with the Men, to march them to the Grand-Parade: the particular Method for the Forming of them there, and Detaching them from thence, shall be mention'd in the following Article.

P :

ARTI

Ar

the

pro

ave Br

D

6

P. th

B

C

C

ARTICLE IV.

The Major of Brigade of the Day is to be on the Grand-Parade, to receive the Detachments from the feveral Brigades, in the same Manner as each particular Major of Brigade do those from the several Regiments of their own Brigades; and to Examine whether each Brigade have fent the

Number of Officers and Soldiers as was Order'd.

The Detachments from the several Brigades are not to be Drawn up by Seniority, but by Lot, as directed for Garrifon-Duty; Therefore, the Major of Brigade of the Day must have as many Lots ready as there are Brigades in the Foot, and order a Serjeant of a Brigade to draw for them, according to which they are to draw up on the Grand-Parade.

As foon as the Detachments are drawn up, the Serjeants are to draw up in the Front of their own Men, in the same Manner as is directed in forming the Guards in a Garnfon; after which, the Major of Brigade of the Day is to Tell off the feveral Guards as the Town-Major does, by beginning at the Right, appointing the Serjeants to them, and ordering the Men, as they are Told off, to Order their When all the Guards are Told off, the Officers are then to draw for their Guards; But as this may occasion the Officers on the Right of the Line to Mount with the Men on the Left, I am of Opinion, that it would be more Proper to place the Officers, as near as possible, to those Guards to which the Men of their own Brigades are Detach'd: For as the Brigades are to draw every Day for their Posts on the Grand-Parade, it will hardly fall out, that the same Guards will come to their share two Days together; and therefore Duty can't fall harder on one Brigade than another. My Realon why I think this Method Preferable to that of the Officers drawing for their Guards, is, that when the Guards are Reliev'd, the Officers should march to the Parade of the Brigade, and difinifs them there, instead of the Grand-Parade, by which means they will be Dismis'd near their own Encampment; whereas by Difmiffing them on the Grand-Parade, those Men who are Encamp'd on the Extremities of the First and Second Lines, will have a confiderable Way to go to their Regiments, if the Army is tollerably Large, and thereby not only Fatigue them, but throw the Temptation of a Sutler's Tent in their Way, and, by getting Drunk, lose their Arms

Arms and Accourrements, and the Fear of being Punish'd for the same may induce them to Desert; but by the Method I propose, this Inconveniency will be, in a great measure, avoided, since the Men will be dismissed near their own Brigade.

When the Officers are to Draw for their Guards, as is the general Practice, they are, when relieved, to March their

Guards to the Grand-Parade, and dismiss them there.

The General Officer's Guards, according to their Senionity, are to be Told off first; then that for the Train, Pro-

roft-Marshal, &c.

.

9

3

.

S

9.

0.

d

re

ne

en

0-

ds

0.

he

ds

)u-

on

ers

Rede,

ich nt;

ofe

and.

neir

not

ut-

neir

rms

As foon as the Officers are posted to their Guards, the Men may be order'd to Shoulder their Arms by Beat of Drum. After that, the Major of Brigade of the Day is to order the Guards to March off in the same Manner as is practis'd by the Town-Major in a Garrison, and to see them all March off from the Parade, before he leaves it.

When an Army is compos'd of the Troops of different Princes, those Troops are commanded by General Officers of their own; in which case, the General Officers have Guards from their own Troops; so that those Guards don't tome in to the General Detail of the Army, but are keptapart by the Majors of Brigade belonging to those Troops; therefore those Guards are not Detach'd from the Grand-Parade, and consequently don't come under the Cognizance of the Major of Brigade of the Day. However, the above Method will serve for each Nation, and their own Majors of

Brigade must take it Day about to Parade their own Guards. When it thus happens, the Guards Ordinary, which the Major of Brigade of the Day is to Detach from the Grand-Parade, are those of the Train, Provoe-General of the Army, and the Bread Waggons; as also any other for which the Whole Army is to give an equal Proportion of Officers

and Soldiers.

ARTICLE V.

The Picquet-Guard, as it is call'd, is a Body of Men who are to be always ready to March at a Moment's Warning, either to fustain Out-Posts, Foraging Escorts, or, in case the Enemy should endeavour to Surprize you in your Camp, to March out and Attack them, in order to give the Army time to Draw up.

The Number which every Battalion gives to the Picquet, mention'd in the first Article. When the Picquet is or-

P 3

der'd

Cha

T

elf,

Fro

Pico

ing unfi

the

tha

dra

of t

Sho

at .

Tu

Ar

the

di

do

0

1

C

1

der'd to March, another is immediately order'd to supply their Room, in case a Second should be commanded out.

The Picquet-Guard continues on Duty only 24 Hours, and is drawn out at the Head of each Battalion every Night,

in the following Manner:

While the Drummers are beating their Tat-too, the Men who mount the Picquet are eto be drawn up, at the Head of their Street, three deep, with Shoulder'd Arms; and when the Drummers have done Beating, the Captain of the Picquet is to order the Men to March, which they are to do very flow, and in a direct Line to the Front, casting their Eyes to the Right and Left, that they may all March even. When they have march'd to a proper Distance from the Tents, he is to order them to Halt; after that to close them to the Center, and then to order the Serjeants to compleat the Files. As foon as the Files are compleated, the Captains and the two Subalterns are to examine the Mens Arms, and to see if they are loaded (which is to be with a Running Ball) and Prim'd; as also to look into their Ammunition. After this, the Captain is to caution the Men not to stir from the Regiment; to keep their Arms by them in their Tents; to lie in their Cloaths and Acoutrements, that they may be ready to Turn out at a Moment's Warning, and to remember their Ranks and Files, that they are then drawn up in, that in cafe they should be order'd out upon Service, or for the Lieutenant-General of the Day to fee them, they may fall into their own Places, that no time may be loft in compleating them again. When this is done, he orders the Men to Rift their Firelocks; Recover their Arms; Face to the Right-about, and March to their Tents. The eldest Serjeant of the Picquet is to get a List of the Mens Names immediately, and give it to the Captain, that if any one is wanting, when the Picquet is order'd out, they may know who it is, in order to his being punish'd for Neglect of Duty; as also to prevent the Men being chang'd, or order'd out upon any other Command, while they are on the Picquet; for should the Men be chang'd, how should the Officers of the Picquet know whether their Mens Arms were in order or not, or that they were provided with Ammunition? For which Reason, they should always order those Men on the Picquet-Guard who came last off Duty, that others may not be commanded on Guards or Detachments out of their Turns, by having those Men on the Picquet who are the first on the Roll to go on Duty. The

V.

eir

113,

ht,

len

of

nen

uet

ery

yes

en

he

en-

As

if

nd

is,

le-

lie

dy

eir ale te-

nto

ng

eft

ut,

ind

the

to

ent m-

en

W.

ey

leV

ho

on

to

he

The Orderly Corporal of each Company is to place himfilf, with his Arms in his Hand, about eight Paces in the front, and facing his own Men, during the time that the ficquet is under Arms, that, when the Officers are examining the Mens Arms and Ammunition, he may be ready to inswer for every thing that shall be found out of order; it is therefore the Duty of those Corporals to take particular care, that the Men have all things in proper order before they are drawn out, otherwise the Punishment will fall on them instead of the Men.

The Quarter-Guards are to Turn out, and remain with shoulder'd Arms during the time that the Picquet continues at the Head of the Regiments; and when the Picquet is Turn'd in, the Men of the Quarter-Guard are to Lodge their Arms, either in their Bell of Arms, or Shed erected to keep

them dry.

Most Regiments have a distinct Roll of the Picquet-Duty for the Officers, from that of Guards Ordinary and Extraordinary, which Roll begins with the Youngest, as the other does with the Eldest, that the Officers may have an equal share of each Duty; but whenever the Picquet marches from the Head of the Line, it passes for a Duty both to the Officers and Soldiers, and is allow'd them in their next Tour.

If the Picquet of one Regiment, or one Brigade, or that of one Wing, should March, and not the rest, those Regiments whose Picquet march'd, are to be allow'd it in the Grand Detail of Duty.

Besides the Officers of the Picquet already mention'd, there are General-Officers and Field-Officers appointed to

command them.

The Generals fo order'd, are call'd General-Officers of the Day: and the Field-Officers are call'd Field-Officers of

the Picquet

The General Officers of the Day for the Infantry, are Three, a Lieutenant-General, a Major-General, and a Brigadier-General, who are to March with, and take the Command of the Picquet when it is order'd out upon any Occafion: And as the Picquet is immediately under the Command of the Lieutenant-General of the Day, it is not to March without his Orders; therefore all Orders relating to the Picquet are fent directly to him, that he may give Direction for its Marching.

216

In case of an Alarum, the Picquets are to draw out at t Head of their Regiments; but not to March from then 'till they receive Orders for it from the Lieutenant-Gener of the Day; and tho' it should prove a false Alarum, they a

not to return to their Tents 'till he orders them.

The Number of Field-Officers appointed for the Picque is according to the Strength of the Army. But in order give a proper Idea of the usual Method, we will suppose Body of Infantry confisting of 108 Battalions Incamp'd two Lines; the Front Line confishing of 56 Battalions, an the Second of 52. In this case, they always divide them into two Bodies, diftinguish'd by the Right and Left Wings. I dividing them they do not separate the Bodies from one and ther, or leave a greater Interval between the Regiments that ordinary; but only place the Half on the Right of both Line in the Right-Wing, and the Half on the Left of both Line in the Left Wing; for the clearer Understanding of which I have hereunto annex'd a Plan of the faid Number of Bat talions, divided into Wings and Brigades, to shew how the Field-Officers are appointed for the Picquet; the Number of whom, to command the Picquet of this Body of Foot, can't be less, in my Opinion, than four Colonels, four Lieutenant-Colonels, and four Majors, two of each Rank for each Line: by which each Colonel in the Front Line will have the Command of the Picquets of 28 Battalions, which is 1400 Men, befides Officers, Serjeants, and Drummers; and thole of the Rear Line will have the Command of the Picquets of 26 Battalions, which is 1300 Men, besides Officers, &c. and tho' these Numbers are above the Ordinary Commands of Colonels, yet, on extraordinary Occasions, it is usual for Colonels to have the Command of 1500 Men; but more particularly fo in relation to the Picquet.

When the Infantry is thus divided into Wings, they generally do Duty apart; fo that each Wing has a distinct Rofler, or Roll of Duty, kept for it. In this Cafe, each Wing furnishes its own Field-Officers for the Picquet, and are appointed by Name to their feveral Commands in Publick Or-

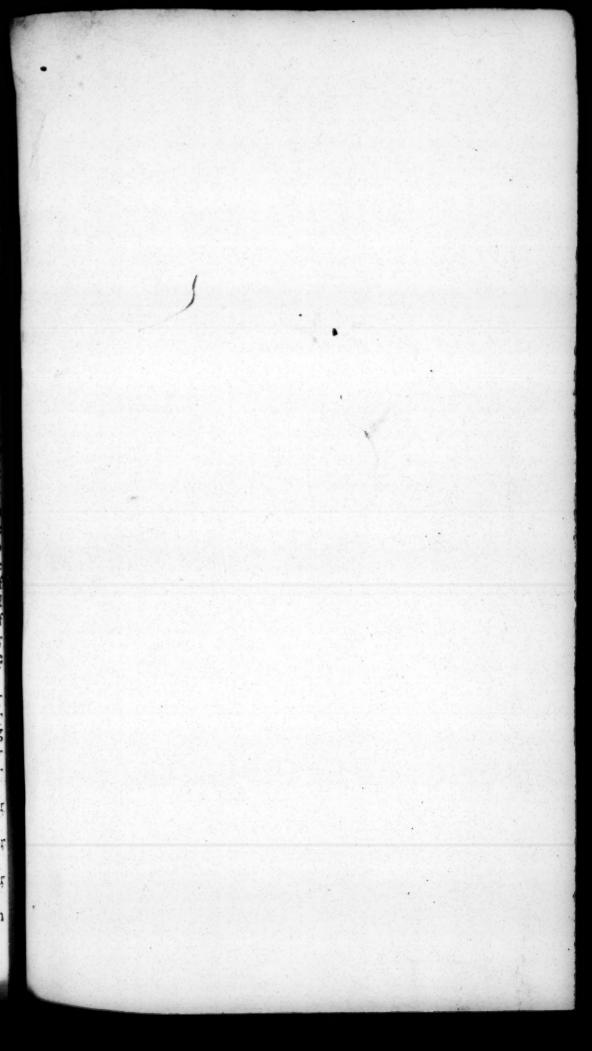
ders, in the following Manner:

Such a Colonel, Lieutenant-Colonel, and Major, are for the Picquet of the Front Line, in the Right Wing.

Such a Colonel, Lieutenant-Colonel, and Major, are for

the Picquet of the Second Line in the Right Wing.

Such a Colonel, Lieutenant-Colonel, and Major, are for the Picquet of the Front Line in the Left Wing. Such



PLAN of 108 Battalions drawn up in Two Lines, divided into Wings and Brigades, to shew how the Field Officers are appointed for the Picquet.

Front Line consisting of 56 Battalions, Form'd into 12 Brigades.

Left Wing of the Front Line containing 28 Battalions, Forming Six Brigades.

Right Wing of the Front Line containing 28 Battalions, Form'd into Six Brigades.

Brigade. Brigade.	Brigade.									
5.		5.		5.	5.		5	5.		

Second Line consisting of 52 Battalions, Form'd into 12 Brigades.

Left Wing of the Second Line, containing 26 Battalions.

Right Wing of the Second Line, containing 26 Battalions.

Brigade.	Bridade.										

The Figures shew the Numbers of Battalions in each Brigade.

Social By Charles and As plants and the mest and the mest

Sich a Colonel, Lieutenant-Colonel, and Major, are for Picquet of the Second Line in the Left Wing.

by the above Method of appointing the Field-Officers. can immediately repair to their feveral Commands, and the Picquets, over whom they are placed, into a Body, they are order'd to march; and likewife know what

arter-Guards they are to visit in going their Rounds.

As the Number over whom each Colonel of the Picquet placed, would be too great to be continued in one Body, bey were order'd out upon Service; every Colonel should refore divide his Men into two Bodies, giving the Comnd of the Second to the Lieutenant-Colonel of the Picquet ois under him; by which the Picquet will be divided into ht Bodies, four of which will confift of 700 Men each, the other four of 650 Men each, besides Officers, Sernts, and Drummers.

The dividing the Picquet in this Manner, is not with a w to lessen the Command of the Colonels, fince those whom their Lieutenant-Colonels are placed are to be under their Direction; but only to make them more fit Action, by reducing each Body pretty near the Complent of a Battalion; which Model is certainly the most perfince all the Infantry of Europe are divided into Battasof about fix or feven hundred Men each, and therefore

idently evinces the Truth of its being fo.

As foon as Tat-too has beat, the Lieutenant-Colonels and fors of the Picquet are to wait on the Colonels under of Command they are appointed, to receive their Orders ut going of the Rounds, and when they shall make their

should think it would be very proper, that the Fieldicers of the Picquet should be order'd to repair to the at of their Wings, with their Scarfs on, at the beating Tat-too, to fee the Picquets drawn out. That should the Place where the Colonels should give their Orders to other Field-Officers, and not at their Tents or Quarters. own this is not the Practice; but according to my Notions Discipline, it ought to be, fince it could not fail of having ery good Effect; for when the others see the Field-Officers t in performing their Duty, it will infuse the same Spirit them; whereas, when they find Those neglect Discipline lought to support it, we may reasonably conclude, that will follow their Example, in this, very punctually.

The Colonels of the Picquet go the Grand-Round, who is done about the same Time and in the same Manner as the

Grand-Round in a Garrison.

218

When the Lieutenant-Colonels and Majors are order'd their Colonels to go Rounds, which is generally after t Grand-Round has gone, they are to be receiv'd on the For ing of Common-Rounds, and are therefore to give to Word to the Officers on Guard.

The Field Officers of the Picquet, in going their Round

are only to visit the Quarter-Guards of their Wing.

The Lieutenant-Colonels and Majors are to make the Report to the Colonels of the Picquet, that is, to those w der whose Command they are placed, at the time which they shall appoint, which is commonly in the Morning; at the Colonels of the Picquet are to make their Report of the whole to the Leiutenant-General of the Day, at the Ha Quarters, at Orderly Time.

If the General-Officers of the Day think proper to Rounds, they are always to be receiv'd as Grand-Round tho' the Grand-Round should be made; and the Officers mu give them the Word: Neither are they, nor the Grand-Roun

oblig'd to difmount when they receive the Word.

Tho' it is positively said, that the Picquet shall not man from the Head of their Regiments 'till they receive Orde for it from the Lieutenant-General of the Day, yet it can be suppos'd but that the Major-General and Brigadier of the Day, or the Colonels of the Picquet, may venture to man them upon an Emergency, without waiting for his Order otherwise the Intent and Design of the Picquet, that of pu ting a Stop to the Enemy 'till the Army can draw out, m be obstructed. For as the Lieutenant-General of the Da can't be in every Place at a time, should the Enemy appear on one Flank while he is at the other, or in the Center, h Orders might come too late for their Marching to oppo It can't therefore be doubted but that their March ing on fuch an Occasion, without waiting for his Orders, not only excufable, but abfolutely necessary: However, u less there is a real Necessity, no subordinate Officer should pre Sume to order the Picquet to march, but by his Commands.

The Lieutenant-General of the Day may order the Picqu of any Battalion, to draw out under Arms, for him to them, during any time of the Night; but the other General Officers of the Day, or the Field-Officers of the Picque

can't do it by their own Authority.

I mu

Cha

te P

W

back

Picqu

7210

which

the]

fire

join

or a

gen(

town

I

but

who

Fro

quet

nek

Ab

Re ď

ioir

of

the

cal

w

C

CT

be

th

ha

de

th

h

2

P ti

te

X

whi

as th

rdl

er t

Foo

e t

und

the e un

which

an f th

He

0

und

mu

oun

nand

rde

can

fth

1210

den

pu ma

Da

ppe

, h

ppo

arch

rs,

UE

pre

ds.

cqu

0 1

iera

que

mu

! must beg leave to offer one thing of my own relating to

te Picquet, which is this:

When the Picquet draws out upon any Alarum, the Colock of the Picquet should have Directions, to join the
Picquets of their Wing immediately into a Body, without
rating for the Lieutenant-General of the Day's Orders; by
which means they will be ready to march from the Head of
the Line, as soon as they shall receive his Orders, which will
save a great deal of Time, that will be lost if they are not to
join'till he orders them. For as the saving of an Out-Post,
or a Foraging Escort, when attack'd, depends on the Diligence of the Picquet, the Method I propose will contribute

towards it in point of Time. Ido not mean that the Whole should join in one Body; but that every Colonel should join those into a Body over from he is appointed, the Place for which should be in the front of the Center-Battalion of his Wing; fo that the Picout should be form'd into as many Bodies as there are Coloneb order'd for the Picquet: And if it should prove a false Alarum, they will have but a short way to march back to their Regiments, and therefore it can't be look'd on as a Fatigue; but it should prove a real one, the Advantage of their being on'd, is, in my Opinion, so plain, that it will not admit of an Objection: For when the General of the Day fends them Orders to march, his Aid-de-Camps will have an Ocalion to deliver them only to the Colonels of the Picquet, which may be done in a very short time; whereas, by the other way, they must stop at every Battalion, to give the Captain of the Picquet Orders where he is to march to; and menafter that, they must make a Halt, in order to be form'd into distinct Bodies under the Command of the Field-Officers; before they enter upon Action: So that by the Aid-de-Camp's hopping at every Battalion to deliver his Orders, and their balting afterwards to form them into distinct Bodies, a considetable Time must be lost; whereas by the Method propos'd, they will be ready to march and enter upon Action upon the

As the Germans and French don't only differ from us, but also from one another, in some Particulars relating to their Picquet-Guard, I believe the inferting them here will not be thought improper; fince the knowing the Method of different Nations, may be of Service to an Officer on several Occasions.

t of

oper,

er.

in'd

ent t

A (

der ft

g hi

Advan Archur Circu

erel

o M

Gene

W

T

no the

Day

A

The

His the

ons lers

and

goi bea

fin

2

G

ARTICLE VI.

The Picquet of the Imperialists and French consists of the fame Number of Officers and Soldiers from each Battalia as is order'd for ours, and design'd for the same Use, that a having a Body of Men always ready, &c. But what we differ in from the Germans, is this, that our Picquets remain is their Tents all Night, and theirs serve as an Advanced Guar

to the Army.

As foon as Tat-too has heat, and that the Officers have examin'd the Soldiers Arms and Ammunition, they mark their Picquets about 80 or 100 Yards in the Front of the own Quarter-Guards, where they are to continue all Night placing Sentrys in their Front and on their Flanks; but those of the Front Line post a Serjeant's Guard about 3001 40 Yards advanced, when they are near the Enemy, other wise not, to which they send frequent Patrols.

If the Rear of their Army lies open, or that they are under any Apprehension of the Enemy's attempting to surprize them there, the Picquet of the second Line is then posted about the same Distance in the Rear of their Sutlers Tents, Facing outwards, and taking the same Precautions as those of the Front Line, in posting of Sentrys, and Serjeants

Guards, &c.

By this means, they fay, both the Front and Rear of their Army is fecur'd, during the Night, from being insulted by an inconsiderable Number of the Enemy's Troops; and tho' they should Advance with a large Body, the Picquet would stop them so long, 'till the Army would have time

to get to their Arms.

This is the Reason which they give for their Picquet-Guards lying out every Night, in the manner above mention'd; and if they did it only when there was a real Occasion, the Reason would be good; but as it is their constant Practice, from the Opening of the Campaign to the End of it, it proceeds rather from Custom than Necessity; since their Situation can't be always such, as to be liable to a Surprize; and when they are not under those Circumstances, Acts of Supererogation, in my Opinion, ought to be avoided, that the Men may not be Fatigu'd to no Purpose.

Application. When the Armies are near one another; or that you are inferior to the Enemy, or particularly so in Horse,

to

ar

av

rch hei ht, bu

er-

der

a-

ofe

nts

eir

by

ind

uet

me

rds

nd

Cal-

om

eds

on

nd

er-

he

pa

or in fe,

their Insults by the Situation of your Camp; the drawing to the Picquet, in the German manner, will be not only mer, but absolutely necessary: But when they are not untries these Circumstances, it is very imprudent to act as if they are. It shews that the Commander in Chief has only attituded to the Mechanical Part of the Service, but wants Judge-

ent to apply it in the proper Season.

A General should be Careful, but not Diffident, less it also a bad Impression on those under his Command: Neiter should he despise the Enemy too much, less, by fancyby himself in a State of Security, he should give them an alternatage over him; So that the true Medium lies between shounting over him; So that is, Bold, but not Rash; strumspect, but not Diffident. No Man can attain to this arely by Art. It must be implanted by Nature, and brought a Maturity by Experience. Thus was our late Victorious. General, the Duke of Marlborough, form'd, whose Conduct a War may be Imitated, but hardly Equall'd.

The Field-Officers of the Picquet don't go their Rounds to the Quarter-Guards, but to the Picquet-Guards; and not only the Grand-Round is obliged to give the Officer of each Round-Guard the Word; but the General Officers of the

Day must do it also, if they come to visit the Picquet.

All the Field-Officers of the Picquet go their Rounds. The Major begins his about half an Hour after it is dark. His chief Business is like that of a Town-Major, to see if the Sentrys are properly posted, and if not, to give Directions for the doing it; as also to examine into their Numbers, &c.

The Colonel goes the Grand-Round about twelve a Clock; and the Lieutenant-Colonel about an hour before Day.

One of the General Officers of the Day seldom fails of going to the Picquet of the Front Line just at or after the beating of the Reveille; not on the Footing of a Round, since no Round is made after Reveille; but only to ask how all things pass'd in the Night, and whether they discover'd any thing or not; after which he goes to visit the Grand-Guards of Horse, and Out-Posts.

About half an Hour after the Reveille, the Picquet-Guards return to their Regiments. This is the Method of the Picquet-Guards of Foot of the Imperialists; and I presume it is

the same amongst the Troops of all the German Princes.

DE

hav

Gu

Ho

中華に

in

11

ter-

Fo

m

h

m

0

1 3

lite

hee

Wh

Fn

Ma

like

upc

The Horse and Dragoon Picquets are form'd also at the Head of their respective Wings; but don't advance above

30 Paces from the Standard-Guards.

At the setting of the Watch, they are drawn out at the Head of their Regiments, as the Foot are; afterwards those of each Wing are join'd, and then form'd into Squadrons, with proper Officers to command them; and as soon as they have posted their Videts, or Sentrys, the Men are order'd to dismount and lie at their Horses Heads.

As they are allow'd to bring Forage with them to feed

their Horses, they have liberty to unbridle.

When they are under any Apprehension of the Enemy's Attempts, they don't only post Subaltern Guards in their Front and Flanks, but keep one entire Rank of the Whole mounted, which they relieve every Hour, by making the three Ranks take it in their Turn; and send frequent Patrols round their Videts and advanced Guards.

The Field Officers of the Horse-Picquet assemble with

the Men, and remain with them all Night.

A little before Day, the Men are order'd to bridle their Horses, and mount, that they may be ready to sustain the Grand Guards, in case they are attack'd; and a little after Day-break they send out Patrols to reconoitre as far as the Grand Guards of their own Wing, with Orders for them not to return 'till they are march'd to their Day-Posts. They send out Patrols likewise to reconnoitre on their Flanks; that is, those of the Right Wing reconnoitre the Right Flank of the Army; and the Lest Wing the Lest Flank; which Patrols seldom reconnoitre above a Mile, unless on some extraordinary Occasion. As soon as their Patrols are return'd, and their Guards and Videts drawn in, the Horse-Picquets return to their Regiments.

The Number of Horse which mount the Picquet, is not fix'd, as it is in the Foot; but are more or less according as there is Occasion, both with them and us: however, there are never less than two of a Troop, and seldom more than eight; so that according to the Number of Men, Officers

are commanded in Proportion.

The common Method is to appoint a Captain, Lieutenant, and Cornet to 80 or 100 Horse; but sometimes they order the same Number of Officers to 50, 60, or 70, according to the Service on which they are commanded. It is a standing Rule in the Cavalry, that when a Captain of Horse is order'd on Duty, he has a Quarter-Master and a Trumpet he

ıs, ey

ed

y's eir

he

ols

th

eir

ter

he

em As.

s;

k;

on

are fe-

not

ere

nan

ers

ite-

hey

ac-

t is

of

d a

numbet from his own Regiment, so that they are never mention'd in the Orders; but the Lieutenants and Cornets have neither, unless on very particular Occasions; such as a

Guard of Horse on the General in Chief.

The Manner of joining the Piequet of each Wing of Hoffe into a Body, and then forming them into Squadrons, spreserable to the Method of their Foot Picquet, that of ting the Picquet of each Battalion fingle: For should the nemy make an Attempt upon the Incampment of the Foot in the Night, they could not be oppos'd at any one Place of with more than a Captain and 50 Men, besides the Quargr-Guard, which could not make any confiderable Refince, at least not sufficient to give the Regiments time to form as they ought. 'Tis true that the Foot are not very lable to Surprizes of this Nature, from their being incampt in the Center: However, I am of Opinion, that when the front is to continue out all Night, they should be form'd into Colonel's Commands; that is, into as many Bodies as there are Colonels appointed for the Picquet, and the Field-Officers to remain with their feveral Commands. After they are thus form'd, the General of the Day should post them in fich Places along the Front, Flanks, or Rear, by which the Enemy can have Access to the Camp; so that by having so milderable a Body, as a Colonel's Command, posted at ach Avenue leading to your Camp, the Army can be in no Danger from a Surprize, fince they will be able to make hich a Relistance as will give the Army time to Form, which fall that is required from the Picquet, that being the End for which they are then defign'd.

When the Rear is so secured that it is in no Danger from the Enemy, the Picquet of that Line may be posted likewise in the Front of the first Line, or on the Flanks, if requi-

hte.

From each of these Bodies, the Colonels should post Officers Guards at a proper Distance in their Front, and small ones on their Flanks, and send frequent Patrols round them

to keep them Alert.

The Officers of these advanced Guards must be extream rigilant and watchful, that they may not be surprized; for which end they should post two Sentrys at each Post in their front, that one may come to the Guard, upon the Apparance of any Number of Men, or the hearing of a Noise like the March of Troops, to acquaint the Officer with it; upon which they should put their Men under Arms, and en-

to

fu

fn

A

I

th

bu

m

in

di

W

deavour to inform themselves thoroughly of the Truth of that Report, by reconnoitring the Place where the Men were seen, or from whence the Noise was heard, before they send an Account of it to the Colonel of the Picquet.

When the Officers find the Report of the Sentrys to be true, they are to fend an Account of it immediately to the Colonel of the Picquet, and so from time to time as they dis-

cover any thing further.

If the Number of Men which were discover'd, or the Noise which was heard, is considerable, the Colonel of the Picquet is to send an Account of it to the General of the Day, as also to those Bodies which are posted near him, with Directions for them to communicate it to those next them, and so from one to another 'till the several Bodies of the Picquet are acquainted with it, that they may be all prepar'd for their Desence. or ready to march upon the first Order they shall receive from the Lieutenant-General of the Day.

On fuch Notice, the Colonels of the Picquet are to put their Men under Arms, and to fend Patrols round their advanced Guards and Sentrys, to fee that they are Alert, and to acquaint the Officers who command those Guards, with the Report which was fent them from the other Bodies, that they may be ready to oppose any Attempt that shall be made on them; as also to Reconnoitre beyond their advanced Sentrys, and to send him a Report of what they dis-

cover.

As the Colonels of the Picquet can't quit their Posts to Sustain one another, without they have Orders for it from the General of the Day, it can't therefore be doubted, but that he will immediately repair to the Place from whence he received the Report, in order to give such Directions as the Service may require: For which end the General Officers of the Day should have a Tent pitch'd in the Rear of that Body, which is posted opposite to the Center of the first Line, where they should remain all Night, that the Colonels of the Picquet may send their Reports when any thing is Discover'd or Heard, and Receive their Commands, without Loss of Time.

Having given full Directions in the 6th Article, Chap. 11. how Sentrys are to behave on their Posts, there is no occasion for its being further mention'd; but lest the Enemy should advance upon the Advanced Guards, before the General of the Day can arrive at that Post to give the necessary Orders,

he

he

n,

xt

of

all

rft

he

ut

rt,

ds,

es,

be

ad-

lif-

to

om

but

he

the

s of

Bo-

ne,

of

CO-

Loss

11.

OC-

emy

ene-

fary

ers,

however

Orders, they are not to quit their Posts 'till they are Forced wit by superior Numbers; and even in that Case they are maintain it as long as they can by Firing upon them, after which they are to Retire slowly to the Body from which

they were Detach'd.

Upon the Fire of the Advanc'd Guards of Foot, the Horse Picquet should immediately Mount, and the General Officer who Commands them should send a sufficient Detchment towards the Place from whence the Fire was hard, in order to fustain the Post that is Attack'd, and be rady to follow with the Whole, in case those should not be fufficient: However, all the Horse Picquet should not march from their Posts 'till Part of the Cavalry are Mounted and Form'd, lest the Enemy should have done it with a Design to Daw them from thence, and then attack the Flanks of the Army before they are prepared to Receive them. But I must not proceed further on this Head, for fear of incurring the just Censure of my Superiors, by Presuming to lay down Rules to those who are thoroughly Versed in all Things relating to the Service. I hope they will therefore excuse the Liberty lhave taken in entring, perhaps, a little too freely into the Grand Detail, which I was necessitated to do now and then, or leave the Parts Treated on not clearly understood by those for whom it is Design'd, young Officers. Besides, as there is great Reason to believe, that several of them will arrive to the Rank of General Officers, before they have an Opportunity of acquiring the Knowledge of their Duty by Service, those things relating to it, which are here inserted, believe, upon fecond Thoughts, will not be judg'd altogether Improper, in order to give them a small Idea of thole Important Posts.

When the Horse and Foot Picquet is Dispos'd of according to the above Method, the Army can be under no Apprehension of a Surprize. Besides, Enterprizes of that Nature are seldom successful, from the Dissiculties that attend Night Expeditions, and therefore very seldom undertaken; but if they should attempt it, and pass the Grand-Guards of Horse without being discover'd, which is not very easie if they perform their Duty, the Opposition which they will meet with from the Picquet, both of Horse and Foot, will, in all Probability, make them conclude that their Design is discover'd, and consequently give it over, and Return from whence they came; but if it has not that Effect, it will

Q

226

however give the Army the time Requisite to Draw out and Oppose them.

I shall now proceed to the Method of the Foot Picquet of the French.

The Picquet-Guard of each Battalion confifts of the fame Number of Officers and Soldiers, and are defign'd for the fame End as ours, with this Difference; that they furnish Sentrys to their Colours and Bells of Arms, their Quarter-Guard being compos'd of a Serjeant and twelve Men only.

The Picquet is Drawn up in the Interval on the Right of the Granadiers, where they continue 'till they are reliev'd at Tat-too; for which Reason, they always erect a Shed there, made with Boughs and Straw, to keep their Arms and Am-

munition from the Rain.

When the Commander in Chief of the Army, or the General Officers of the Day, Pass by, they only draw up in their Ranks without Arms; and if the King should Pass by,

they pay him no other Complement.

The Day the Army is to March, at the Beating of the General, the Officers of the Picquet are to get on Horfeback, and to take care that the Soldiers don't take their Arms out of the Bells and go before, or stir from the Battalion, which the French Soldiers would frequently do, were it not for this Precaution.

When the Regiment is Drawn out, either to March, of to Mount the Trenches, the Picquet is always Form'd on the Right of the Battalion, and Marches immediately after

the Granadiers.

If a Captain and fifty Men of a Regiment are Commanded out, while they are on the March, or in the Trenches, the Picquet is to perform that Service; that is, they are to March first; but if a second Detachment of the same Number wanted, it is taken from the Battalion, the first having h nish'd their Duty; otherwise the first Picquet would pass their Time extreamly ill in the Trenches, were they to be commanded out before the others have taken their Tour. This is all in which the German and French Picquet differ from ours.

CHAP

Con

tio

use

fta

M

the

far

of

m

tic

R

CHAP, XVI.

Confishing of the Guards Ordinary of the Horse and Dragoons; and also Extraordinary Guards of the Foot.

ARTICLE I.



at e,

n-

y,

he

le-

ms

n,

100

00

on

ter

led

the

rch

fi-

be

on

P.

ORMERLY the Horse and Dragoons were look'd upon as two Diffinct Bodies, and therefore had separate Duties: For the Horse did all the Duty of the Grand-Guard, and the Dragoons that of Convoys or Escorts, and guarding of Passes and Fords, as being rather Expedi-

tious Foot, than Horse; for which Service they were more uleful than for Field Action, their Horses being too small to fand a Charge: But in the late War they were fo well Mounted, that they Roll'd in all Duties with the Horse, and therefore compos'd but one Body, under the Denomination of Cavalry.

The Guards Ordinary of the Cavalry, are the Standard-

Guards, and Grand-Guards.

Each Regiment has a Standard-Guard, which is of the ame Nature with the Quarter-Guards of the Infantry, that of a Guard to the Regiment, and to pay the Complement due to the General Officers.

The Standard-Guard for a Regiment of Horse commonly confifts of a Corporal and 12 Troopers; but at the Setting of the Watch, they have fix Men added to them, they having more Sentrys by Night than in the Day-time, which Additional Men go off foon after Reveille.

The Standard-Guard of a Regiment of Dragoons, confifts of the same Number, with the Addition of a Serjeant.

The Standard-Guards are reliev'd every Morning at the Be ting of the Troop, and the Men Mount on Foot, and are Drawn up on each fide of the Standards, in a fingle Rank, facing outward. They have neither Trumpet nor Drum; fo that they can pay no other Complement to the Generals, than that of the Horse Resting their Carbines on their Left Arms, and the Dragoons Resting their Firelocks as the Foot do.

 I_n

th

th

W

th

th

1

f

01

1

C

fu

tr

bi

E

(

In the Day-time, the Men of the Standard-Guard are obliged to appear in Boots; but at Night they throw them off: Which Custom of Mounting in Boots on the Standard-Guard is certainly Ridiculous, fince there is no End propos'd by it: For as the Men of the Standard-Guard are not to leave the Camp, unless the Regiment is order'd to March. to what Purpose are they to have their Boots on? Neither are their Horses Saddled at the Picquet; therefore there can be no Reason given for it, that I could hear of, but Custom; which is but a poor Support for what in itself is both Inconvenient and Absurd. Besides, to order them to mount a Guard on Foot in their Boots, and their Horses Unsaddled at the Picquet, appears fo inconfistent, that I am furpriz'd it has not been abolish'd long since. Where a Custom is of a long Standing, tho' there can be no great Use made of it, yet if it is not attended with any Inconveniency, it may be continued as a thing indifferent, but not otherwise: therefore, I prefume, as the Gentlemen of the Cavalry have enter'd a little further into the Spirit of Discipline than formerly, they will lay afide the Cuftom of making the Men of the Standard-Guard Mount in Boots.

ARTICLE II.

The Grand-Guards are done by Detachment, and are Reliev'd every Morning at the same time that the Standard-Guards are.

When the Army is large, each Wing of Horse does Duty by its self, without intermixing with one another, and therefore have distinct Grand-Guards allotted them; for which Reason they have separate Parades. That for both Lines of the Right-Wing, is generally about the Center of the Front Line of Horse on the Right; and that for both Lines of the Lest-Wing, opposite to the Center of the Front Line on the Lest; on which Parades those who are order'd for the Grand-Guards are to Assemble, and to be Detach'd from thence by the Majors of Brigade.

The Grand-Guards are Divided into Captains Commands, in each of which there are feldom less than fifty Men, or more than a hundred, and each Captain has a Lieutenant

and Cornet along with him.

The Number that Mount daily is not fix'd; but depends on the Number of your Troops, the Situation of your Camp, or the Neighbourhood of the Enemy; according to which there re

m

d-

0-

ot

h,

er

be

1;

n-

a

ed

it a

of

ay

re-

n-

-

of

le-

rd-

by

ore

eathe

ont

the

on

the

om

ids.

or

ant

ends

mp,

nich here there are more or less order'd: However, the common Rule ito post a Captain's Command at, or near, each Avenue in the Front of the Army, by which the Enemy can approach the Camp, unless they should lie in low Grounds or Bottoms, the Eminences being the properest Places to post them on, that they may discover the March of Troops a good way off, and give Notice to the Camp of the Approach of the Enemy; as also to keep off small Parties from Plundering or Molesting it.

When each of these Guards consists of 80 or 100 Men, they generally Post a Lieutenant and 30 Troopers, or a Cornet and 20, at a proper Distance in their Front, but not out of View, to give them Notice when any Party appears; but when they only consist of 50 or 60 Men, they seldom Detach to these Advanc'd Guards above a Quarter-Master and

16 Troopers, or a Corporal and 12.

The Grand-Guards should never be posted in a narrow Pass or Road, or too near a Wood, but at some Distance from them, less they should be Surpriz'd by a Party of Foot, or Partizan Parties, which generally lie lurking there; but when such Places lie near their Posts, they should place Videts or Sentrys pretty near those Roads or Woods, to give the Guard Notice to Mount when any Number of arm'd Men appears; they should likewise send small Patrols to Reconnoitre those Places frequently, otherwise they may be Surpriz'd and carried off, when they least think of it, by an inconsiderable Number of Men.

The Videts which are posted in the Front, or near those suspected Places, should be placed double, that one may come and acquaint the Officer of the Guard when they distover any Body of Men, and the other remain at his Post will the Enemy Advance upon him, and force him from thence, or endeavour to cut off his Retreat, by getting be twixt him and his Guard; on either of which, he is to fire his Carbine, (which all Videts are to keep Advanced upon their Right Thighs for that purpose) and return to his Guard; but unless for the Reasons just mention'd, no Videt is to leave his Post 'till he is regularly Reliev'd by the Corporal of the Guard.

The Crand-Guards keep their Front always towards the Enemy; neitheir do they change it when the Generals come to Visit them: However, when any of them come, the Grand-Guards are to Mount, and Receive them with drawn Swords and Sound of Trumpet; for which Reason, they

Q3

should

Ch

ther

ICV

that

at 1

Al

th

(

6

2

should always have a Videt betwixt them and the Camp, to give them Notice of the Approach of the Generals, that they may have time to Mount, and pay the Complement due to them.

When the Grand-Guards are Reliev'd, they don't Draw up opposite to one another, as the Foot do; but the new Guard draws up on the Lest of the old one, if the Ground will allow of it, otherwise in the Rear of it; and as soon as the old Guard is march'd off, the new Guard draws up on their Ground.

The Grand-Guards have two Posts, one by Day, and ano-

ther by Night.

The Day-Post is sometimes a Mile from the Camp, or more or less, according to the Situation of the Ground, or the Vicinity of the Enemy; it being Necessary to Post them in such Places as will admit of a View, that they may disco-

ver a good way into the Country.

The Night-Post is generally within Half a Mile of the Camp, to which they retire at the Setting of the Watch, to prevent their being carried off in the Night by the Enemy, the Day-Post being at too great a Distance to remain there with any Sasety, since the Picquet could not come time enough to their Assistance, should they be Attack'd; but by their drawing near the Camp at Night, the Enemy can't so easily insult them; or if they Attempt it, they can be immediately sustain'd by the Horse and Foot Picquet.

In order to put it more out of the Power of the Enemy, the Night-Posts are frequently chang'd, and new ones Assigned them every third or fourth Night, or oftner if there is Occasion; by which means the Enemy can't be sure of the Place they are posted at, which will therefore rendertheir

Attempt very uncertain.

Immediately after the Reveille has Beat, the Grand-Guards March to their Day-Posts, and send small Parties a little before them to Reconnoitre all suspected Places, to avoid salling into an Ambuscade; which they might easily do without this Precaution, since they seldom march to their Day-Posts, but that they discover a Party of the Enemy's Horse, or Hussiars, at or near the said Posts.

The Lieutenant-Generals of the Day are the proper Officers to whom the posting of the rand-Guards belong; and after they are pested by them, none but the Commander in Chief of the Army, and the Generals of Horse and Foot,

have a Power of altering them.

The

The Men of the Grand-Guard always carry Forage with them to feed their Horses: However, I presume they are sever allow'd to unbriddle the Whole at the same time; but that one Rank is always kept ready to mount, unless they are so Advantagiously Posted, that they command the View of the whole Country.

During the Night, they always keep one Rank mounted, which they Relieve time-about, and fend frequent Patrols round their Advanced Guards and Videts, to keep them

Alert.

t0

hey

e to

raw

new

und

noo

up

no-

07

or em

co-

the

to

ny, iere

e-

by

fo

ne-

ny,

nes

ere

of

eir

rds

be-

fal-

th-

av-

rfe,

ffi-

and

in

ot,

The

A little before Day they all Mount, and continue fo 'till

they March to their Day-Posts.

When any of the Grand-Guard discover any Number of Men, whether Horse or Foot, they are to mount immediately, and to send out a Corporal and sour or six Troopers, who are well mounted, to Reconnoitre them near, in order to discover whether they are Friends or Foes, and their Numbers; and when it proves to be the Enemy, and that their Numbers are considerable, they are to send an Account of it immediately to the General of the Day, that he may order the Picquet to draw out, that they may be ready to oppose them, in case they should Attack the Grand-Guard.

The Officer who commands that Part of the Grand-Guard from which the Enemy was discover'd, should likewise send an Account of it to those Detachments which are posted near him, who are to send the same Account to the next, and so from one to another, that they may all prepare for their Defence.

The Grand-Guards are not to quit their Posts 'till obliged to it by Superior Numbers; and even in that case, they are not to go off with Precipitation, but to retire in a slow and regular manner before them, and to dispute every Spot of Ground that will admit of it, in order to put a Stop to them

till the Picquet can be brought to oppose them.

Where there are several Captains order'd for the Grand-Guard of each Wing, Field-Officers, in proportion to the Number who Mount, are appointed to command them; in which case all Reports, from the several Detachments of the Grand-Guard, relating to the Discovery of the Enemy, &c. are to be made to them, and by them to the General of the Day; and according to the Disposition of the Enemy, the Field-Officer who commands the Grand-Guard may join the Whole into one or more Bodies, as he shall judge proper

Q4

Chi

は、近

in

any for

Rei

Con

CIL

wi

En

ie

ten

m

to

200

6

of

m

D

00

4

C

for the Service; without which Power, the Detachments may be Attack'd and Beat one after another, who when join'd may be sufficient to Repulse the Enemy, or put a stop to their Progress 'till the Picquet can come to their Assistance.

As foon as the Grand-Guard is reliev'd, the Officer who commands it is to make his Report to the Lieutenant-General of the Day.

ARTICLE III. Guards Extraordinary.

By these are meant those Guards, or Detachments, which are only commanded on particular Occasions; either for the further Security of the Camp, which are call'd Out-Posts, or to cover the Foragers of the Army, for Convoys or Escorts, or for Expeditions; so that the proper Term is rather Extraordinary Commands, or Detachments.

These Commands, by what Denomination soever call'd, are done by Detachment; and each Battalion, whether strong or weak, furnishes an equal Proportion of private Men to

them.

OUT-POSTS.

When a Body of Men are posted beyond the Grand-Guard, they are call'd Out-Posts, as being without the

Rounds, or Limits of the Camp.

The Occasion of their being commanded, is generally to prevent the Army from being Surpriz'd, or disturb'd in the Night by the Enemy, or to secure a Pass or Ford on a River or Village, or Villages that may lie between the two Armies; as also to keep a Communication open with your own Garrisons, or cover your Convoys of Provisions, to prevent their being annoy'd by the Enemy.

All the Out-Posts which lie near the Camp are Reliev'd every Morning with the Guards Ordinary; but those which are at any great Distance, such as three, sour, or sive Miles, are generally reliev'd but once in sour or eight Days.

The fame Directions which are given for Parading the Men for the Guards Ordinary, must be observed in Parading of those for the Out-Posts, with this Addition, that the Adjutants must see that the Men who are to continue any time on Duty, are sufficiently provided with Ammunition-Bread, and Pay.

When

I.

its

en

a

eir

ho

le-

ch

he ts,

10

20

d,

ng

to

d-

he

to

he

Ri-

11-

wn

re-

v'd

ch

les,

the

ing

1d-

me

ad,

en

When the Out-Guards are posted in Villages, they should trengthen themselves in them as much as possible, by throwing of Barricades cross each Street, or Entrance into them; but when the Entrances are too many to be Desended any time, they should likewise strengthen the Church-yard, or any other Part of the Village, which they find more proper for their purpose, to retire to when they are forced from the others, that they may be able to defend themselves 'till keliev'd by their Army; but when an Out-Post has not the Conveniency of a Village, Church-yard, or House, a Fort, compos'd of Fascines and Earth, should be thrown up to see them, which may be done in a very short time; otherwise the Detachment may be carried off any Night by the Inemy.

When the Out-Posts which lie near the Camp have been reiev'd, they are to send an Orderly Man from each to Atmed at the Major of Brigade's Tent of the Day, in order to
conduct the Guards which are sent to Relieve them; as also
no carry what Orders the Major of Brigade of the Day shall
meive for those Posts, from their time of Mounting'till they
are Reliev'd; after the Delivery of which, the Orderly Men
are to return to the Major of Brigade's Tent, and acquaint
him of their having deliver'd them. These Orders should almays be sent in Writing, and seal'd up, less any Mistake
should happen thro' the Negligence or wrong Construction
of the Orderly Men; as also that the Officers, who Command those Posts, may be able to justify their Conduct, by
producing the said Orders, in case the obeying them should
be attended with any ill Consequence.

The Officers should take particular care to send such Ordery Men, whose Fidelity and Sobriety they can relie on most.
The Out-Posts are to Turn out, and receive the Generals
who come to Visit them, under Arms; but not to Beat a
Drum, tho' the Commander in Chief of the Army should
come to Visit their Posts.

The Out-Posts which are near the Camp are to have the Parole which is given to the Army, sent them in Writing by their Orderly Men; but those who are at a Distance should have a Parole and Counter-Sign of their own sent by an Orderly Trooper; the Care of which belongs properly to the Adjutant-General of the Army, as those which lie near the Camp do to the Major of Brigade of the Day.

The Commanding Officer at each Out-Post is to see his Night Sentrys posted before it is dark, and at the Advance

Pofts

Premifed.

During the Night, the Sentrys at the Out-Posts should be Reliev'd every Hour; and between every Relief a Patrole should be fent round them to keep them Alert; so that by the Relief and the Patrole all the Posts will be Visited every Half Hour. My Reason for this, is not only to keep them very watchful, but likewise to prevent the ill Consequences that may attend their Deferting to the Enemy, or quitting their Posts, fince they can't be gone long before it is found out; and as often as a Sentry is missing, the Officer who Commands the Out-Post is immediately to change his Counter-Sign, and fend it to all his Sentrys: For should the Sentry who is missing Desert to the Enemy, and discover the Counter-fign, they might impose on your Sentrys, and Surprize the Guard; but by their being Vifited fo often, it will be found out before they can possibly have time enough to Execute the Design, unless your Post lies very near the Enemy, in which case it is requisite for the Whole to be as Alertas the Sentrys. It is therefore incumbent on the Officers who Command Out-Posts to be very exact in this Part of their Duty, or they and their Parties may be eafily destroy'd by the Treachery of a Sentry.

When they are obliged to change their Counter-Sign for the above Reason, they should send an Account of it immediately to all Guards, or Out-Posts, with whom they have a Communication, that they may do the fame, left the Enemy

should Attempt to Suprize them.

As the Safety of an Army may often depend on the Out-Posts, the Officers who Command them can't be too exact in the Discharge of their Duty; they ought therefore to be very Vigilant, and not think giving the necessary Orders fusficient, but see them executed also; otherwise they may be deceiv'd by trufting entirely to Reports. 'Tis on those Commands where Officers have frequent Opportunities of diffinguishing themselves: It is therefore to be presum'd, that whoever has a Regard to his Reputation or Fortune, will not be fo much wanting to himself, as to neglect the common Rules which are here laid down for his Conduct.

The Officers who command Out-Posts, should order their Men to stand to their Arms a little before Break of Day and to continue so 'till it is so light that they can see a Mile or two from them, it being usual for Troops to advance near a Post in the Night, but defer attacking it 'till they can diflinguille CVI

ready

ld be

atrole

y the

every

them

ences

itting

ound

who

oun-

Sen-

r the

Sur-

will

gh to

Ene-

ert as

who

their y the

n for

nme-

ave a

nemy

Outexact

to be

s fuf-

ay be

Com-

listin-

who-

ot be

Rules

their Day

Mile e near

an di-

nguill

inguish one Man from another, for fear of destroying their om instead of the others. Besides, as the Morning is the ime that every Man is most sleepy, it is therefore the more accessary to use this Precaution, in order to have them thomughly awake, that they may be the better prepared for

Action, in case of an Attempt.

How far an Officer who commands an Out-Post should persevere in the maintaining of it against a superior Body of Troops, can't be declared, without knowing both his Orders and Situation; but they thould be general, he ought not m quit it, if there is a Probability of his maintaining it 'till hean be reliev'd by his own Army, unless he has Orders m retire upon the Approach of a superior Force: but if his Orders are Positive, and directs him to defend it to the last Man; he must obey them, even against a whole Army, without reflecting on the Consequences. But such Orders as these are never given, unless the Preservation of your Army, or the Country, depends on it: For as the Custom of War sotherwise, it would be deem'd Madness, and not Bravery, for a Party of Men to pretend to defend themselves in a Village, House, Church, or any Place that is not tolerably well fortified, against an Army, when they can't be supported by their own Troops, but must be taken when attack'd: But when an Officer is posted in a Place that can't be taken without Cannon, he is not to furrender it 'till he is regularhattack'd and a Breach made, or the Place so batter'd that it s no longer tenable, let them fend ever fo many threatning Summons of Hanging, or putting all to the Sword if they on't, fince the Rules of War don't authorize such Pieces of Cruelty. Besides, a generous Enemy will be so far from committing it, that they will esteem and value him for his Behaviour, if he does not persevere beyond what a prudent and brave Man ought; whereas, should he surrender before he is reduced to a Necessity of yielding, they will look upon him as a Man void of Courage and Conduct, and despise him as one whose Fear had betray'd him into an unworthy Action; and if an Officer is despis'd by the Enemy for his Conduct, as he certainly will, he furely deferves the highof Punishment from his Friends for it.

ARTICLE IV. Foraging-Parties.

These Parties are to secure the Foragers from being taken by the Enemy, or diffurb'd while they are Foraging.

Ac-

According to the Danger which your Foragers may run by the Place they are to forage in being near to, or remote from the Enemy, the Covering Parties are stronger of weaker.

In enclosed Countries, the Covering Parties consist for the most Part of Foot; but in a Champain Country, they are generally compos'd both of Horse and Foot. These Detachments march generally from the Camp the Night before the Army is to Forage, in order to possess themselves of the Posts which they are to guard, before the Foragers leave the Camp; and as soon as all the Foragers have got their Forage, and return'd with it to the Camp, the Covering Party does the same.

When the Army is large, or that they lye near the Enemy, they feldom fuffer the whole Army to Forage the fame Day but order one Wing to Forage one Day, and the other Wing another Day; in which case, the Wing which Fo rages fends Detachments to cover their own Foragers neither should they be allowed to fend above three Men of Tent from the Cavalry to Forage at a time, that they may have a fufficient Number to defend the Camp 'till the Fo ragers return: But lest the Enemy should take the Advantage of your foraging, and endeavour to attack your Camp it their Absence, upon the first notice of their March the Gene ral orders the Signal to be made for the Foragers to return which is generally the Firing of three Pieces of Cannon; or the hearing of which, the Foragers are to leave their Forag and repair immediately to their Regiments, and the Covering Parties are to return likewise to the Camp.

As these Detachments are posted between the Enemy and the Foragers, they are not to suffer any of the Foragers to pass beyond them, in search of Forage, less they should be taken; which Danger they would always run, without restecting on the Consequence, were they not detain'd from it by the Covering Parties: It is therefore the Duty of the Officers on these Commands to prevent their doing of it, and to compel them by Force to keep within the Bounds pro-

scribed them.

ARTICLE V. Convoys or Escorts.

These are to conduct the Bread-Waggons and other Provisions; Dry Forage, at the Opening or Closing of the Campaign; Ammunition, heavy Cannon or Field-Pieces; as also Persons

up. XVI.

run re

r o

th

ene

ach

e th th the

Fo arty

emy.

Day

othe Fo gers

of:

may

Fo

ntag

ip it ene

turn ; 0

orag

rerin

y and

ers to ild b

irhou fron

of th

, and s pro

ts.

r Pro Cam as als

erfons

ons of Distinction who are coming or going from the The Convoys are generally done by Detachment; but when are to pass near the Enemy's Garrisons, or liable to, be mepted by a considerable Body of their Troops, it is uto command entire Brigades both of Horse and Foot on Service; or in Lieu of Regiments of Foot, a sufficient Imber of Companies of Granadiers, for the greater Ex-

ARTICLE VI. Expeditions.

These Parties are sent into the Territories belonging to or ter the Protection of the Enemy, to destroy the Country, ray it under Contribution; as also to intercept their Conmt tremain long in a Place, lest the Enemy should fall muthem, they are generally compos'd of Cavalry, the Intry not being Expeditious enough for that fort of Service. They are likewise sent to fall upon the Enemy's Foragers. on in the Rear of their Camp; but as this is attended with mat deal of Danger and Difficulty, it is very feldom unetaken.

formerly these forts of Exploits were very much in vogue, uncularly with the French, who call it, La Petite Guerre: t of late they are much left off, fince they only ferve to ader the poor Inhabitants more miserable, or particular Micers, whose Horses or Bagages they take, uneasy in their Mairs, without contributing any thing to the Service, or the inging of the War the sooner to a Conclusion. Besides, by great Fatigue which it brings on your own Troops, a pat many Horses will not only be render'd unfit for immedi-Service, but entirely lost; which Reason is sufficient, in Opinion, to discontinue the Practice, at least not to use but on particular Occasions.



MARIA MARIA

CHAP. XVII.

General Rules for the Incamping of an Army with the Particulars for the Incamping of a Regiment of Horse and a Battalion of Foot and two Plans of the same.

ARTICLE I.



ROM the Colours of the first Line to the Colours of the fecond Line,
Allow'd in Front to each Squadron of Horse and Dragoons
Interval between each Squadron
To each Battalion of Foot
Interval between each Battalion

to di Salin da

These are the true Proportions when the Ground, on which the Army is to incamp, will allow of it; but when it won't they then contract the Whole, by taking 20 Paces from each Battalion, and sive or six from each Squadron, and so

Proportion from every Interval.

The 100 Paces given to a Battalion of Foot, tho' it confisted of 13 Companies, is sufficient; and 30 Paces allow to a Squadron composed of two Troops, is so too; but those Squadrons consisting of three Troops, as all the English were during the late War, the 30 Paces are not sufficient: For tho' a Squadron of two Troops should consist as many Private Men as a Squadron of three Troops, yethe Manner of Incamping is not the same; because a Squadron of two Troops form only one double Street; but Squadron of three Troops from one double and one sing Street: so that, according to the Rule of Proportion, who 30 Paces are given to a Squadron of three Troops, 45 Paces should be given to a Squadron of three Troops, otherwithese Squadrons will be very much straiten'd in their I campment, if they keep within the Bounds prescribed.

m

oot

Yard

40

3

10

which

won'

n eac

10

it co

llow

but le En

t fuf

nfift

ps, y

a Squ

, but

e ling

, who

herw

neir I

As the forreign Troops of Horse and Dragoons have a mater Number of private Men in each than ours, so their sundrons seldom consist of more than 2 Troops; and as of our Rules in War are taken from them, I suppole this was the Reason for the establishing of the above proportion of Ground to each Squadron, without confideing the Difference between the Incampment of a Squadron composed of 3 Troops, and those consisting only of two: and fince the Custom of giving no more Ground to every Smadron without Distinction, than 30 Paces, has so far nevail'd, as to become almost an establish'd Rule all over Europe; it would be Prefumption in me to imagine, that the w Remarks here made, will have fufficient Weight to pocure the Addition of 15 Paces to those Squadrons con-Hing of 3 Troops; for which Reason I have annex'd a Pan of the Incampment of a Regiment of Horse or Dragons of 9 Troops confifting of 3 Squadrons, in a different Manner from the usual Method, in order to remedy the Inconregioncy here complain'd of in the want of Ground.

As the usual Method is to incamp the Squadrons separatefrom one another, by leaving an Interval between each of 20 Paces; I have, in this Plan, incampt the 3 Squadrons together (much in the Form of a Battalion of Foot) and divided the 2 Intervals on the Right and Lest of the Center squadron, consisting of 40 Paces, amongst the 9 Troops, leating only the Intervals on the Flanks of the Regiment open

those of the first or second Line to pass through.

By the taking in of the said two Intervals (which were of m manner of Use but to divide the Squadrons, and give logues a greater Opportunity of robbing the Officers Tents in the Night-time, by having those Passages to the Front letween them, since those on the Flanks of the Regiment are sufficient to answer the whole Design and Intent of latervals, that of a Passage for the marching of Troops from one Line to another) the Regiment will then bave 130 laters in Front. to incamp on; that is, the 90 Paces allow'd for the 3 Squadrons, and the 40 Paces for the two Intervals; by the Addition of which, the Incampment of the Rediment will not be only much more commodious, but allow, in my Opinion, much more regular than by the usual Method, as I am perswaded, will plainly appear when the shoonveniency of the One, and the Conveniency of the other is set in a true Light, the which I shall endeavour to the in as concise a Manner as possible.

By

Cha

the O

日日記

T

-14 -10

fet

ď (

原后

1

Īω

正 11.11 五

FL

of th

T

Do

By the usual Method of incamping the Squadrons separate ly, the English one, which always confisted of 3 Troops, form one double, and one single Street, which makes three Lin of Tents, and three Lines of Horses; so that in a Regiment of Troops, they had 3 double Streets, and 3 single ones,

The Inconveniency of fingle Streets is very great; for when the Horses in those Streets break loose from the Pick ets, (which but too often happens, notwithstanning all the Care that can possibly be taken to prevent it) they frequently run amongst the Tents of the Troop in the Rear of the (there being nothing to stop them from doing it) and considerable Damage both to the Tents, and the Arms an Accourrements in them; as also frequently tread upon, an hure the Men who are assept in the Tents; but the least Eve that can happen by it, is that of Treading down, and Eating the Forage of the other Troop, and thereby occasioning Dieputes and Quarrels amongst the Men.

The double Streets are not attended with these Inconveniencies; for, by drawing a Cord a-cross the Front and Resof each Street, when the Horses break loose, they can't get to the Tents or Forage, for the Mangers which are oboth Sides of the Street; nor out of the Line, for the Cord which are fasten'd a-cross both Ends of the Street; by which means the Tents and Forage are not only secure, but the Horses likewise; for by their getting out of the Line the are sometimes entirely lost, or not sound again in a Da or two, when they happen to break loose in the Night.

By Incamping according to the Method of the annex' Plan, the above Inconveniencies of fingle Streets, will be in a great measure, avoided, fince the Whole will consist bu of 4 double Streets, and only one fingle one, even in Regiment of 9 Troops; but to those Regiments which con fift of 6, 8, 10 or 12 Troops, their Incampment will a be form'd of double Streets; whereas by the other Metho a Regiment of 6 Troops had 2 double and 2 fingle Streets but by this, they will only have 3 double Streets, as will as pear by the manner of incamping the 6 Troops on the Right of this Plan; and the former Method of incampin the Squadrons separately, will be seen by the 3 Troops of the Left of it, which confifts of one double, and one fing Street; fo that this Plan will shew the Form of both Me thods in fo plain a Manner, that every one may comprehend with the greatest Ease, what is here treated of, and thereb fee the Advantage which this way of incamping has over m

in

fo ick

ner

an

an

Ev

tin

Di

en

Re

0 00

ord

hic t th

the

Da

ex'

bu in

con

ll a

tho

eets

ll ap

pin

ps of

Me

hend ereb

th

former, without giving the Reader any further Trouble; in if the Reasons here made use of, and the Regularity of tone compar'd with the other, are not sufficient to convince of the Truth of it, the endeavouring at it, by producing the Arguments, might tire his Patience, but not gain upon keason, and consequently render the Attempt fruitless.

Tho' the Incampment of a Regiment of Horse or Draby this Plan, appears like that of a Battalion of Foot, it is not fo in Effect; for the Troops which compose several Squadrons are continued in their former Stati-The 3 Troops on the Right being those of the first bairon; the 3 on the Left, those of the second Squadron; the 3 in the Center, those of the third Squadron; so that Squadrons are kept entire as before, and therefore can't bebiefted to on that Score: and the' the Officers are inant regularly in the Rear of the Regiment, yet their Tents be pitched in the Rear of the Squadrons to which they ling; fo that the Alteration here made, does not touch one effential Point, in my Opinion, but only reduces the whole to a more convenient and regular Form than the mmon Method of incamping the Squadrons of a Regiment frate from one another: and tho' it is necessary that there hold be Intervals left between every Squadron when they ndrawn out in Line of Battel, yet I can't fee any Reason wheir being incampt so, fince they take up the same Space Ground as before, and that the Intervals on the Right and of every Regiment are left open and free, which are theint for the Service required by them.

ARTICLE II.

The Troopers Tents must be larger than those for the lot, that they may hold the Horse Accourrements, to pretree them from the Weather; for which Reason they are recally about 7 Foot broad, and 9 Foot deep, though something they are larger: however, the Size here mention'd is section to contain 5 Men, and all their Accourrements.

The Quarter-Masters Tents are pitched at the Head of the Troop, with the Door opening to the Front, as those the Serjeants of Foot do.

The Troopers Tents face the Streets, as the Foot do, their Horfes stand with their Heads towards the Tent-

Ch

12

Fn

80

5

51

-

They generally allow 4 Foot for the Breadth of ever

Horse, and 10 Foot for his Length.

As 4 Foot is allowed for the Breadth of every Horse when there are 5 Men in a Tent, the distance from the Front-Pole of one Troop-Tent to another must be 20 Foot and when there are but 4 Men in a Tent, the Distance between Pole and Pole must be 16 Foot; and so in Proportion, according to the Number of Men in each Tent: there fore a Troop consisting of 50 Horses must have a Streeze Foot long; according to which Number in each Troop the following Plan is calculated.

The 130 Yards or Paces in Front are divided among

the 9 Troops as follows.

For the Tents of 9 Troops, allowing 9 Foot or 3 Pa
ces to each

Four Double Streets, at 18 Paces each

One Single Street

Three Back Streets, for the laying of the Forage, at 6?

Paces each

The 18 Paces for the Double Street is divided to the tw Troops as follows:

From the Tent Doors to the Mangers, 3 Foot each Troop

For the pitching of each Manger in Breadth, 3 Foot
Standing for the Length of a Horse, 10 Foot, which to two Troops is

Remaining in the Center of the Street, between the Standing of the Horses of both Troops

Division of the Single Street of 13 Paces

Between the Tents and the Manger
Space for the Breadth of the Manger
From the Manger, for the Length of the Horses, 10
Foot
Street in the Rear of the Horses

For the laying of the Forage of the Center Troop of the Second or Left Squadron

VI

ever

Horse m th Foot stance ropor there Street roop

ong

Pasca

2

2

6

7

18

Paces

1

1

3

3

Th

The Depth of the Regiment, from the Front to the Rear, sollows.

	Paces
from the Standards and Kettle Drums to the Front of the Quarter-Mafter's Tents	6
from the Front of the Quarter-Master's Tents to the Side next the Rear of the Troopers 10th or last	
from the foresaid Side of the last Troop Tent to the	20
front Pole of the Subaltern's Tents to the Front Pole of the Captain's	20
front Pole of the Captain's Tents to the Front Pole of the Lieutenant-Colonel's and Major's	24
from the Front Pole of the Lieutenant-Colonel's and Major's Tent to the Front Pole of the Colonel's	16
From the Front Pole of the Colonel's Tent to the Front ? Pole of the Staff-Officer's Tents	18
from the Front Pole of the Staff-Officer's Tents to the Front Pole of the Grand-Sutlers	50
from the Front of the Grand-Sutlers to the Front of 3 the Petit-Sutlers and Butchers	50
Sutlers and Butchers	255

The Standards and Kettle-Drums are to be placed oppoin to the Back-Street of the Third or Center Squadron, as mark'd in the Plan. The Standard-Guard Tents are to be piched betwixt the Standards and the Head of the said Back street.

As it is usual for the Subalterns of Horse to have a Tent sch, I have therefore placed two in the Rear of each Troop; and tho' by the former Method of incamping they were generally pitch'd in a Line with the Troopers Tents, and seed towards the Streets as they did, yet, in this Plan, I have placed them according to the Manner of the Foot, by soing them towards the Captains Tents with a Street of a Paces between them: and as the Officers of the Cavalry have their Horses stand in the Rear of their Tents, I have therefore mark'd the Places where they are to stand; and tho' the Subalterns Horses are placed in the Rear of their Tents, in they may be incampt in a Line with the Troop-Horses, the commanding Officer thinks proper; the doing of R 2

which will have this Advantage in it, that if they break to they can neither get out of the Line, nor amongst the Te or Forage; whereas by standing in the Rear of their of Tents, as mark'd in the Plan, they can do both.

The Quarter-Masters Horses always stand in a Line we those of the Troop, but the Field-Officers, Captains Staff-Officers Horses, in the Rear of their own Tents,

The Size of the Officers Tents are not fix'd, fome I giments having them of one Size and fome of another: ho ever every Regiment is regular in this Particular, that all officers of the same Rank are obliged to have their Ten of the same Dimensions, and made in the same Form.

The Size of the Troop-Tents is sufficient for those of Quarter-Master's, only that they are allowed to have the a little higher, with a small Marqui to throw off the Ra

As the Subalterns of the Horse have each a Tent, the need not be above a Foot larger than the Quarter-Master that is 8 Foot broad, and 9 Foot deep; and the Captain's Foot broad, and 10 deep. The Lieutenant-Colonel's a Major's Tents, about a Foot larger than the Captain's. Colonel has generally 2 Tents, as mark'd in the Plan, a Di ing-Tent, and Bedchamber-Tent. The Bedchamber-Te about the Size of the Captain's; and that to dine in, is con monly 12 Foot broad, and 14 Deep.

As the Subalterns of the Foot lie two in a Tent, the

should be as large as the Captain's.

The Dimentions here given for the Officers Tents, me be thought by fome too small; and if they were only to a camp in *Hide-Park*, I should be of the same opinion; but those Gentlemen who think so, only make one Recampaign, and I am convinced, they will wish them rath of a less Size than a greater.

The Circles which are drawn in the Plan between the Grand and Petit-Sutlers, are mark'd for the Kitchens, or Plan where the private Men are to dress their Victuals: They are

made in the following manner.

First, you draw a Circle or Square on the Ground what Dimension you please, after that you dig a Trench Ditch round it of about 3 or 4 Foot broad, and 2 deep, which it will resemble the Bottom of a Cock-pit. What this is done, you are then to cut Holes or Niches in a Side of the Circle or Square of Earth which is less fan ing within the Ditch. These Holes may be about a Fo

V k

ho ho

of the Rai the Her in's a Di Con

the

to it

Place Place

und nch ep, Wh in t flan Fo

e, the upper Part of which should be within 3 or 4 s of the Surface, from whence they are to cut small s of 4 Inches Diameter, down to the great ones, in the Fire is to be made, and the Heat conveyed thro's small Holes to the Bottom of the Kettles which are d on the Top of them. These Fire-Places may be within 3 or 4 Foot of one another, quite round the said the or Square; and if you erect one of these Kitchens, which I mean an entire Circle or Square) for each Troop Company, they need not be larger than what will contast many Fire-Places as you have Tents Pitched for your op or Company; for as all the Men who lie in a Tent of one Mess, every Mess must therefore have a Firet, that they may have no excuse for their not boiling Pot every Day.

here are several Advantages by making of the Kitchens

re directed.

rst, A very little Fuel will serve to Dress their Victuals; sthe Fire-Places are open at the Side, like the Mouth Oven, the Air which enters there forces all the Heat up mall Hole to the Bottom of the Kettle, and consequently it very soon; and as the Kettle covers the said Hole, Rain can't come to extinguish it, or create the Men any ble in keeping of it in.

fire's being blown amongst the Tents or Forage: For if Men only lay a Sod or Turf on the Top of the Hole in they take off the Kettle, it can't be dispers'd by the d, which, without this Consideration, they ought to do,

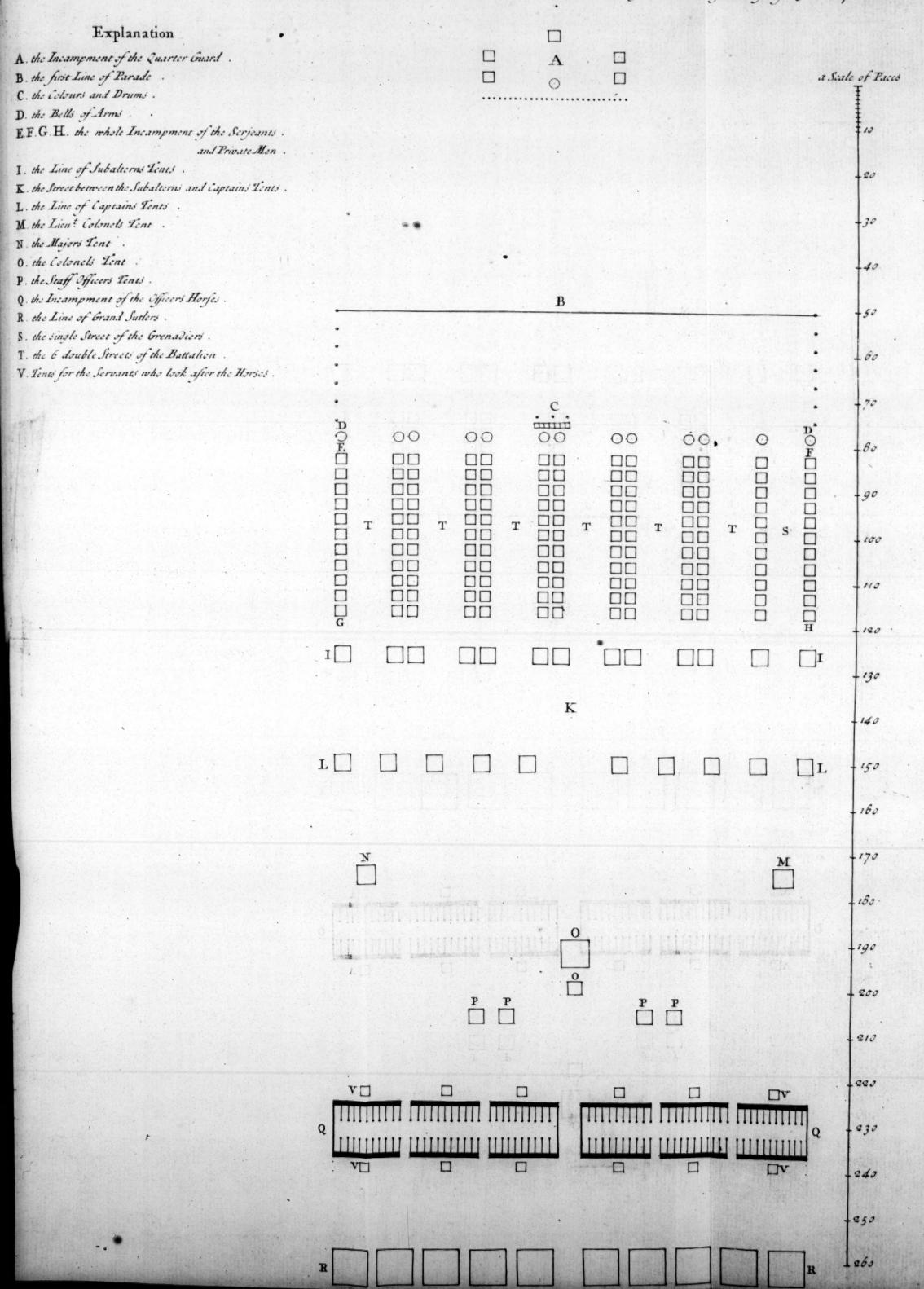
der to keep the Fire-Places dry.

birdly, The Cutting of a Ditch round the Kitchens, does only enable them to make the Fire-Places, but likewise ents the Fire from catching hold of the Stubble or Grass, th, in very Dry or Hot Weather, it is apt to do, and enter the Burning of your Camp, which I have often seen the want of this Precaution. Besides, the opposite Bank to Ditch serves as a Seat for the Men who are employ'd ressing the Victuals.

mer, the Officers can with a great deal of Ease look into Conduct and Oeconomy of their Men, and oblige the se-Messes to boil the Pot every Day, for the Reasons already

foned in the 3d Article of the 13th Chapter.

The Ichnography of the Incampment of a Battalion of Foot conficting of 13 Companies .



ha Fi ca th le

hap. XVII. Military Discipline.	247
om the Front-Pole of the Staff-Officer's Tents to the	} 20
first-Line of the Officers Horses, lowed for two Lines of Horses, which are to In- camp after the manner of the Cavalry, om the Incampment of the Horses to the Front of the Grand-Sutlers,	} 12
om the Incampment of the Horses to the Front of the Grand-Sutlers,	3 20
om the Front of the Grand-Sutlers to the Petit-Sut- lers and Butchers,	3 50
	300

The Colours and Drums are to be Placed before the two meter Companies of the Battalion, as Mark'd in the

The Quarter-Guard is to be Drawn up directly opposite to Colours, and to Front towards the Regiment, and not

extend from Right to Left above 30 Paces.

The Officer's Tent of the Quarter-Guard (which is made the Size and Form of those for the Serjeants) is to Face wards the Battalion, and those for the Men towards one other: that is, those Pitch'd on the Right are to Face to eleft, and those Pitch'd on the Lest are to Face to the other. The Quarter-Guard Bell of Arms is to be Pitch'd rectly opposite to the Officer's Tent-Door; and when the len stand to their Arms, they are to draw up in a Single and before the Bell of Arms, as Describ'd by the Lincark'd with Points or Dots in the Plan.

If the Officers Horses are Incamp'd in a Double Line in Rear, as Describ'd by the Plan, they will be in no Dantof losing them when they break loose from the Pickets; by the Servants fastening of Cords cross the several was, it will effectually prevent their getting out of the

ne in which they Stand.

The Kitchens for the Private Soldiers and the Incampnt of the Petit-Sutlers and Butchers could not be inferted the Plan, the Sheet not being large enough to contain the hole; but as they are Mark'd in that of the Horse, I pre-

me it will be sufficient.

The Houses-of-Offices for the Front-Line must be advantely beyond the Quarter-Guard at least 50 Paces; and those the Rear-Line about the same Distance in the Rear of the tit-Sutlers and Butchers.

There is a Serjeant of a Regiment and a Man of a Comy appointed to affift the Quarter-Master, during the Cam-R 4

Cha

Offic

Try

Punit

T these that

T

all th

atter

or K

Gua

mla

foo

and

com

are

fri

m

dr dr

Tr

k

100

Dr

20

G

Li

th

2

6

paign, in marking out and keeping the Camp Clean; as all for the Performing of all other things which appertain their Duty, such as the Receiving of Ammunition-Bread, a any other Provisions which shall be distributed to their Regiments; all Ammunition, Working-Tools, Carriages, Cloath and Accourrements; for which reason they do no othe Duty during the Campaign, except on such where the Regiments mount Entire.

The Serjeant is call'd the Quarter-Master's-Serjeant, and the Soldiers the Camp-Colour-Men. Each Camp-Colour-Man carries either a Spade or a Hatchet, which are deliver's

to them from the Train.

When the Army marches, the Quarter-Masters and the Camp-Colour-Men are order'd before to take up the Ground on which they are to Incamp; and as soon as the Quarter Master-General, or his Deputies have given them their Ground, they are to mark out the Incampment of their Regiment, and when that is done, they are to make their Necessary Houses, and to get them finish'd, if possible, by the time the Regiments arrive, that the Camp may be kept Sweet and Clean; for which Reason the Centries must have strid Orders not to suffer any one to ease himself any where else; and when any Soldier, Servant or Sutler, is sound offending therein, the Commanding Officer should order him to be severely Punished.

When the Army continues any time in Camp, new House of-Offices are to be made every fixth or seventh Day, and the old ones carefully Stop'd up. The Camp-Colour-Men are likewise to open a Communication betwixt Regiment and Regiment, of a sufficient Breadth for a Grand-Division to march in Front, tho' they should Remain but one Night in a Camp; but when that Work proves too much for them to Persorm, the Majors must order them to be relieved by other

Men, and fee the Communications made.

The Quarter-Masters and their Serjeants are to see that the Streets are swept clean every Morning, and that the Butchers and Sutlers bury their Garbidge and Filth every Day; and that all dead Horses are immediately Buried, that the Air may be kept from Insection. They are likewise to Examine the Meat and Drink which is fold by the Butcher and Sutlers, that they may not vend unwholsome Provisions and whenever they find any bad Provision, or any one at tempting to Sell it, they are immediately to seize both the Provisions and the Owner, and to acquaint the Commandian

Officer with it, that he may give Directions for their being Iry'd by a Court-Martial, in order to their being severely Punish'd for the same.

The Major of every Regiment is to inspect nicely into all the Particulars, and not rely wholly on Reports, but to see

hat they are punctually Executed.

VII

alf

n t

1, 0

Regi

oath

othe

Cegi-

and

lour

ver'd

l th

ound

rter

thei Re

Ne

the week

elfe :

e fe

ula

the

are

and n to

nt in

n to

othe

tha

th

ver

tha

fe to

cher

ons

e at

the th

din

ffice

They are likewise to look into, and regulate the Prices of all the Provisions which are sold by the Sutlers and Butchers attending their Regiments, that the Soldiers may not be imposed upon. Neither are they to admit of any Tents, Hutts or Kitchens in the Front, or any thing but the Quarter-Guard, and the Necessary-Houses.

The Quarter-Masters are to be very exact in Entring replarly in their Books, all the Ammunition-Bread or Proviions, and all manner of Stores which they shall Receive for and Distribute to their Regiments, that they may give an Ac-

ount of the feveral Particulars when required.

ARTICLE IV.

The Reveille is never Beat the Day the Army Marches, mess particularly Ordered, but the General instead of it.

At the Beating of the General, the Officers and Soldiers

in to Dress and Prepare themselves for the March.

At the Beating of the Affembly or Troop, they are to trike all their Tents, pack up and load the Baggage, and and it with a proper Guard, to the Place where the Whole appointed to affemble. After this, the Quarter and Standard-Guards, and the Rear-Guards are to be Drawn in, the Troops and Companies to Draw up in their Streets, and to k Told off, that they may be ready to Form into Squadron and Pottelian at the part Signal

and Battalion at the next Signal.

At the Hour appointed for the Army to March, the Drummers are to Beat a March at the Head of the Line; and as foon as they cease Beating, the Squadrons and Battalions March out and Form at the Head of their Incampment, Compleat their Files, and Tell off the Battalions by Grand or Sub-Divisions, as it shall be Ordered: And when the March is beat a second time on the Right or Lest of the Line, all the Squadrons and Battalions are to Wheel towards the Flank, where the March was beat, and begin the March a soon as wheeled.

The Horse have different Terms for the two first Signals for the March of an Army. The Beating the General is called

Cha

of B

her t

that

com

Hor

1

low:

nior

1

COD

the

firf

the

the

in 1

wh

ho

70

to

In

œ

ta

th R

8

t

2

t

1

called by the Horse, Sounding to Boot and Saddle; and the Assembly is, Sounding to Horse: However in the General Order given out to the Army, they are called by the Terms which are used by the Foot.

The usual Time for the Regimental Quarter-Masters, the Camp-Colour-Men, and the Escort to Assemble, is, at the

beating of the General.

When the Army is to March towards the Right, they then Parade at the Head of the Right Wing of Horse; and if they March to the Lest, they are to Parade at the Head of the Lest Wing; but when the Army is to March directly towards the Front, the Camp-Colour-Men, &c. Parade then at the Head of the First Line of Foot. These are the General Rules laid down for the Assembling of the Camp-Colour-Men, and as soon as they are Paraded, they are to March with the Quarter-Master-General to the Place where the Army is to Incamp.

ARTICLE V.

A little before the Opening of the Campaign, it is the Duty of the Quarter-Master-General to Draw out on Paper the Incampments of the Army; in the doing of which he is to have a due Regard to the Seniority of the several Corps; as also in Placing the General Officers to their Commands according to their Rank: After which he is to Present it to

the General in Chief for his Approbation.

This Plan, or Draught of the Incampment, is likewise called The Line of Battel; fince the Troops always Incamp in the same Order in which they draw up in the Line, that, if the Enemy, by a sudden March, should endeavour to Surprize you in your Camp, you may be ready to enter upon Action as soon as you are Formed at the Head of your Incampment: And though the General may think it necessary to alter the Disposition of his Troops when he is going to Attack the Enemy, yet the Incampment of the Army is not Changed on that Account, but remains as at first Fixed, unless other Reasons induce him to it.

In Forming the Incampment, the Troops are divided into Brigades, and the Brigades into two Lines, which are diffinguished by the First and Second, or Front and Rear

Lines.

A Brigade of Foot generally confifts of 4 Battalions, and that of Horse or Dragoons of 6 Squadrons; but as the Term

VII

d the

nera

the

t the

they

and

ectly trade

the mp-

e to

here

the

aper

ne is

rps;

inds

t to

wile

amp

hat,

Sur-

pon

In-

ary

to

not

un-

ded

are

ear

and

rm

of

Battalion and Squadron is frequently used, the Number each confists of is not mentioned, it is to be understood, that, in the general way of speaking, a Battalion of Foot is computed at 500 Men in Rank and File; and a Squadron of Horse and Dragoons at 150.

The Method of forming the Foot into Brigades, is as follows: The feveral Battalions are divided, according to Se-

nority, into four equal Parts or Divisions.

The first Part is to consist of the eldest Battalions; the second Part of the next eldest; the third Part of those next to the second; and the sourth Part of the youngest Battalions.

The Battalions being thus divided into four Classes, the second Brigade is composed of the eldest Battalion of each Class; the second Brigade of the Second Battalion of each Class; the third Brigade of the Third Battalion of each; and so on in this manner 'till the Whole are formed into Brigades; by which Method, there will be a Battalion of every Class in ach Brigade, and thereby intermix the old and young Battalions: For, as entire Brigades are frequently Detached, unless they were mixed in this Manner, One composed of sour young Battalions might be commanded on an Affair of Importance, and, for want of Experience, sail of Success; but by intermixing the experienced and unexperienced Battalions together, that Danger is in a great measure avoided; which, in my Opinion, shews the Method not only Right, but Necessary.

The Battalions draw up in Brigade, thus: The eldest Battalion is placed on the Right of the Brigade, the second Battalion on the Lest of it, and the two youngest in the Center, the third Battalion being on the Right of the fourth. This Rule, of placing the eldest Battalion on the Right of the Brigade, is only observed by the Brigades which are posted in the Right Wing; but those in the Lest draw up the Reverse, the eldest Battalion being posted on the Lest of the Brigade, and the second Battalion on the Right of it, and so from Lest

to Right.

When the Brigades are formed, they are divided into two

Lines, as follows:

The first and second Brigades are posted on the Flanks of the Front Line; and the third and sourth Brigades on the Flanks of the Rear Line.

The fifth and fixth Brigades are placed in the Front Line, on the Infide of the first and second; and the seventh and eighth Brigades are placed in the Rear Line, on the Inside of

1

the

Cha

T

other

natio

diffir

Rule

Brig. T

ame of H

geth

gime rally

Ì

in fo

1

Foo

Brig

rect

the

as t

but

Co

Ex

of

0

Pa

to

tel

20

70

m

Q d B B B

the third and fourth; and so on in this manner 'till they are all formed in both Lines, the youngest Brigades drawing up in the Center: For as the Flanks of the Lines are more liable to the Attacks of an Enemy, than the Center, by their lying open, they are esteemed the Posts of Honour, and therefore belong to the eldest Brigades; but as the Front Line is more exposed than the Rear, since it begins the Attack, while the other only Sustains it, the Lest Flank of the Front Line is, undoubtedly, the second Post of Honour, and therefore belongs to the second Brigade; so that the Right Flank of the Rear Line can only be looked upon as the third Post of Honour, and the Lest Flank of the said Line as the fourth.

This is the Method when the Troops which compose the Army belong to one Prince; but as the Army in Flanders contisted of Troops of several Nations, every Nation had a distinct Post in the Line; so that the first or eldest Nation had all their Troops on the Right; the second Nation had all theirs on the Lest; the third had theirs on the Lest of the first; the sourth on the Right of the second, and the fisth (if they consisted of so many Nations) had all theirs in the Center. And the this may seem, at first View, contrary to the soregoing Rule, yet, by looking on every Nation only as a Brigade, (which must be done in this Case) it will be sound, in every Respect, conformable to it.

The Troops of each Nation are generally divided in both Lines, that those in the first may be sustained by their own Troops; as also that each Nation may share equally of the Danger: For as the Front Line is more exposed, in Battels, than the Rear, the placing the Troops of any one Nationen-

Occasions; it being reasonable to conclude that their Loss will be greater than those in the Rear Line, whenever they engage.

The first Nation posts their eldest Brigade on the Right of the Front Line, and their second Brigade on the Right of the Rear Line. Their third and sourth Brigades are placed on the Lest of the first and second Brigades, and so on by Seniority 'till the two youngest Brigades are drawn up on the Lest of their own Troops in both Lines, the youngest Posts being those which lie nearest the Center.

The second Nation draws up their two eldest Brigades on the Lest Flank of both Lines, and their two next Brigades on the Right of the first and second Brigades, the Lest being with them the Post of Honour; so that their youngest Brigades

close the Right of their own Troops.

The

The other Nations observe the same Rule, according as

hev are posted in the Right or Left Wing.

Tho' the Horse and Dragoons now Roll with one another upon every Command, and go all under the Denomination of Cavalry, yet in the Line of Battle they are kept in diffinct Bodies, and placed in separate Brigades; it being a Rule never to mix the Horse and Dragoons in the same Brigade.

The Regiments of Horse are formed into Brigades in the same manner as the Battalions of Foot; and tho' a Regiment of Horse consists of several Squadrons, yet they are kept together in the same Brigade, and never divided, unless a Rejment should contain more Squadrons than a Brigade is generally composed of, as most of the Imperial Regiments do.

The same Rule is observed by the Regiments of Dragoons,

informing them into Brigades, as the Horse are.

The Horse are Divided and Incampt on the Flanks of the Foot of both Lines, and posted according to Seniority of Brigades, or Nations, on the Right and Lest, as above di-

nected for the Foot.

II.

are

up

12-

ly-

re-

13

ile

IS.

igs

ear

ur,

he

ers

1 2

ad

all

he

(if

n-

he

1

ıd,

th

wn

he

ls,

n-

ITY

vill

ge.

of

he

on Se-

the

fts

on

des

ng

des

he

The Dragoons are Divided and Incampt on the Flanks of the Horse of both Lines, and posted according to Seniority, whe Horse are; so that the Dragoons are placed on the Extemity of the Lines, and have thereby the Post of the Horse; but this was not given them by way of Pre-eminence, but Conveniency: For as the Dragoons, by their first Institution, were only Mounted upon little light Horses, and design'd for Expeditious Foot, they were therefore posted on the Flanks of the Army, that they might be ready to March on every Occasion, such as Convoys, covering Parties, securing of falles or Fords, or Expeditions of the like Nature, in order to fave the Horse for the most Important Acts of War, Batth; in which the Cavalry have so great a Share, that they at generally either Gained or Lost by them; there being try few Instances of the Foot having gained a Battel after their Cavalry were Beat.

These are the General Rules for the forming an Incamp-

ment, or Line of Battle.

In the Incamping of an Army, the first Point which the Quarter-Master-General is to consider of, is the Security of the Camp, that it may not be liable to any sudden Surprize, by leaving the Flanks open and exposed to the Enemy; for which end, it is usual to cover them with Towns, Villages, Woods, Morasses, or Rivers, when such can be met with

Cha

eceil

OHO

T

Horl

therr

Gro

If

Infer

unde

ed b

with

tio

Efec

Viet

Lin

Dep

the

by '

Arr

nk

Gra

and

nls

to f

ther

Lio

An

alw

COL

of

due

que

Ma

0

where the Army is to Incamp, that the Enemy may not be able to approach the Flanks without Difficulty, or march a confiderable Body of Men to Attack them there.

The fecond Confideration, is to have Wood, Water and Forage near the Camp, for the Conveniency of the Men and

Horses.

In the Incamping an Army, the Front is to be always to-wards the Enemy; but the Troops which Befiege a Town, Incamp with their Front from the Town, that they may be ready to draw out and oppose any Succours which the Enemy may endeavour to Throw into it. Besides, as the Guard of the Trenches is always in proportion to the Strength of the Garrison, the Rear of the Camp is in no Danger of Sortie from the Town. This is the general Rule; but when a Town is Besieged, where the Besiegers have nothing to apprehend from without, by having only the Garrison to Encounter, (as is now the Case of those before Gibralter) I pressure they will then Incamp with their Front towards the Town.

As the General Officers claim a Right to have House affigned them for their Quarters, when Towns or Villages lie near the Camp; one of the Quarter-Master-General's Deputies is always appointed to take up Quarters for them; in the doing of which, he is to have a particular Regard to the Rank of each; and as soon as he has fixed upon the Houses, he writes their Names on the Doors, and puts their Respective Quarter-Masters in Possession of them, every General Officer being to send one with him for that Purpose.

The Train is generally Incampt in the Rear of the second Line, and upon an Eminence, that, if any Accident should happen to the Powder, the Army may receive no Damage

by it.

Most Nations have a Regiment belonging to the Train composed of Gunners and Motrosses, and Commanded by Artillery-Officers; which Regiment never Draws up in the Line, or Rolls with the Army, but does only Duty on the Train, and always Incamps and Marches with it, and a

Sieges they affift in Erecting the Batteries.

Tho' the Train attends on the Army, yet it is a separate and distinct Body, under the Direction of their own Officen and Independent of every General in the Army, but the Commander in Chief, (always understanding by Commander in Chief, the Officer commanding in Chief a Body of Men with whom they shall be Detached) whose Orders they receive

Officers of the Day, as the rest of the Army does.

There is always an Escort, which generally consists of Horse, Commanded with the Camp-colour-Men, to secure them from the Enemy while they are Marking out the

Ground, and 'till the Army arrives.

711

t be

ch a

and

and

to

wn.

be

my

do

the

tie

n a

ap-

En-

pre-

the

af

lic

pu-

the

ank

tive

icer

ond

ould

age

rain

by

the

the

d at

rate

the

nan-

hey

CIVE

If it is only a common Escort, commanded by an Officer Inserior to the Quarter-Master-General, the Escort is then under the Direction of the Quarter-Master-General, and posted by him as he shall think proper: But as considerable Bodies of Troops, Commanded by General Officers, are Detached with the Camp-colour-Men when they apprehend any Oppotion from the Enemy, the General who Commands the

Efort has the fole Direction and Posting of it.

When the Quarter-Mafter-General has taken a thorough View of the Ground, and fixed the Right and Left of both Lines, he generally leaves the rest to be performed by his Deputies, and goes with a Party of Horse to Reconnoitre the Country which lies towards the Enemy, in order to see by what Roads they can approach the Camp, that he may requaint the General with the several Particulars as soon as he Arrives, for his giving the necessary Directions to the Generals of the Day, to post a sufficient Number of Men on the Grand-Guard and Out-Posts, for the Security of the Camp, and the Places where they are to be posted, which the Generals of the Day are to see done.

The Quarter-Master-General is to Reconnoitre the Country whind out Forage for the Army, and to fix the Places where they are to Forage from time to time; as also to Regulate the Morts, and the Places to post them in, to secure the Foragers: And when either of the Wings, or the Whole is order'd to Forage, the Quarter-Master-General, or one of his Deputies, is always to go along with the Officer who Commands the Estort, in order to Conduct him to his Post, and to inform him of the Situation of the Country, that he may make a proper Disposition of his Men, both for keeping the Foragers within the Bounds, and to prevent their being sallen upon by the

Lnemy.

The Quarter-Master-General is to provide Guides to Conthat the Lines, Artillery and Baggage, when the Army Marches; as also for the Foragers, and all Detachments and

Out-Posts that may require them.

In great Armies there is always a Company of Guides Effabilded for that Purpose; which Company is under the Care and Direction of the Quarter-Master-General. CHAP.

Ch

ny oth Mi

Ha

Yol

WO

EV

ver Ex

We del

T

fro the R

Befide

ROPH CONTROLL OF HEAD CONTROLL OF THE

C H A P. XVIII. Duty of the Troops at a Siege.



For a Gabion

N this Chapter I shall only treat of those thing which relate to the Work-men and the Guardo the Trenches, with some other Particulars necessary to be known by those Officers who have no been on such important Commands, in order to give them an Idea of their Duty.

As the Method of carrying on the Approaches is the Duty of the Ingineers, whoever would be informed of those Particulars must consult the Works of Mr. Vauban, Mr. Cohorne, and

others who have excelled in that Art.

ARTICLE I.

ARTICLE I.			-
The Foot are not only commanded as a Gu Trenches, but are likewise employed in the Ra Works, and the making of the several Materials re as Gabions, Hurdles, Saucissons, Fascines and Pi the doing of which the Men are regularly paid or every two Days at farthest, according to the	ifing quire cke eve	ed, f ets: ry D	the uch For
Prices.		777	
Each Workman in the Trenches had per Night	0	0	9
Those who were employed on the Batteries	25		
had each in the 24 Hours,	(•	*
The Voluntiers who were retained during the Siege, for to fill up the Ditch of the Town, laying of a Bridge over it, or such dangerous Enterprizes, had each every 24 Hours, whether employed or not,		2	6
Wool-pack Voluntiers, when employed, had each	10	5	0
For the Planting of a Gabion, and filling it with			
Earth, when the Approaches were carried on by		0	6
Demi-fapp,	(
For the making of a Fascine and Picket		0	1
For a Sauciffon	0	0	6
그렇지 않고 그래요 하는 사람들이 그리고 있는데 이렇게 되었다면 하는데 되었다면 사람들이 되었다면 하는데 되었다면 하는데 되었다면 그렇게 그렇게 그렇게 되었다면 그렇게	0	0	9
For a Hurdle	0	0	1

VIII

hing

ard o

e no

er to

uty o

ulars

and

o the

of the

fuch

For

Day,

wing

d.

8

0

Besides the Charges abovemention'd, there are a great mamore which cannot be regularly stated; such as Miners; others employed in Sinking of Wells or Pits to find out the Mines of the Enemy, for which they are fometimes paid Half a Pistole an Hour; others hired to reconnoitre the Breach, and fathom the Ditch, if it is wet. When some desperate Attack is to be made on a little Out-work where a few Men at only required, they generally do it by such who will go voluntarily, offering a Reward to each Man. Those who work in the Sap have likewise extraordinary Wages; with greral others of the like Nature, of which this Nation is very little acquainted, because the Dutch were at the whole Expences of the Sieges during the late War; and as they were exceeding Chargeable, the Towns, when taken, were diver'd into their Hands in order to reimburse them; for which Reason, the Field-Deputies of the States appointed a Treasurer at every Siege for the paying of the Workmen, &c. from whom the Majors of Brigade received the Money for those of their own Nation, and gave it to the Majors of the Reiments, that they might clear their Men.

A Copy of the daily Orders (in which is inserted the Number of Workmen of all kinds, as also the Number of Fasines, &c. to be made by every Regiment) was deliver'd to the Treasurer, that he might know what was to be paid; which Orders, together with the Receipts of the Majors of Bigade, were to him sufficient Vouchers for the Payment of the Money. These Payments were made every Day, or every two Days at farthest, without which the Works would up but slowly on: For though the Men so employed run a great deal of Danger, as well as undergo a great deal of satigue, yet the Desire of getting Money does not only soften the Labour, but makes the Danger also appear less; but unless the Men are punctually paid, it will be impossible for the

Officers to keep them to their Duty.

The Men who are employed in the making the Trenches, begin to work as foon as it is dark, and leave off at break of Day; but when a Work is not finish'd, and that the going on with it in the Day-time may be done without exposing the Men to too much Danger, fresh Detachments are ordered on when the others leave off, and go off at Night when the others come on; so that they are only to work 12 Hours, or the length of the Night or the Day. It is the same with those who work on the Batteries; but as the Canton of the Besseged fire constantly at the Batteries, in order

F

20

fo

6

u

112

h

T

20

21

P

m

CZ

th

E

Sie

Ca

G

25

N

fre

N

of fit

0

to dismount the Guns planted on them, and thereby often damage both the Parapet and Platforms, they are therefore obliged to keep a sufficient Number of Workmen in a conflant Readiness to repair them, at whatever time it shall happen; which Men are generally continued on that Command 24 Hours, and are therefore paid double Wages, which is one Shilling and sour Pence each.

The working Parties are always done by Detachment, every Battalion at the Siege, except those which mount the Guard of the Trenches, giving an equal Number of Men to the Works, with the same Number of Officers and Serjeants to command them as is usually order'd for other Duties. Drummers are never commanded with these Detach-

ments.

The Workmen march without Arms, and carry only such Tools as are proper for the Works on which they are to be employ'd, such as Pick-Axes and Spades; and the Officer who command them have only their Swords and Scarss; and notwithstanding these Commands are both painful and dangerous, yet they do not pass for Duties of Honour, but only those of Fatigue; and therefore begins with the Youngest, as the others do with the Eldest. But before we proceed further, it will be proper to mention the necessary Preparation of Materials, which are to be made by the Foot, before the Trenches are opened.

As foon as the Town is invested, Bills and Hatchets and deliver'd, by the Train, to the several Regiments for the making of Fascines, &c. on the receiving of which, the Quarter Masters are to give Receipts, that those which are not returned to the Train at the End of the Siege may be charged

to the Regiments which do not.

Orders are then given for each Regiment to make such Number of Fascines, Pickets, Saucissons, Gabions and Hurdles, in which the prope Dimensions of each is particlarly specified, for the information of those who are to make them the common Proportions of which I shall here insert, and are as follows.

A Fascine, is only a Faggot made of the Green-Branches of Trees, about six Foot long, with four or five Bindings, an of the Thickness of a common Faggot. They are not only used in the Parapet of the Trenches and Batteries, but likewish in the filling up of Ditches for the passing of them.

Pickets, are Stakes about four Foot long, and made sharp a one End, by which the Fascines are fasten'd to the Ground.

A Sau

A Saucisson, is a Fascine of about 16 Foot long, made of very small Branches, and no thicker than an ordinary sascine, having the Bindings within 16 or 18 Inches of one another. They are used in the Platforms of Batteries, and for the making of Blinds, when any of the Works are enfladed.

Hurdles are so well known, from their being constantly used in Sheep-solds, that there is no occasion for an Explanation. When the Trenches are very wet or dirty they are hid at the Bottom of them, for the Conveniency of walking.

They are also used for the passing of Morasses.

Gabions are round wattled Baskets, open both at the Top and Bottom. They are of different Sizes; but those which are generally made use of, are about four foot Diameter, and sive or six Foot high. They place them frequently on the Platforms of the Batteries, and fill them with Earth, which makes the Parapet, or, as it is called in the Terms of Fortisication, the Merlons of the Battery. The Merlons, are only the Pieces of the Parapet or Wall which rise up between the Embrasures to secure the Gunners from the Fire of the Beseged. Gabions are always used when the Approaches are arried on by Demi-sap; or when they cannot sink a Trench, by meeting with wet or marshy Ground, they make use of Gabions to carry on the Approaches above Ground. Wool-Packs and Sand-Bags are also proper in such Places, as well as for the making of Lodgments.

When the Orders are given for making Fascines, &c. every Regiment is to send out proper Detachments to the adjacent Woods, or Places appointed for that Purpose; and when the Men have made the Number ordered, the Officers are to return with their Detachments to their Regiments; after this self Detachments are to be sent every Day 'till the whole Number directed are made; and so on during the Siege, for

whatever Number shall be wanting.

The Officers who command these Detachments are to give in a List of the Men to their Majors, with the Number of Fascines, Saucissons, Hurdles and Gabions, placed opposite to the Names of the Men who made them, that they may be paid for the Number they have made, as soon as he receives the Money. The same Rule must be observed, in giving in a List to the Major, by the Officers who command the Workmen in the Trenches, &c. or by the Adjutant when they are detach'd from the Head of the Regiment; by do-

Sz

give

Tharp a ound. A Sau

III.

ften

fore

con-

hap-

nand ch i

ent.

Men

Ser

Du-

tach

fuch

to be

ficer

arfs

land

, but

oung

oceed

ration

re the

ts an

mak

arter

ot re

harge

fuch

d Hur

ticlarly

them

rt, an

ches o

gs, an

ot only

ikewil

drawher growh

Place

Min de No de Art et in

give them the least room to think they are wronged; a Circumstance of no small Importance to the Service, since a contrary Proceeding is often attended either with Mutiny or Defertion; and therefore every Cause that can incite them to it ought to be carefully avoided.

Detachments of Horse and Dragoons are order'd at the same time with the Foot, to carry the Fascines from the Places where they are made to the general Magazine of the Trenches, which is commonly at or near the Place where they intend

to open them.

These Detachments are likewise commanded by Officers; but the Troopers and Dragoons carry neither Swords, Carbines nor Pistols. Every one carries a Fascine and a Picket, (which they lay before them on the Pummel of their Saddles) and march in File to the Place where they are order'd to lay them down; after which they return for more, and so on, 'till they bring the Number order'd. But when this proves too satiguing to the Cavalry, the Peasants are summoned in with their Waggons, as also those belonging to the Train and Bread, in order to be employed in carrying them; and, on extraordinary Occasions, all the Waggons belonging to the Sutlers are likewise sent, and the General Officers are desired to send theirs.

As the Gabions and Sauciffons cannot be carried on Horles,

Waggons from the Train are always fent for them.

When the Woods or Places where the Fascines are made lie near the Camp, the Men who make them are frequently ordered to bring them to the Head of their own Regiments; from whence they are carried, as above-mentioned, to the general Magazine of the Trenches; to which Place the working Tools are likewise to be sent from the Train, where Commissaries or Store-keepers are constantly to attend for delivering of them to the Workmen, and receiving them back when they leave off: For which Reason, the Officers who command the Workmen are, when they leave off work, to march their Detachments to the said Magazine, and deliver the working Tools to the Store-keepers.

A Guard of Foot is always placed over the faid Magazine, to prevent any of the Tools or other Materials being taken from thence, but by the Direction of the proper Officers.

ARTICLE II.

When the Trenches are to be opened (which is always made a very great Secret, that the Besseged may not know the

III.

Cir-

Con-De-

to it

laces

ches, tend

cers;

hich

arch

wn;

ring

g to Vag-

order

Oc-

wife

orfes,

made

ently

ents;

o the

the

vhere

r de-

back

who

k, to

eliver

zine,

aken

ways know

the

the certain time of doing it) a fufficient Number of Battalions and Squadrons, with General Officers in proportion to Command them, are ordered for the Covering-Party, to secure the Workmen from the Sorties of the Besieged.

A little after Sun-set, the said Battalions and Squadrons haw out at the Head of their Incampment, and March from hence so as to arrive at the General Rendezvous just as it mows dark, where they are join'd by the General Officers who are to Command them; as also by the Engineers who are to trace out the Works.

The Rendezvous so appointed, is generally at or near the face where the Trenches are to be opened, and is therefore alled afterwards the Parade of the Trenches.

When the Covering-Party is arriv'd at the Parade, the hief Engineer who has the Conducting of the Siege, acquints the General who Commands the Troops with the face where he intends to open the Trenches, and how far he roposes to carry them on, with the Situation of the Ground twixt that and the Town, that he may Post his Troops accordingly: For as the Engineers are obliged to Reconnoitre for Ground thoroughly Day after Day before they can determine where to make the Attack, they can therefore inform the General of the Places were the Regiments may be posted to the best Advantage, both for their own Security as well as that of the Workmen.

The Men are to keep a profound Silence both in the Marching to take Poffession of their Posts, and during the me they continue there, to prevent their being discover'd by the Enemy; and as foon as the Foot have placed a sufficient Number of Sentries, to give notice when a Sortie is made from the Town, they are to lie flat on the Ground with their Arms in their Hands, unless their Situation is such as to coto them from the Fire of the Enemy, by being posted beand some rising Ground, Hedge, Ditch, Wall, or old Ruins; when those are not to be met with, their lying flat on the Ground will be a means of faving a great many of them, the they cannot be eafily discovered in that Position; and if bey are not, only the dropping or spent Ball will then touch them; but supposing they knew where they were posted, they receive much less Damage by lying down than if they od up, as every Man's Reason must immediately suggest him; and therefore I shall not trouble the Reader with inther Arguments to prove it. The Horse cannot pursue Method; for they must continue Mounted all Night,

S 3

Ch

and

pexi

to 1

to t

wit

Foo

faft

thro

2F

Ax

bet'

oth

par

the

on

the if

He

Fi

to

to

W

ve

un

the

Pl

W

ge

W

be

be

C

be

P

R

that, when a Sortie is made, one Part may be ready to fuffain the Foot, while the other endeavours to get between the Ene-

my and the Town, to cut off their Retreat.

The Workmen are order'd at the same time with the Covering-Party; for which Service every Battalion then off Duty is to surnish an equal Number, such as 100, 150, or 200 Men each, according to the Works which they propose to throw up that Night; which Detachments are to be on the Parade of the Trenches, just as the Covering-Party Marches from thence to their Posts, and to draw up (either six or three Deep) according to Seniority of Regiments, which the Major of Brigade of the Day is to see done, and to examine their Numbers, to know if they have complied with the Orders in sending the proper Complement.

As foon as the Workmen are Paraded, Pick-Axes and Spades are deliver'd to them, in the doing of which a Regard is had to the Nature of the Ground, that if it is hard or rocky they may give a greater proportion of Pick-Axes; but when of a foft and loofe Mould, the Number of Spades exceeds the other. In the distributing of the Tools to the Men, the Officers should take care to intermix them in such a manner that as fast as one Man losens the Earth with a Pick-Ax, the one next him may have a Spade to throw it up with; and a this Rule must be observed in the drawing up of the Men to work, the intermixing of the Tools on the Parade will save the Trouble and Time of doing it afterwards; after this, a

Fascine and Picket is deliver'd to each Man.

As foon as the Covering-Party is posted, the Engineer trace out the Approaches; but as the doing of it with common Lines would be of little use in the Night, from their not being easily seen, they trace them out with Straw Lines that is, Ropes made of Straw. After this they return to the Parade, and acquaint the Major of Brigade of the Day what Number of Men with Tools they must have to the severa Parts, and what Number without Tools, for the carrying of Fascines, &c. and when the Disposition of the Workmen is made, the Engineers conduct them to the several Part traced out (each Man carrying a Fascine and a Picket with him, besides his Working Tool) where the Officers are to draw up their Detachments in a single Rank behind the Line and sacing it, leaving an Interval of three Foot betwixt each Man.

Note, The Meaning of the Expression, behind the Lin of Trenches, is the side from the Town, or next the Camp

4

and

and when the Word Before is used, is understood the Side

next the Town.

III.

fain

Ene-

Co.

Outy

Men

row

rade

rom

hree

lajor

thei

ders

and

gard

ocky

vhen

ceeds

, the

ner

, the

nd a

en to

fave

is, a

neen

com

their ines

o the

what vera

rying

emer Parti

with

are to

Line

each

Lin

amp

and

When the Men are drawn up, as above directed, they are m place the Fascines along the Straw Line, and fasten them n the Ground with the Pickets. After this is done, the Men with the Pick-Axes are to dig Holes behind them about four foot from the Line on which the Fascines were laid; and as fift as they loofen the Earth, the Men with the Spades are to throw it on the Fascines; and as soon as the Holes are about afoot, or a Foot and Half deep, the Men with the Pick-Axes are to stand in them, and dig the Ground which lies between the Holes, 'till they are all opened into one another; which being done, forms a Trench or Ditch running urallel to the Line on which the Fascines were placed; and the Earth which comes out of the faid Trench being thrown on the Fascines, raises the Parapet or Breast-work betwixt them and the Town; but as the Men will be vastly exposed, they are discovered, 'till the Depth of the Trench and the Height of the Parapet is sufficient to cover them from the Fire of the Besieged, the Officers must therefore oblige them wkeep a profound Silence, and apply themselves thoroughly with Work, 'till that is done; after which, they may allow them to go on more moderately in the finishing of it, though without suffering them to be idle, which, after they are conered from the Fire of the Enemy, is generally the Case; unless they are well looked to. It is therefore the Duty of the Officers on these Commands, to walk constantly from Place to Place, in order to View every Part of the Work on which their Detachments are employed, fince on their Diligence, that of their Men will depend.

The Men who are appointed to carry Fascines only, are to bring them from the general Magazine to the Places where the others are at Work; in the doing of which, the Officers who Command them, are to take care that they are Diligent, lest those who are at work should be forced to stop for want of Fascines to raise the Parapet; the Consequence of which may occasion you the loss of a great many Men, by being longer exposed to the Fire of the Town than they would

be when they are duly supplied.

As foon as the Fascines, which were laid down first, are covered with Earth; another Row or Line of Fascines must be placed on the Top of them, and sastened down with Pickets; and when these are covered with Earth, a third Row of Fascines must be placed on them; and so on in this

S 4

manner.

ha

eI

oul

loti

A

p

A

ık

1

manner, by intermixing of Earth and Fascines, 'till the Parapet is raised to its proper Height, which is Breast-high from the Foundation; which, if Fascines are not wanting, and that the Ground is not excessively hard or rocky, may be done in a very short time, at least so high as to cover them from the Fire.

The Reason for their using Fascines in the Parapet, is not only for the raising of it quicker, but likewise to Strengthen and Support the Earth, which, being loose, could not stand without them. Besides, as the Inside of the Parapet must only have a little Slope, like the Escarpe of a Rampart, Fascines are absolutely Necessary, since the Earth would be con-

tinually falling down without them.

From the top of the Parapet, the Earth must run with a gentle Slope, like those commonly made in Gardens towards the Town. The Reason for this is, that when the Enemy come to Attack the Trenches, they may find nothing to cover them from your Fire; whereas if the Parapet had no greater a Slope on the Outside than that on the Inside, it would serve as a Breast-work to the Enemy when they came to Attack you.

The Banquet, or Foot-Bank, is the space of Ground which is lest standing betwixt the Parapet and the Brink of the Trench, and should be at least three Foot broad after the Parapet is finished. It serves as a Basis to the Parapet, and so the Sentries to stand on, to discover what passes betwint the

Trenches and the Town.

The Trench should not be above three Foot deep in the folid Ground, or rather less, if you can raise the Parapet high enough without going so low, since the sinking of a deep Trench seldom sails of making it exceeding dirty. It should be at least four Foot broad at the bottom, that the Soldiers may march in it two a-breast, or pass by one another with ease.

These are the common Proportions of the several Parts, the whole of which is called the Trenches: And tho' it is not only the Duty of the Engineers to instruct the Officers, that they may direct their Men in the making of the Works; but likewise to Visit them from time to time, to see that each Part has its true Proportion; yet as those Gentlemen are liable to Accidents, from the Danger they are often exposed to, that may render them uncapable of performing their Duty, by which the Works may be retarded, or ill-executed, unless the Officers, from their own Experience, can supply the

Defect; I thought the inferting of the above Particulars mild be of use to young Officers, by giving them some otion what Trenches are, and in what manner they are ade, that, when they shall be ordered on those Commands, may not be entirely at a loss how they are to proceed. afe they should fail of the necessary Directions and Affistnet of the Engineers, which proves too often the Case at of Sieges; nor is it to be much wondered at, for if the mineers do their Duty, they are fo often disabled, that Want must be supplied by the Diligence and Skill of the Micers.

At break of Day the Workmen leave off, and the Offim March their Detachments back to the Camp, making a gort first to the General who Commands in the Trenches hat Number of their Men are killed and wounded, and tame to their own Colonels, as foon as they difmiss their

den.

III.

Para-

from

and

ay be

them

s not

othen

ftand

must Faf-

con-

ith a

vards

nemy

ig to

ed no de, it

came

vhich f the Pa-

d for

t the

1 the

high

deep hould

ldiers with

arts,

it is cers,

orks; that n are

posed

their

uted,

pply

the

At the same time that the Workmen leave off, the Battams, which covered them, take Possession of the Trenches, half fuch a Number as shall be thought sufficient, which ralways the eldeft, and the rest return to the Camp. The madrons are likewise drawn off, leaving a proper Detach-ent, if thought necessary.

When the Trenches are opened, the Workmen are to be othe Parade of the Trenches always at Sun-set. The Major Brigade of the Day is to be there at the same time, to look to their Numbers, and to Detach them from thence to the weral Works, as the Engineers shall direct; to which they are inducted by old Experienc'd Serjeants, who are employed by Major of the Trenches to look after the Works, and to fifthim in the performing of the several Parts of his Duty, ad are therefore call'd, the Adjutants of the Trenches, for

hich they have Extraordinary Pay.

The common Method of detaching the Workmen from re Parade of the Trenches, is, by beginning on the Right, nd fo on to the Left, 'till the whole are disposed of; but this Method proves very prejudicial to some Regiments, having their entire Detachment sent to those Works hich are vastly exposed to the Fire of the Besieged, and hereby lose a considerable Number of their Men, while thers receive little or no Damage; I should therefore think highly reasonable, when this is the Case, that an equal lumber of Men should be taken from the Detachment of th Regiment, and fent to the Works which are most ex-

hap

to fl

ain with the finder

the s

Fer

el R

í, t

T

posed, by which means the Loss will fall more equally the whole; otherwise the Regiments which are drawn up the Right will be great Sufferers, particularly when the A proaches are carried near the Glacis, since those who are since detached, are generally employ'd on those Works, and the others on things of less Moment, such as the finishing Works already begun, or the carrying of Fascines, &c.

I own, that the detaching of the Workmen according the Method proposed, will create the Major of Brigadea litt more Trouble; but surely that cannot be given as a good Reason for its not being done: for where the Lives of Morare in question, impartial Justice should be done them, what

ever Pains it may cost.

The posling of Battalions betwixt the Workmen and the Town, is only done on the first breaking of Ground, the being afterwards to remain constantly in the Trenches; however they sometimes make Detachments from the Reg ments, of Lieutenant's and Captain's Commands, to surport the Workmen, and post them at the Head of the Trenches, that they may be ready to march out and attact those who sally from the Town, in order to put a stop their Progress' till the Battalions can be brought up, to see cilitate the Retreat of the Workmen, and to prevent the

being purfued.

When a Sortie is made which obliges the Workmen to qu their Posts (which a very small Matter will do) the Of cers who command them, are to endeavour all they can prevent their dispersing: for which end, every Officer is draw his Detachment into a Body, and retire with them e ther into the next Trench, or at a proper distance from the Works; where they are to remain 'till the Enemy are re pulsed, and then return with them to their former Station in order to finish what they had begun. But as Orders, of these Occasions, are not of sufficient Force to oblige the Men to keep with their Officers, or return with them their Work, after the Enemy retire, unless proper Punish ments are annexed to the Breach of them, and, when foun out, strictly executed; and when neglected, proves a gre Detriment to the Service by prolonging of the Siege: prevent this, some other Expedient, than what has bee hitherto found out, should be thought of to keep the Work men within moderate Bounds: and though this is a difficul Task, yet, I believe, it may, in some Degree, be ef fected, by inflicting fome corporal Punishment on tho Wh VII

tally o

n up

he A

are fi

and t

hing

c.

ding

a litt

a goo

f M

wha

nd the

Reg

of the

a:tad

Stop.

to f

t the

to qu

Of

can (

er is

em e

m th

are re

ation

15, 0

e th

em t

unist

foun

grea

:: 0

bee

Nork

ifficu

be ef

thol

Wh

In shall do it (unless they are wounded) and stopping of a working Money, and dividing it amongst those who remin with their Officers, as a Reward for their complying the their Duty, and likewise to induce them to detect those to shall quit their Commands; for without the Money is mided in this manner, they will not detect one another, but ther endeavour to conceal it from their Officers. As this set as a Notion of my own, in order to put those who all command, on these Occasions, upon finding out a progression of the set of the still state of the still suffered to go on.

ARTICLE III.

The Guard of the Trenches is never formed by Detachment, it is always composed of entire Battalions; the Number of hich must depend on the Strength of the Besieged, it being sessary to have a sufficient Force to repulse any Sortie they hall be able to make, either for the levelling of the Trenches heady made to interrupt the Progress of those carrying on, mailing up of the Cannon on the Batteries.

As the mounting of the Guard of the Trenches is a Duty

Honour, it always begins with the eldest Regiments. The Guard of the Trenches is only a Duty of 24 Hours athe time of relieving it is not fixed, fince it is fometimes one in the Morning, and sometimes in the Evening; tho' umerly the Relief was always made in the Dusk of the bening, to avoid, as they faid, the Danger which they auft run from the Fire of the Besieged, if they made it when twas light; but as they did not observe that Rule at the leges in Flanders, we must conclude, that doing it always the Dusk of the Evening proceeded rather from Custom han Reason: for when the Relief can be made with Sasety the Day-time, it is much properer than when it is dark, face they cannot then make so good a Judgment of their losts, or know by what Communication they can march blustain one another, in case of a Sortie, as when they mount in the Morning, or some time before it is dark. tue, when they mounted in the Dusk of the Evening, the Majors of those Regiments took a View of the Trenches in the Morning, to inform themselves thoroughly of all the Particulars relating to their Posts; as also those belonging to the other Regiments, that, by knowing the Situation of the

tranc

ar Off drigad

To

hem,

re Re

Th

ant eve t

imes

is P. Way,

W

k R

Tren

Th

nich

rance Pofts

W

de C

Wi

inged

vien dine

Dat

T

Man and are to the School

whole, they might the more readily march to fustain one another, on the first Order they should receive from the General who commands in the Trenches: after this they returned to the Camp, and made a Report of the same to their respective Colonels.

After the Trenches are opened, the Regiments which Mount, are always named the Day before in publick Orders that they may be prepared for it: Neither do they furnish any Men to the ordinary nor extraordinary Guards (their own Quarter-Guards excepted) nor working Parties, after such Orders are given, 'till they are relieved, that they may march into the Trenches as strong as possible, leaving no more Men on their Quarter-Guards, than what are absolutely necessary

for the Security of their Tents and Baggage.

General Officers are appointed at the same time to command the Troops in the Trenches, who mount and dismount with them. The Number of General Officers are in Proportion to the Number of Battalions which mount; and when the Attack is very considerable, there is then a Lieutenant-General, a Major-General, and a Brigadier order'd for the Command, with whom a Major of Brigade frequently mounts, for the receiving and delivering of the General's Orders to the Troops in the Trenches, otherwise the eldest Major commonly performs that Duty, unless the General appoints another.

When there are more Attacks than one carried on at the same time, a proper Number of General-Officers are appointed

for the Command of each.

The Regiments which mount the Trenches, are to march from their own Incampment, so as to be on the Parade an Hour before the time appointed for the Relief, where they are joined by the Generals who are to command them.

When the Parade of the Trenches is not naturally covered from the Cannon of the Besieged, by having a rising-Ground before it (which they always pitch upon for the opening of the Trenches, when such a Place can be found near the Attack) a large Epaulement is then thrown up to secure those who come to relieve, and that they may march from thence into the Trenches without being exposed to the Fire of the Town.

The Regiments are to draw up by Seniority on the Parade of the Trenches; and as soon as they are all formed, whatever Detachments are to be then made from them, either for Guards to the Batteries, Magazines, or particular advanced

11

an ne

ec

icl

18

ny

wi wi

rch

en

ary

m-

int

ro

nd

te

for

tly

)r-Ia-

nts

the ted

rch

an

hey

er-

ng-

en-

ear

ure

om of

Pa-

ed,

ei-

ced

officers to Command them, and Formed by the Major of ligade who Mounts the Trenches, or the Officer who is appointed to do that Duty; after which the Regiments are to Told off into Platoons, and the Officers divided equally to lem, with which they are constantly to Remain 'till they re Relieved.

The Regiments in the Trenches are to send each a Serant to the Parade, to conduct those who come to Remethem to their several Posts, the Trenches being sometimes of so great an Extent, and so Intricate, that without is Precaution, it will be difficult for them to find their way, particularly when the Approaches are Advanced up to the Glacis.

When the time of Relieving is come, the General orders is Regiments to March and Relieve the Guard of the Innches.

They March in by Senjority, the Eldest Relieving that with is Posted at the Head of the Trenches, or most Adwed Parallel. The rest are to follow the same Rule, the wish of Honour being those which lie nearest the Town.

When they come to the Queue, or Tail of the Trenches, at Granadiers, led by their Officers, are to Rank off fingly to the Right, or March two a-breast, if the Trench wide enough to allow of it; at the Bottom of which they at to March, to avoid being exposed to the Fire of the Besed: For though they are not to be afraid of the Fire, yet a Soldiers are never suffered to expose themselves, but then the Service requires it; and then they are not to define it, though they should be sure of meeting with certain lath.

The Battalions are to march into the Trenches in the same lanner, the Officers keeping with their respective Platoons: and when they come opposite to the Regiments which they are to Relieve, they are to Halt and Face them. After this, a Sentrics posted on the Banquet, to Discover what passes awart the Trenches and the Town, are Relieved; and the Monels who are to be Relieved, acquaint those who come Relieve them with all things relating to their Posts, what distional Night-Sentries are necessary for their further Sentry, &c. during which time the Majors and Adjutants, companied by the others, take an exact View of the Works there their Regiments are Posted, that if any Part of them a damaged or broke down, or that the Parapet is not

har

mpt at on

noved poi

gabl

rere

rene the

roba

b no

Juty.

TI

te C

World fixed which of the Conde

W

de I

y t

acy in th

80

thick enough to refift the Cannon of the Belieged, they me apply to the General of the Trenches for Workmen to R pair them, or obtain his Leave for the doing it by a Detac ment of their own Men, fince none of those, who below to the Guard of the Trenches, can quit their Arms, or lea their Posts without his Directions. They are likewise Reconnoitre the several Communications leading to the oth Regiments, that if any of them should be Attacked, the may know, when Ordered, how to fustain them withou Lofs of Time. When the Majors have looked into all the Particulars, (which ought by no means to be omitted, fin feveral of their Men may be lost for want of a due Inspe tion into the Works) they are to make a Report of the fan to their Colonels; after which, the Regiments that a Relieved march out of the Trenches, and return to the Camp.

As foon as the old Guard is marched off, those of the new are ordered to sit down on the Banquet, holding the Arms between their Legs, which they are not to quit, of the first from their Posts, but on occasions of Necessity; an even then not without Leave of their Officers: Nor must hey be suffered to Sleep, that they may be always ready oppose every Attempt which the Enemy shall make on the Works: And on the first Noise, or Notice given of a Sorti the Soldiers are to stand up in the Trench; and if the Noise encreases, or that the Sentries confirm the Report, the Batalions are to Form on the Reverse of the Trench (which the Side of the Trench opposite to the Banquet) and Remain there 'till the General of the Trenches shall send them such

Orders as he shall think proper.

The Relief of the Trenches is always made without Be of Drum, and with as little Noise as possible, that the Be sieged may not know the exact Parts you are in, by whice means their Fire can be given only at Random; whereas, the Drum was to Beat, or a considerable Noise made, the could direct it with more Certainty, and thereby make you

Loss greater

Tho' it was the constant Practice formerly, for the Reg ments to march into the T enches with Flying Colours, an Planting them on the top of the Parapet, as soon as the had taken Possession of their Posts; yet towards the latte End of the Late War in Flanders, that Ceremony was la aside, and the Colours left in Camp under the Care of the own Quarter-Guard, or sent to the Regiment which Is cam

II

R

acl

lor lea

fe |

oth

the

ho

the

fin

fpe

fan

a th

ft

the

an

mu

dy

t

orti

Voi

Ba

ich mai

fuc

Be:

vhic as,

the

you

Reg

the

latte s la

the r Ir mpt next them; having found by Experience, that it did tonly shew plainly where the Regiments were Posted, but mid likewise a Temptation to the Gunners of the Town point their Cannon at them, by which they lost a consignible Number of their Men, particularly the Sentries who met posted on the Banquet: And as the Carrying them to the sentences was not in the least Essential, but rather Destructive the Service, by exposing their Men without any Real or mobile Advantage, nothing could be more Just and Reamble than the quitting of that Ceremony, since the English and want such Shews to Animate or Spur them on to their lay. The French, however, keep up the old Custom of anying their Colours with them, from a Notion, penhaps, but it looks more Daring.

Tho' it is reasonable to suppose, that the Care which lies on a Generals who Command in the Trenches will oblige them amove frequently about the several Posts, in order to keep to Troops Alert, and by their Presence to Animate the Workmen who are carrying on the Approaches; yet there is sixed Place where they are to be sent on every Occasion, which is generally at or near the Battalion which is posted in the Center, as being the most Convenient in the sending of Convenient of the Receiving of Reports from the Whole, and where one of them (when there are several on that Command)

hold always remain for that Purpose.

Whatever Intelligence the Colonels shall receive of the Moins of the Besieged, they are to send an Account of it imminutely, by an Officer, to the General of the Trenches, but he may give the necessary Directions to the Whole.

When the Besieged intend to make a vigorous Sally for a Levelling of your Works, or the Nailing of the Canmon the Batteries, it is frequently preceded by some Sham as; their Design in which, being to amuse or draw off that Attention so far, that when they make the real one may imagine it such as the Former, and by that means agent the necessary Precautions for your Desence; therefie an Officer must not suffer himself to be imposed upon that or any Stratagem of the like Nature. Besides, may just act the Contrary, by making the Real one First; that there is no knowing when they will make it, or judgges of their Future Actions by their Past; For the Sorties a generally undertaken in the Night, yet there are Inspected at such a time) have proved more successful

'n

the

Ru

ind

Tr

are.

m2

Bef

the

m le

2000

Who

trea and

Reg

proa

言盟。

i re

the of the moke

Toy

than the others. I only mention this, to flew how necessary it is for the Troops in the Trenches to be always of their Guard, and not to imagine themselves in a State of Scurity from the Enterprises of the Besseged, while they a

on that Duty.

At some of the Great Sieges in Flanders in the Late Wabesides the General Officers already named for the Trenche a General of the Foot was appointed for the Command each Attack, who had the Care and Direction of it during the whole Siege; but as this is quite out of the command Rule of the Service, by its never having been practifed before that I know of, I shall not pretend to determine on its being Right or Wrong, or trouble the Reader with a particular Detail of their Duty.

When the Attacks were Commanded by Generals of the Foot in this manner, the Attacks were called after the Names; otherwise they were distinguished by the Right, Le or Center Attack; or by the Names of the Engineers what the Conducting of them; or by the Names of the Bastio

where the Breaches were made.

A little before the Trenches are Relieved, every Regime in them is to fend a Return to the General, of what Me have been killed or wounded during the time they have been Duty. The Officers who command the feveral Detact ments of Workmen, are to do the fame when they leave of Work; as also the Artillery-Officers who command in the Batteries; that he may acquaint the General who command the Siege, with the feveral Particulars when he makes the Report to him, which is always done as soon as they a Relieved.

When a French Battalion is to Mount the Guard of the Trenches, it is always formed into Picquets, of 48, or 1

Men each, instead of Platoons.

These Picquets are composed of an equal Number of M from each Company, in the same Manner as the Ordina

Picquets are Formed.

The Picquet which is drawn up on the Right of the Batalion, is composed of the Officers and Soldiers who are go first on Duty. The second Picquet, which is drawn on the Lest of the First, consists of those who are the new on Command. All the other Picquets are Formed in the Same Manner, and are drawn up in Battalion according their Tour of Duty, those who are to go on last being the Lest,

11

Co

FS

V:

ch

d

ari

me

s b

f t

the

Le

wi

11

me

M

bee

etac

ve d

man

es l

ey a

of t

or §

M

dina

e Ba

wn i

in t

ing

ng

T

The Reasons which they give for it are these: When Detachments are wanted in the Trenches, no Time is lost in making them, they being Formed and ready to March on the first Order. Besides, should an Accident happen to any Part of the Regiment by a Sortie, the Loss will not fall on Particular Companies, but equally on the Whole.

These are the Reasons which they give for Forming the Battalions that Mount the Trenches in this Manner; and which, in my Opinion, seem to carry a good deal of Weight: But as no other Troops but the French follow the same Rule, I shall be Silent on that Head, leaving every one to indee of it as they shall think Proper.

ARTICLE IV.

Besides the Foot which are ordered for a Guard to the Trenches, there is also a Body of Horse Commanded to such Attack, who are Relieved every 24 Hours, as the Foot see, and are under the Direction of the General who Commands in the Trenches.

They are always posted at or near the Queuë of the Trenches, so as not to be exposed to the Cannon of the Rieged.

As foon as they Mount, the Officer who Commands them sends a Cornet on Foot into the Trenches to attend in the General, that when he has any Orders for the Horse,

may fend them by the Cornet.

The Number of Horse which mount, are more or less wording as it shall be judg'd necessary, they being designed, then the Enemy attack the Trenches, to cut off their Rehat to the Town; or if the Sortie is composed of Horse m Foot, you may have Horse to oppose theirs; so that a legard must be had to the Quality of the Troops in Garrim, and the Nature of the Ground which lies near the Apmaches; for if it is not plain and open, neither their Horse m yours can act, and therefore a small Number will be ficient: But when the Garrison is strong in Horse, and the Ground proper for them to act in, a greater Body of Horse inquired on the Trench-Guard. But as the French, during tate War, depended more on the Strength and Regularity their Fortifications than on a numerous Garrison for the olonging of a Siege, they feldom threw more Troops into a lown than what were sufficient to man the Works; so that by very rarely made a confiderable Sally, knowing that if

fir

on

Se

to

G

oth

OVI

At

litt

ar

kin

of

Du

200

Lo

Re

tile

122

Mu

Tn

thou

deft Tre

of 1

Cro

Att:

evin

the

C

aro

IW

Int

Gre

non

nay

the '

1100

an Attempt of that kind should miscarry (which more fequently happens than not, if the Troops in the Trenches do their Duty) the Loss of the Town would foon follow, by reducing the Garrison too low to make a proper Defence; and as this was the Case at most of the Sieges in Flanders, the Horse-Guard seldom consisted of above 200 at each Attack, (after the Trenches were opened) but oftener much less, there being very few Instances, if any, where the Service, for which they mounted, was required; and when it is not, the mounting of a great Number proves detrimental to the Service, by putting them on unnecessary Fatigue, fince a great many Horses are thereby entirely lost, and others reduced to fo low a State as to render them unfit for present Service. However, neither this, nor any other Confideration ought to prevail, or be allowed as an Excuse for their not mounting a fufficient Number on the Trench-Guard, whenever there is Reafon to apprehend they may be wanted. But notwithstanding the old Custom of making great Sorties. for levelling the Works and nailing the Cannon, was, in a Manner, laid afide; yet the French Governours fell upon another Method to retard the Progress of the Works, without much Danger to the Garrison; which was, by making of frequent Sorties in the Night of an Officer and 20 Men. or a Serjeant and 12, who marched up to the Workmen, cried out Tué, Tué, with a loud Voice, then fired amongs them, and immediately ran back into the Covert-way; and as they were only fent to diffurb the Workmen, they had generally the defired Effect; for upon those Sorties only, the Workmen could not be kept to their Duty by their Officers, but threw down the Tools and dispersed; after which, sew or none could be found again that Night to go on with the Works; fo that without any Danger to the Garrison the Progress of the Siege was as effectually retarded as it could be by great Sallies, unless they could make themselves Master of the Batteries.

These small Sorties were sometimes made three or soutimes a-night; and to encourage the Men to undertake them, the Governours always gave a Crown or ten Shilling a Man to those who would go voluntarily; and the suffer'd for it now and then, by the Troops in the Trenches yet that never-failing Argument, Money, procured then always a sufficient Number of the most bold and intrepid to offer themselves; by which Method the Workmen were soften interrupted and alarmed, that some Nights they did no finish

lo

y

3,

t-

1-

19

to

ce

re-

ent

on

not

en-

But

ies,

n a

DOM

ith-

ing

len.

nen.

ngf

and

had

the

cers.

few

h the

1 the

ld b

aften

four

ertak

illing

the

nches

then

epid t

ere l

lid no

finil

finish one Quarter of the Works which were begun; and notwithstanding this was repeated Night after Night, yet I never heard of any Expedient fallen upon to stop it; from whence I conclude it was found impracticable; for as it could only be done by posting of small Guards, commanded by serjeants, betwixt the Workmen and the Town, in order to intercept those who Sally, yet as it was not done, I suppose it proceeded from the too great Danger which those Guards must be exposed to from the Fire of the Besieged; otherwise it was impossible that so clear a Point could be overlooked.

There being frequent Occasion at a Siege to make small Attacks to dislodge the Enemy from their advanced Posts of little detached Works, which interrupt the Besiegers in the arrying on of their Approaches; as often as Attacks of this lind are necessary, they are always perform'd by the Guard if the Trenches; for which End, every Battalion then on Duty must give their Proportion of Granadiers and others. mording to the Number which shall be ordered, that the los may fall equally on the whole; and not by particular legiments, on account of Seniority, as was formerly pracfled, that Custom being entirely laid aside, and making them by Detachment instituted in their room, as a more just and monable Way of proceeding; otherwise the oldest Regiments must be tore to pieces, while the young ones were fafe in the Trenches looking on as Spectators. Befides, unless this Mehod had been alter'd, the English must have been constantly Attroyed at the Sieges in Flanders: For as the Guard of the Trenches was composed of the Troops of different Nations, whom the English took Post, as belonging to the Oldest lowned Head, or eldest Nation, as they called it, all those Attacks must have been made by them; which sufficiently ninces the Absurdity of the Old Method, and the Equity of he New, in making every Battalion then on Duty share qually of the Danger.

On particular Occasions, when the Affair was very danmous, and that a small Number of Men was only requir'd,
twas done by Voluntiers (that is, such who would go Vomaterily) offering a Reward to each Man; but even in this
Case those who command Regiments should not suffer any
more Voluntiers to go than their Proportion; otherwise they
may lose a considerable Number of their bravest Men, by
the Temptation of Money, while the Officers who act with
more Caution and Prudence, save theirs, by not allowing

T 2

Ch

7

on a

as fi

7

Oca

Atta Def

A

Sieg

pin

abor

mar

A

are

13 0

Cor

the

ret

tho

deri

Pic

ord

OV

202

I

the

be]

bry

the the

Tn

alw tion

them to offer themselves 'till they are called upon, in Hopes that their Places will be supplied by those of other Regiments; several Instances of which could be easily given, were there an Occasion.

The same Rule should be observed in Relation to those who are employed in the Sapp, Demi-sapp, carrying of Wool-Packs, and the Half-Crown Voluntiers, (as they are called) since every Regiment can supply their Proportion of Men duly qualified for such Undertakings; but as some may have neither Artificers nor Miners, they are always taken where they can

be found, without any Regard to the faid Rule.

The Number of Half-Crown Voluntiers are more or less according to the Business which may be required of them, which is to fill the Ditch with Fascines when the Breach is made, in order to attack it; as also to lay Bridges over it for the same Purpose: And tho' these Men have nothing to do 'till towards the End of the Siege, yet they are retain'd and paid from the opening of the Trenches, and are excused from all ther Duty whatever 'till the Town is taken, or the Siege raised; but they pay dearly for it whenever they are employed, it being hardly possible for them to escape.

My Reason for inserting the above Particulars, is principally defign'd to inform those, who have not been on such Commands, of the proper Method of proceeding, that when they shall be engaged on the like Occasions, they may know how to conduct themselves accordingly; without which, they may be easily caught by the specious Pretences or Compliments of defigning Men (in putting the old Puncto of Seniority upon them) to the no small Detriment of those under their The fame may likewise happen in case of Voluntiers, by allowing a greater Number than your Proportion: For the Hope of Reward is fo strongly implanted by Nature, that it creates in Mankind even a Contempt of Death when the Prospect is in View, as was frequently seen by the surprizing Actions which were performed at the Sieges in Flanders, by the giving of Money; which, when duly Regulated, is exceeding Proper, and proved of great Service in taking the Towns much fooner than they otherwise could have done; therefore it is not the Method of giving Money which is wrong, but the ill-Use that may be made of it, by imposing on Particular Regiments, unless the Officers who Command them are aware of the Bait.

s;

ole

01-

ed)

ily

er

an

es

m,

is it

to

ı'd

fed

he

are

lly

m-

ney

WO

nay

nts

ity

neir

ers,

or

hen

ur-

an-

the

ne;

ing

and

·I-

ARTICLE V.

The Preparations which are generally made for an Assault on a Considerable Outwork, or the Body of the Place, are a follows.

The Number of Troops which are commanded on these Occasions, must depend on the Strength of the Place to be Attacked, and the Number of Men who can be brought to Defend it.

A Detachment from every Company of Granadiers at the Siege, with a proper Number of Battalions, are ordered to join the Guard of the Trenches; but to prevent any Dispute about Precedency or Right, in making the Attack, the Battalions thus ordered should be those who are next on Command for the Trenches.

A Detachment of Hatchet-Men, with their large Axes, me likewise Ordered, that if the Passage of the Granadiers is obstructed, by meeting with large Pallisades, either in the Covert-way, or in the Intrenchments behind the Breach, they may be ready to cut them down: For tho' the Bombs and Cannon from the Batteries break them generally down, yet they can't always reach them; for which reason there should be Hatchet-Men ordered, for fear they should be wanted.

There are likewise a sufficient Number of Workmen ordered with Tools, and others to carry the proper Materials, such as Wool-Packs, Sand-Bags, Gabions, Fascines, and lickets, for the making of a Lodgment on the Breach is so ordered, or an Intrenchment in the Body of the Outwork to over you from the Fire of the Town, and to secure you wainst any Attempt which the Besseged shall make to regain

Engineers are commanded with the Workmen, to direct them in Making the proper Lodgments, that no time may keloft in the doing them.

There are always more Battalions ordered than are Necesbry for the Attack, that some may remain as a Reserve in the Trenches, which, in my Opinion, should be those out of the additional Number order'd, whose Tour of Mounting the Trenches is furthest off.

The Battalions which compose the Guard of the Trenches, always March after and Sustain the Granadiers, and the additional Battalions only Sustain them.

T 3

The

Cha

X

ext

the if

that,

fifai

whe

man

1

to t

Batt

whi

teffa

Wa

1

am

to t

the

fieg

grea

my

the

Gr Mo

me

ed

To

lan

ext

rife

ma

on

in

th

T

P

The General Officers then on Duty in the Trenches command the Attack, unless the Number of Troops so ordered may require a Greater Number of Generals than are then on Duty, or one of a Superior Rank; in which case, the Command always falls to the eldest; but unless for the Reason just mentioned, the Command is never taken from the Generals of the Trenches.

The Disposition of the Troops for the Attack is generally

made as follows:

The Granadiers designed for the Attack, are to be possed at the Head of the Trenches, or that Part of them which lies nearest to the Work to be Attacked; the particular Disposition of whom is as follows.

I. A Serjeant and 12 or 16 Granadiers are drawn out for the Forlorn Hope; they are not taken from one Company, but one from each of the 12 or 16 eldest Companies; or if they confist of the Troops of different Nations, they are then taken in proportion to the Number of Battalions of each Nation.

II. A Lieutenant and 30 or 40 Granadiers formed by Detachment in the same manner, to Sustain the Forlorn Hope.

III. A Captain, 2 or 3 Lieutenants, with 80 or 100 Granadiers, formed also by Detachment, to Sustain the Lieutenant.

IV. A Detachment of 200 Granadiers, Commanded by a

Major, to Sustain the Captain.

V. The whole Body of Granadiers according to Seniority of Companies, or Nations, under the Command of Field-Officers, in proportion to their Numbers. They should March as many in Front as the Ground they are to pass over will admit of, or the Breach contain.

VI. The Hatchet-Men are to be posted next to the Gra-

nadiers, and to March immediately after them.

VII. The Battalions which compose the Guard of the Trenches are posted, according to Seniority, next to the Hatchet-Men, to Sustain the Granadiers.

VIII. The Additional Battalions that are to go upon the Attack, are Posted next to the Guard of the Trenches, in or-

der to Sustain them.

IX. After the Troops designed for the Attack, the Detachments of Workmen, Commanded by their Officers, are posted, that they may be ready to March, when ordered to make the Lodgments, with whom the Engineers are to March to Instruct them.

X. The

II.

m.

red

on

m-

fon

lly

ted

lies

osi-

for

ny,

if

are

of

)e-

.

ra-

te-

y a

ity

ld-

ch

vill

ra-

the

he

the

-10

)e-

are

to

ch

he

X. The Battalions appointed for the Referve, are posted next to the Workmen; and when the others March out to the Attack, they are to move up to the Head of the Trenches, that, if the Troops which make the Attack require any Assistance, they may be ready to March out and Sustain them, when they shall be so ordered by the General who Commands the Attack.

That those who make the Attack may be as little exposed to the Fire of the Besieged as possible, all the Cannon on the Batteries are pointed against the several Works of the Town which Desend the Breach; on which they are to Fire incessantly, during the Attack, to keep the Enemy from the Walls.

The Signal commonly given for an Attack, is the throwing of a certain Number of Bombs into the Town at the ame time; but if they are thrown into the Work which is to be Attacked, or toward the Gorge of the Bastion in which the Breach is made, (that being the Place where the Besieged Intrench themselves for the Desence of it) it will be of great Service to those who make the Attack. For as the Enemy will be obliged either to quit their Posts, or lie slat on the Ground 'till the Bombs have broke, it will give the Granadiers (if they have not far to March) sufficient time to Mount the Breach, and Attack the Intrenchment without meeting with much Opposition 'till they come there, provided the Batteries sire at the same time on the Desences of the Town.

When there are more Attacks than one to be made at the ame time, (which, if the Breaches are ready, would be exceeding proper, in order to divide the Force of the Gartion) each must have the same Proportion and Disposition made for it, unless a greater Opposition is expected from the one than the other; in which Case, the Difference then lies in the Numbers ordered for each, but not in the Disposition or Order of the Attack.

Sham Attacks are sometimes made at the same time with the Real Ones; but as they are intended to Amuse the Beseged, to oblige them to divide their Troops, that those who make the real Attack may meet with the less Opposition, the Workmen are generally omitted.

When an Attack is to be made on the Covert-way, the Troops which are appointed for that Service are generally divided into several Bodies, in order to Attack it at different Parts at the same time. The Number of Workmen, with

T 4

the Forenoon.

the several Materials before-mentioned, particularly Wool-Packs, are greater on these Occasions; because an Attack on the Covert-Way is generally designed to force the Enemy from thence 'till a Lodgment is made on the Glacis, or as it is commonly, tho' Erroneously, called the Counterscarp; for as the Counterscarp is the Wall of the Ditch which supports the Covert-way, to be Lodged on the Counterscarp, properly Speaking, is to be lodged on the Brink of the Ditch; but, at present, that Term is generally Abused, by saying that they are on the Counterscarp, when they are only at the beginning of the Glacis.

The most favourable time for the making of an Attack is in the Day: For as the Actions of every Man will appear in full View, the Brave, through a laudable Emulation, will endeavour, at the Expence of their Lives, to out-do one another; and even the Fearful will exert themselves, by Performing their Duty, rather than bear the infamous Name of Coward; the Fear of Shame being generally more Powerful than the Fear of Death. The Batteries will be likewise of greater Service, by their Firing with more Certainty on the Defences of the Town, and the Top of the Breach, to keep the Enemy from opposing the Granadiers in Mounting it. Besides, in the Night, those who go on first will run great Danger from the Fire of those who Sustain them; therefore an Attack on an Out-work, or the Covert-way, is generally a little after Sun-fet, that Night may come on by the time the Attack is finished, to favour them in making the Necesfary Lodgments: But this Rule will not hold good in an Attack on the Body of the Place; for if Night should come on before the Town is entirely reduced to your Obedience, great Inconveniences would attend both your own Troops, and the poor Inhabitants; to avoid which, it is generally made in

I do not pretend, by what is mention'd in this Article, to lay down certain Rules; but only to give a general Idea of Attacks, with the usual Preparation of Workmen, &c. Disposition of the Troops, with the Time of making them.

6

a

7

ti

0

T



C H A P. XIX.

of the Method in Flanders for the Receiving and Distributing of the Daily Orders; General Detail of the Army, (by which is meant the General Duty to be performed by the Officers and Soldiers) with the Form of a Roster, or Table, by which the Duty of Entire Battalions, and the Officers, is Regulated; and a Table of Proportion for the Detaching of Private Men from the Whole.

ARTICLE I.

A

II.

olack

up-

ch; ing

the

, is

r in

will

aner-

e of

rful

e of the

it.

reat fore ally

ime cef-

At-

on

reat

and

e in

, to

Dif-

P.

1.

S the Horse and Foot don't intersere with one another in the Detail, but have a separate one of their own, I shall therefore mention some Particulars relating to the General Officers, Majors of Brigade, and the Adjutant General, before I proceed to the Orders.

Tho' the General Officers have not particular Commissions the Horse or Foot, yet their Commands are distinct, as yare placed over the one or the other; for the Generals have appointed to the Horse, have the Care and Direction them, and are only commanded on Duty with the Horse. It same Rule is observed by the Generals who are appointed the Foot; so that the Horse and Foot don't Roll together, thave each their Duty apart: However, when a Detachat from each join, the eldest Officer, whether of Horse or the Commands both.

General Officers of the Day are appointed for the Horse Foot, each having a Lieutenant-General, Major-General Brigadier, who continue on that Duty 24 Hours; my which time they Receive the Orders from the General Which time they Receive the Orders from the General Property of the General Proper

hap

on th

hen a

ry fe

ey co

day for

the In

00 00

Gard

lenda dajor dout, eral

all'd And t

Duty,

Fo

10

n ke int a leiga ubon

b th

W

4

aive:

A

a an

lt

Tro

In

le is Gen

ral in Chief, and deliver them to the Generals of the Hor and Foot, and Majors of Brigade of the Day, as shall i

more particularly mention'd in its proper Place.

The Picquet is under the immediate Direction of the Gararal Officers of the Day; and when it is order'd to Marcupon any Service, they have the Command of it: And the Picquet is not to March from the Head of their seven Regiments, but by the Direction of the Lieutenant-Genera of the Day, all Orders relating to it should be immediate sent to them; for which reason they are to be in a constant Readiness, and not to leave the Camp, but when they vist the Grand-Guards and Out-Posts which lie near the Army which they generally do every Morning, to know what stat they are in, that they may acquaint the General in Chiwith it at Orderly time, or sooner if requisite.

All the Majors of Brigade of the Foot, Roll for the Day the whole Body of Foot, each taking it in his Turn to a

as fuch.

The Majors of Brigade of the Horse do the same for the

whole Body of Horfe.

The Majors of Brigade of the Day remain on that Duty a Hours, during which time they keep the General Detail the Whole, and Regulate what each Nation in Particular to Furnish to the several Duties then order'd, and receive to Orders at the Head Quarters from the Brigadiers of the Day.

They are to see all Detachments paraded, as is explained large in Art. 4. Chap. xv. And if any Dispute happens on the Parade amongst the Officers about their Duty, the Generathen on the Spot are to decide it according to the Rules War, or Customs of the Army; but if none are present, it then to be done by the Major of Brigade of the Day, which they are to submit; which however is not to be attend with any ill consequence in debarring any Officer of his Right if he can make it appear afterwards that he was wrong'd the Decision.

The Majors of Brigade of each Nation roll amongst then selves for the Day to their own Troops, each Nation being have one at the Head-Quarters at Orderly Time to receive to Orders from the Major of Brigade of the Day for the Whole at which time they compared and settled their Books Detail with his, that they might be prepared to act for the whole in their Turn; as also to see that their Troops had no I justice done them in the Numbers which they were to su nish. When the other Majors of Brigade received the Orde

Ior

G

ard

nd !

ven

era

ate

ftar

Vi

my

Sta Chi

y

) a

t

y z ail

lar

e t

ed

n t

nera

es it

у,

end

ď

her

ng

ve t

ks

who

o I

) fu

)rde fro menthese, they compared and settled their Books in the same anner, by which means they all knew the General Detail; and then any of their own General Officers were togo next on Duty, by sent them an Account of it by their Aid-de Camps when any came for Orders, that they might be prepared for it.

The Duty which was done by the Majors of Brigade of the by for the whole, in keeping of the Detail, and giving of the articulars to those of each Nation, was formerly perform'd the Adjutant-General; which Method is still continued by Imperialists, their Major of Brigade of the Day, or Man of the Regiments who act as such, being only to see the stards and other Detachments paraded: But the Detail of the shaders Army being found too great for any one Person, the ships of Brigade were ordered to execute that Part Daybut, from whence the Major of Brigade who kept the Geral Detail, and distributed the Orders to the others, was all Major of the Day, to distinguish him from the rest: and tho' this took off a great deal of Trouble from the Admint-General, yet, if he performed the other Parts of his Day, he found sufficient Employment.

For he is obliged to receive, and write down in his Book, lorders which are given at Orderly Time, or afterwards; keep the Detail both of the Horse and Foot, and be present at the settling of it with the Brigadiers and Majors of ligade of the Day, that, when the General in Chief (with thom he always remains) wants to know any thing relating the Detail of the Army, he may be able to inform him.

When any Orders are to be given out in the Absence of the General Officers of the Day, the Adjutant-General remes them from the General in Chief, and sends them to the thorse of Brigade of the Day for the Horse and Foot, if it these to both, for their being immediately executed.

At the Opening of the Campaign, he is to settle with the bajors of Brigade the Rosters for the several Duties, as also many other time that an Alteration is required.

It is likewise his Duty to inspect into the Discipline of the smoops, to see that each Regiment keeps strictly to the Exercise order'd.

In short, the Adjutant-General is to keep an Account of the straight of the first thing which passes in the Army, and attend on the General in Chief when he goes abroad, if he is not employ'd that some other part of his Duty; but in the Day of Action has to be always near his Person, to carry his Orders to the strength of the Horse and Foot, which is likewise the Duty

Cha

D

on te

fith

ul; one

riox fO

W

ave lings aro

mi

is hem

or D

rat in

ut t

ive I

T

Juty Lay Lay La t

lajo

duty T

ot a

loc

T

19

of his Aid-de Camps; but when the Adjutant-General is prefent, and that there are any Orders of Consequence to be de liver'd to those who command the Lines, he is generally sen to avoid Mistakes in the giving of them; since we may resonably suppose, that Length of Service, and a thorough Know ledge of Military Affairs, were the chief Motives which promoted him to that Employment. The same Qualification are required in Aid-de Camps.

Left the Out-Posts should be forgot upon any sudden of unexpected March of the Army, the Adjutant-General is take care that they are drawn in in due time, without whice Precaution the Men on those Commands may be taken of destroyed by the Enemy. He is likewise to see that all the Out-Posts are relieved regularly, lest the Major of Brigade of

the Day should neglect or omit it.

ARTICLE II.

The Orders are always given out at the Head-Quarters, an generally in the Forenoon; at which time it is usual for mo of the General Officers of the Army to repair thither; and a the General Officers of the Day are to receive the Orders from the General in Chief, they are obliged to wait upon him a that time.

The Majors of Brigade of the Day for the whole, and tho for each Nation, are to be at the Head-Quarters at the sam

time.

The General Officers of the Day, both of the Horse an Foot, receive the Orders from the General in Chief, which should be taken in writing by the Major-Generals and Bri

gadiers.

As foon as the Orders are received, the Major-General of the Day for the Horse is to wait upon the General of the Horse and the Major-General of the Day for the Foot is to wait upon the General of the Foot, to whom they are to deliver the Orders, and to know what particular Commands they have so the Troops over which they are placed; but as nothing a Moment can be done but by the Direction of the General in Chief, we may therefore suppose that the Orders which are given by the General of the Horse or Foot relate only to the keeping up of Discipline and Order in the several Corps: and what Orders they receive from them, they are to acquaint the Lieutenant-Generals of the Day with, and then deliver them to the Brigadiers of the Day, to be given out with the rest.

XIX

pre

e de fen

re

non pro

tion

n o

is t

vhic

en o

1 th

de d

an mo ind a

fron m a

tho

fam

e an which Bri

ral d **Iorfe** upol

e Or ve fo

ing o ral in

h an

reft. uring

During the time that the Major-Generals are gone to wait the Generals of the Horse and Foot, the Brigadiers of Day are to deliver the Orders to the Majors of Brigade the Day for the Whole, and to fettle with them the Deis in the doing of which they are to be very exact, that me may be order'd on Duty out of their Turn, or that the mops of any Nation furnish more than their due Proportion Officers and Private Soldiers to the feveral Commands then

When the Majors of Brigade of the Day for the Whole are received the Orders from, and fix'd the Detail with the readiers of the Day, they are to deliver them to the Manof Brigade of the Day of the several Nations, with the niculars of what Officers and Private Men each are to mith.

The National Majors of Brigade of the Day (if I may be low'd the Expression, for Distinction's sake) return immebiely to their Incampment, deliver the Orders to the Mam of Brigade of their own Troops, and fettle amongst muselves what their Brigades, or Regiments, are to furnish Duties then order'd; after which, the Majors of Brigade nit upon their Brigadiers, deliver them the Orders, receive his particular Commands for their Brigades, and then give the Whole to the Majors of the Regiments of their respecm Brigades.

The Majors wait upon their own Colonels, deliver them Orders, receive their Commands for their Regiments, and mant-Colonels, acquaint them with the Orders, afterwards them out to the Orderly Serjeant of each Company, mame the Officers of the Regiment who are to go on buy, with the Number of Private Men from each Com-ny; after which the Serjeants deliver the Orders to their on Officers, and the Corporals (one of each Company beg always present when the Serjeants receive Orders, as 6 the Drum-Major) warn the Private Men, and the Drumajor does the same by the Drummers who are to go on outy.

The Lieutenant-Generals and Major-Generals who were to the stat the Head-Quarters at Orderly-time, lend amps to the Major of Brigade of the Day of their own at the mops for the Orders.

The Decree of Marshal of each Nation is to receive the Or-

in the same Manner.

The

hap.

The

s, l

y ha

that Da

irad

in t

eGr

ofe o

Ent

ther Suril

ant agii ach

our our

land land

Dut

oce fin

e le

Canvorer Majo Tour

Fi

alion an al-

T

The Major of the Train, and the Provost-General of the Army, receive Orders from the Adjutant-General at the He Ouarters.

All Orders, Subsequent to those at Orderly-time, which the Generals of the Day shall receive from the General in Children are to send by their Aid-de-Camps to the Majors of Benedicted and the Day for the Whole, that they may be immediate executed. Upon their receiving such Orders, they are to set them in Writing to the National Majors of Brigade of the Day by their Orderly Serjeants, who communicate them the rest, and they to the Regiments of their respective Benediction and they to the Regiments of their respective Benediction and they to the Regiments.

When any Detachment is made which is to continue of any time, it must be particularly Specified in the Order, the Men may be provided with Ammunition-Bread, and Particularly Specified in the Order, the Men may be provided with Ammunition-Bread, and Particularly Specified in the Order, the Men may be provided with Ammunition-Bread, and Particularly Specified in the Order, the Men may be provided with Ammunition-Bread, and Particularly Specified in the Order, the Men may be provided with Ammunition-Bread, and Particularly Specified in the Order, the Men may be provided with Ammunition-Bread, and Particularly Specified in the Order, the Men may be provided with Ammunition-Bread, and Particularly Specified in the Order, the Men may be provided with Ammunition-Bread, and Particularly Specified in the Order, the Men may be provided with Ammunition-Bread, and Particularly Specified in the Order, the Men may be provided with Ammunition-Bread, and Particularly Specified in the Order, the Men may be provided with Ammunition-Bread, and Particularly Specified in the Order, the Men may be provided with Ammunition-Bread, and Particularly Specified in the Order, the Men may be provided with Ammunition-Bread, and Particularly Specified in the Order of the Order

accordingly.

Thus far I have shewn how Orders are Received and D stributed to the Army, and in the following article I share Treat of the General Detail, according to the Military Acceptation of the Word.

ARTICLE III.

All the General Officers of the Foot of the fame Rank Rowith one another, and are order'd on Duty according to Seniority. The fame Rule is observed amongst the General Officers of the Horse; and at the Opening of the Campaign, List of the General Officers in the Army, with the Dates of their Commissions, is taken by the Adjutant-General, an given by him to the Majors of Brigade of the Horse and Foo

When the General Officers are to go on Duty, they a

always mention'd by Name in Publick Orders.

The General of the Horse, or the General of the Foot, hav not any fix'd Duty; but when a considerable Body of Troops order'd out upon any Service, they are generally appointed to Command them; in which case they have always one or mor Lieutenant-Generals, several Major Generals and Brigadies under them, the Number of whom are generally proportion to the Number of Troops, or as the Service on which they are to be employ'd may require; the particular Number of Me which the General Officers are to have under their Comman being no where fix'd: For it has frequently happen'd that Marshal of France has had under his Command only ten or fix teen thousand Men, and at another time, an hundred thousand

The Lieutenant-Generals, Major-Generals, and Brigas, have a conftant and fix'd Duty, as that of the Day, ith is explain'd in the foregoing Articles. Besides which, have that of Commands, which is when they are order'd with Entire Battalions, or Detachments from the Whole; that they have two distinct Duties in the Army, that of Day, and Commands, which is kept by the Majors of Day, and Commands, which is kept by the Majors of the Picquet beyond the Limits of the Camp, which is a Grand-Guard, it passes for a Command both for them and the of the Picquet, and is allow'd as such in the General Intil.

Intire Battalions are frequently Detach'd from the Army, ther for the Forming of a Siege, Blocking up of the Enemy's artifons, fecuring, or covering, fome Part of your own lastry from the Inroads of the Enemy, or for Convoys, in the second of Ammunition and Provisions to the Army; all of the pass for Duties: but when Battalions are Detach'd for acovering of the General's Quarters, it only goes for a

our of Fatigue.

of t

He

ht

Chi

B

iate

(er

ft

m

B

e or

P

D

fha

cce

Ro

o Se

ner

gn,

es (

an

Foo

y ai

hav

ops

ed t

mor

adie

ion

y 21

Me

man

hat

or fil

Th

As each Nation had a different Number of Battalions in Inders, their Duty was Regulated by a Roster; (which time, I suppose, was given it by the Person who invented that as that of Sieges was very severe Service, it was made Duty a-part, that every Battalion might take their Tour in mess of time; so that, properly speaking, there were three that Duties for Entire Battalions. The first was Sieges; a second Blockades, covering of your own Territories, or lavoys, or Commands of the like Nature; and the third, stering of Quarters, the Detail of which was kept by the stairs of Brigade. I presume the Generals had a particular sor to Sieges, as well as Battalions.

field-Officers are not order'd on Duty by Name in the Gemal Orders, but by Nation; each being to give as many Comels, Lieutenant-Colonels, and Majors, as they had Batment in the Field; so that when any were Sick, Wounded, when the by leave, those of the Nation, who remain'd, did

Duty for the full Complement.

They have two distinct Duties in the general Detail, Pictand Commands, which is regulated by a Roster; the most which is exactly the same as that which is made for detaching of Entire Battalions, since they are always to me an equal Number with them.

Cha

for t

Piopo

bya

T

both

Parti

in 25

T

ms'd

Regi

Ť

the !

more

h

and

and

Dui

oppo talic

211

tho

mo

and

Pla

wil

Bat

10

br

m

b

b

th it

fo

×

In the general Orders it is always faid, that fuch a Nation is to give a Colonel, fuch a Nation a Lieutenant-Colonel, a fuch a Major for the Picquet for fuch or fuch a Wing; a when Field-Officers are order'd for Commands, they are me tion'd in the same Manner in the general Orders.

In the particular Detail of each Nation, the Majors of B gade kept a List of the Field-Officers of their own Troops we were present, and when it came to their turn to surnish as for the Picquet of Commands, they order'd them on Duty b Seniority, and mention'd them by Name in the Orders which

they deliver'd to their own Troops.

What particular Duty each Nation might have for the own Field-Officers, I can't fay; but that of the British, we general Courts-Martial, a Detail of which was kept by the

own Majors of Brigade.

As every Nation had a different Establishment of Office to their Regiments, each Nation gave therefore Captains an Subalterns only in Proportion to their Establishment; which Duty was regulated by a Roster, by taking an Eighth of Tenth of the Captains of each Nation, and the Sixteenth of Twentieth of the Subalterns, and form'd Rosters by the Numbers for the general Detail of Captains and Subalterns for whom there was only that of Commands, the Number which each Battalion surnished to the Picquet being equal and constantly the same; therefore the Majors of Brigat kept only that of Commands.

As the Battalions of Great-Britain were all upon the fam Establishment, as to their Number of Officers, they all gavequally with one another, without any regard to those which had more Captains and Subalterns sick or absent than another every Battalion being to do Duty for its full Complement and I suppose the Troops of every other Nation observed the

fame Rule amongst themselves.

When any British Captains and Subalterns were appointed for Commands by the general Orders, their own Majors of Brigade regulated amongst themselves what Battalions were to furnish them; and in the giving of the Orders to their own Troops they mention'd the Regiments by Name who were the furnish Captains and who Subalterns.

The particular Duty for the Captains of the English Batta lions was that of Courts-Martial, which Detail was kept by

their own Majors of Brigade.

Every Battalion in the Army, whether ftrong or weak gives an equal Number of Private Men to all Detachments

T

26

, 2

a me

f B

W

1 21

ty b

the

the

fice an

hic

h d

th d

tho

ern

mb

qua

igad

fam

gav

vhic

the

ent

d th

inte

rs d

wer

OW

re t

atta

ot b

veak

ents

fo

for the Use of which, I have hereunto annex'd a Table of hoportion, that no Time may be lost, or a Mistake made

These were the established Rules for the Detail in Flanders, both as it regarded the whole, and that of each Nation in Particular; and in the next Place I shall endeavour to shew, is as clear a Manner as I can, the Form and Use of a Rosser, in Table, for regulating the Duty of an Army which is composed of the Troops of different Princes, whose Number of Regiments, or Officers, are unequal.

The Roster is used by the Horse as well as the Foot, for the regulating of the Duty of entire Squadrons, which are

more frequently detach'd than Battalions.

Explanation of the following Roster.

In the first Column are the Names of the several Nations; and in the Second, the Number of Battalions which each had; and as the highest Number was 50 which belong'd to the Dutch, 50 Columns more are added, which makes 50 Squares opposite to each Nation; but as the English have but 17 Battalions, and being only to give in Proportion to that Number, all the Squares but 17 are filled up: The same is observed by those of Prussia, Hanover, and Denmark, each having no more blank Squares left than they have Battalions.

The Method of placing the blank Squares at a Distance, and filling up of those between them, may be seen by the san; but the Reason for dividing of them in this Manner will appear very plain, when the Method of detaching of

lattalions, by the Roster, is known.

As 17 to 50 is almost 1 to 3, the dividing of the blank squares opposite to the English, is very regular and easy; as 10 to 50 is 1 to 5, which is the Danes, theirs is quite regular; but those of Prussia and Hanover not bearing so near a proportion, the Number of the fill'd-up Squares between the

Manks, will, of courfe, vary.

All the Columns are number'd on the Top from 1 to 50, and as the blank Squares in the feveral Columns are suppos'd to be Battalions, I have number'd them from 1 to 104 as they are to be detach'd the one after the other; which shews the Method of detaching of them in so clear a manner, that it must be conceiv'd at first View, and will enable any one to form Rosters for any Number, and save me the Trouble of wilding more Plans of this Nature.

TT

But in order to see how the Proportion answers, let suppose three Sieges to be undertaken at different Times, each of which 30 Battalions are to be detached.

The first 30 Battalions begins with Column 1, and en with Column 14, the Blanks in which Columns I have mark'd with a Point, or Stop to distinguish them from the

reft.

The Second begins with Column 15, and ends with Column 29, the Blanks in which are mark'd with a Stroke thus (—). The third Siege begins with Column 30, and end with Column 43, the Blanks in those Columns are mark'

with a Cross, thus (†).

The following Table will shew the Number of Battalion each Nation is to furnish to the several Sieges, and what Number remains undetach'd of the Whole: And as Calculation of this Nature won't admit of Fractions, it is impossible to bring the Proportions nearer, or invent a more proper Me thod for the Purpose, than this

Nations.	of Battali- ons at the first Siege.	of Battali- ons at the fecond	of Battali- ons at the third	Number of Battali- ons Re- main'd un- detach'd.	of Battali- ons which
English	5	5	5	2	17
Prusians	4	4	4	2	14
Hanoverians	4	3	4	2	13
Dutch	14	15	14	7	50
Danes	3	3	3	.	10
Total	30	30	30	14	104

any Namber, and here a

t i,

en hav

Co coke end ark'

lion Jum tion ffible Me

nber attalithich g'd ach on.

7

0

3

0

Expla

											100	Se Constant		2000	Terry spring	4076	Marin Mari		The series							
	Battalions belong	.76	Roste	r Ge	eneri	ıl fə	ir the	Det	atchi	ng 0j	(Ba	ttalio	rns, ac	cordi	ng to	that i	in Fla	inder	rs in	ויסטקו	7.					
Nations	N. of B.	,	2	3	4.	5	6	7	8	9	10	. 11	12	13	14	15	16	17	16	19	20	21	22	23	24	25
English	17	!			8.			15			21			26			32			• 39			45			51
Prussians	14	2			18 27 35 41 49 49 11 19 29 37 46 -																					
Hannoverians	13	3.				"				19					29				37				46			
Dutch	50	4	ó	7	7 9 12 13 16 17 20 22 23 25 28 30 31 33 36 36 40 42 43 47 48 50 52																					
Danes	10	5		0 7 9 12 13 10 17 20 22 23 25 20 30 31 30 30 30 40 42 41 40 30 32 14 14 14 24 34 34 34 44 44																						
	Market Company	1 7 7 3 4 1	Continuation of the Roster.												4000000											
	nations belong ach Nation .	,	Contin	uatio	n of	the K	?ofte	//////////////////////////////////////							•											
Nations		26	Contin	ruatio 28	en of	the K	2. often	32	33	34	.35	36	3.7	38	39	40	41	42	43	44	45	46	47	46	49	50
Nations English	Banalions to each Nat							STATES.	33	34	.35	36	3.7	38		40	41	42	43 69 +	44	45	46	47	46	49	50
	W.of Banalions ing to each Nat			28			31	STATES.	33 68 +	70	_35	36. 74.	Table 1	38		62	41	42	art y	44	45		47	46		50
English	N.of Banalions ing to each Nat		27	28		30	31	STATES.		70	_35		Table 1	79		62 +	41	42 87 +	art y		45		47			50
English Prussians	T. of Banalions ing to each Nat	26	27	28		3c 61 +	31	STATES.		70 +	7.3		Table 1			62 +			art y		45	94	47			

Cl

to Ob of a commy that Put man for Baa

T! and the

an 37 th

Explanation of the following Table.

As the Table is carried no further than from 10 Battalions to 109, and from 2 Men a Battalion to 71, there may be an Objection for its not being more complete; fince Detachments of a greater Number of Men than 71 a Regiment are often commanded, particularly at Sieges and in Garrison: but as my principal Design is only to shew the Use of the Table, if that End is complied with, I think I have sully answer'd the Purpose; for when the Method is known, every one may make a Table of Proportion to as high a Number as they please for their own use.

Every Leaf, or two Sides, compleats the Table of Ten

Battalions as far as the Calculation is carried.

The first Leaf begins with 10 Battalions and ends with 19, The second Leaf begins with 20 Battalions, and ends with 29, and so with the rest, to 109 Battalions, as may be seen by

the Figure on the Top.

The first Side of every Leaf begins with 2 Men a Battalion, and ends with 36, the second Side of every one begins with 37 Men a Battalion, and ends with 71, as may be seen by the Figures in the Margin, or first Column.

The Use of the Table is as follows.

When a Number of Men are to be detach'd, and that you want to know the Proportion which each Regiment is to give, you must find in the Top the Number which the Battalions in the Army confifts of. After that carry your Eye down the Column 'till you find the Number order'd, and then trace the Line, in which the Number stands, 'till you come to the Margin, or first Column, and the Figures there shew you the Number which each Battalion is to furnish; but as it won't always happen that you can find in the Column the exact Number order'd, but that some will be wanting, or exceed it, you must stop at that which comes the nearest to it. but always less than the Number requir'd. The Men thus wanting are called Odd Men, because they don't come exactly to a Man a Battalion. When this is the Case, you then order as many Battalions as there are Men wanting to give each a Man more than what are mention'd in the Margin, an Account of which is kept by the Majors of Brigade, that every Battalion may furnish Odd Men in their Turn,

U 2

But lest it should not be fully comprehended by the above Explanation, a few Examples, I believe, will make it indispu-

tably fo.

Suppose a Detachment is to be made of 560 Men from 16 Battalions; you must find out the Column on the Top Number 16, then look down the Column 'till you come to 544, (which is the nearest you can come to the Number order'd without exceeding it, which you are never to do) and you'll find the Figure in the Margin opposite to that Number to be 34, which is 34 Men a Battalion; but as 34 Men a Battalion makes only 544, and that 550 are requir'd, six Battalions must therefore give 35 Men each, and the other ten Battalions only 34 Men each.

Let us suppose surther, that 1600 Men are order'd from 25 Battalions. You must find out the Number 25 on the Top, and look down that Column; but as the highest Number on the first Side of that Leaf is 900, you must turn over and look down Column 25 on the back of it 'till you come to 1600, and you'll find the Figures opposite to it in the Margin to be 64, which is the Number each Battalion is to

give.

I am persuaded that I need not trouble the Reader with a surther Explanation, since it must be thoroughly understood by

what is already faid of it.

As Detachments from the Horse are made from the Squadrons as the Foot are from Battalions, the Table will be as useful to the Cavalry as it is to the Infantry, by putting in the Word Squadrons instead of Battalions.



Jumb

letach rom Buttal

1

1

1

1

Table of Proportion for detaching of Private Men.

X,

ove pu-

16 m-

er'd u'll be lion ons

the imover ome the s to

furby

U2-

the

able

	Number of Battalions from which the Men are to be detach'd.												
1	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17 1	18	19			
	20	22	24	26	28	30	32	34	361	38			
	30	33	36	39	42	45	48	51	54	57			
	40	44	48	52	56	60	64	68	72	76			
7	50	55	60	65	70	75	80	85	0 90	99			
	60	66	72	78	84	90	96	102	108	114			
	70	77	84	91	98	105	112	119	126	133			
	80	88	96	104	112	120	128	136	144	15			
	90	99	108	117	126	135	144	153	162	17			
	100	110	120	130	140	150	160	170	180	190			
	110	121	132	143	154	165	176	187	198	20			
	120	132	144	156	168	180	192	204	216	22			
-	130	143	156	169	182	195	208	221	234	24			
	140	154	168	182	196	210	224	238	252	26			
ı	150	165	180	195	210	225	240	255	270	28			
١	160	176	192	208	224	240	256	272	288	30			
ı	170	187	204	221	238	255	272	289	306	32			
	180	198	216	234	252	270	288	306	324	34			
I	190	209	228	247	266	285	304	323	342	36			
ŀ	200	220	240	260	280	300	320	340	360	38			
ı	210	231	252	273	294	315	336	357	378	39			
ı	220	242	264	286	308	330	352	374	396	41			
	230	253	276	299	322	345	368	391	414	4:			
١	240	264	288	312	336	360	384	408	432	45			
1	250	275	300	325	350	375	400	425	450	47			
١	260	286	312	338	364	390	416	442	368	49			
1	270	297	324	351	378	405	432	459	486	5			
1	280	308	336	364	392	420	448		504	5:			
-	290	319	348	377	406	435	464	493	522	5.			
-	300	330	360	390	420	450	480	510	540	5			
1	310	341	372	403	434	465	496	527	558	5			
	320	352	384	416	448	480	512	544	576	6			
-	330	363	396	429	462	495	528	561	594	6			
1	340	374	408	442	476	510	544	578	612	6.			
	350	1 10 1 10 m	420	455	490	525	560	595	630	6			
	360		432	468	504	540			648				

Number of	Battalions from which the Number												
Men to be detach'd.	10	11	12	T3	14	15	16	171	18	19	Number Men to derach'd		
37	37¢	407 1	444	481	518	555	192	629	666	703	2		
38	380	418	456	494	532	570	608	646	684	721	3		
39	390	429	468	507	546	585	624	663	702	741	4		
40	400	440	480	520	560	600	640	680	720	760	5		
41	410	451	492	533	574	615	656	697	738	779	6		
42	420	462	504	546	588	630	672	714	756	798	7		
43	430	473	516	559	602	645	638	731	774	817	8		
44	440	484	528	572	616	660	704	748	792	835	9		
45	450	495	540	585	630	675	720	765	810	855	10		
46	460	506	552	598	644	690	736	782	828	874	11		
47	470	517	564	611	658	705	752	799	846	893	12		
48	480	528	576	624	672	720	768	816	864	912	13		
49	490	539	588	637	686	735	784	833	882	931	14		
50	500	550	600	650	700	750	800	850	900	950	1		
51	510	561	612	663	714	765	816	867	918	969	1		
52	520	572	624	676	728	780	832	884	936	988	1		
53	530	583	636	689	742	795	848	901	954	1007	1		
54	540	594	648	702	756	810	864	918	972	1026	1		
55	550	605	660	715	770	825	880	935	990	1045	2		
56	560	616	672	728	784	840	896	952	1008	1064	2		
57	570	627	684	741	798	855	912	969	1026	1083	2		
58	580	638	696	754	812	870	928	986	1044	1102			
59	590	649	708	767	826	885	944	1003	1062	1121			
60	600	10.00	720	780	840	900	960	1020	1080	1140			
61	610		732	793	854	915	976	1037	1098		100		
62	620	1245	744	806	868	930	992	10;4	1116	1178			
63	630	El March	756	819	832	945	1008	1071	1134	1197			
64	640		768	832	896	960	1024	1088	1152	1216			
65	650	4 3.79 6.31	780	845	910	975	1040	1105	1170	1235			
66	650		792	858	924	990	1056	1122	1188	1154			
67	670		804	371	938	1005	1072	1139	1206	127	3		
68	680	The same of the	816	884	952	1020	1088	1156	1		2		
	690	3.7	828	897	966	1035	1104	1173	1913		1		
69	700	A STATE OF		910	980	1050	4 15	1000		133	0		
70	710		The same of the last	The second second	994	1065	AND THE PERSON NAMED IN	Carried Street, Square, Square		3 1 134	9		

in the Margin are to be Detach'd.

Number o Men to be detach'd.

20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28 j	29
401	42	44	461	48	501	52	54	56	58
60	63	66	69	72	75	78	81	84	87
80	84	88	92	96	100	104	108	112	116
100	105	110	115	120	125	130	135	140	145
120	126	132	138	144	150	156	162	168	174
140	147	154	161	168	175	182	189	196	203
160	168	* 176	184	192	200	208	216	224	232
180	189	198	207	216	225	234	243	252	261
200	210	220	230	240	250	260	270	280	290
220	231	242	253	264	275	286	297	308	319
240	252	264	276	288	300	312	324	336	348
260	273	286	299	312	325	338	351	364	377
280	294	308	322	336	350	364	378	392	400
300	315	330	345	360	375	390	405	420	43
320	336	352	368	384	400	416	432	448	46
340	357	374	391	408	425	442	459	476	49
360	378	396	414	432	450	468	486	504	52
380	399	418	437	456	475	494	513	532	55
400	420	440	460	480	500	520	540	560	58
420	441	462	483	504	525	546	567	588	60
440	462	484	506	528	550	572	594	616	63
460	483	506	529	552	575	598	621	644	66
480	504	528	552	576	600	624	648	672	69
500	525	550	575	600	625	650	675	700	72
520	546	572	598	624	650	676	702	728	75
540		594	621	648	675			1	71
560	310	616	644		700	The second second			8
580			667		725	8			8.
600			690	1	750	1 0		18 55o	8
620	- 1 - 1	100000	713	a distant					8
640	The second		736			25.00		5.45	9
Burney.	A 15 to 20 1	9 / 10 10 10 10	759		1 15 3 7 7	1000	1 17 10 4	615	9
660			11.00	79.	N 20 1		1 2 3 3 1 1	A STATE OF THE PARTY OF THE PAR	1 9
680	12.51				a Barbara	9,5 4.7	11 11 11	1000	10
700				Sales Congli	A STATE OF THE STA			1008	A 17 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2

П	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29
П	740	777	814	851	888	925	962	999	1036	1073
П	760	798	836	874	912	950	988	1026	1064	110
H	780	819	858	897	936	97:	1014	1053	1092	113
II	800	840	880	920	960	1000	1040	1080	1120	116
11	820	861	902	943	984	1025	1066	1107	1143	118
1	840	882	924	966	1008	1050	1092	1134	1176	121
ı	860	903	946	989	1032	1075	1118	1161	1204	124
I	880	924	968	1012	1056	1100	1144	1188	1232	127
ı	900	945	990	1035	1080	1125	1170	1215	1260	130
ı	920	966	1012	1058	1104	1150	1196	1242	1288	133
ı	940	987	1034	1081	1128	1175	1222	1269	1316	136
II	960	1008	1056	1104	1152	1200	1248	1296	1344	130
II	980	1029	1078	1127	1176	1225	1274	1323	1372	14:
II	1000	1050	1100	1150	1200	1250	1300	1350	1400	1
II	1020	1071	1122	1173	1224	1275	1326	1377	1428	1
I	1040	1092	1144	1196	1248	1300	1352	1404	1456	15
ı	1060	1113	1166	1219	1272	1325	1378	1431	100	1
I	1080	1134	1188	1242	1296	1350	1404	1458	1512	15
II	1100	1155	1210	1265	1320	1375	1430	1485	1 1 1 1 1 1 1	1
H	1120	1176	1232	1288	1344	1400			100	1
II	1140	1197	1254	1311	1368	1425	1482	1539		
	1160	1218	1276	1334	1392	1450	1508	1566		1
l	1180	1239	1298	1357	1416	1475	1534	1593		
١	1200	1260	1320	1380	1440	1500	1560	Marillon E.V.		1
ı	1220	1281	1342	1403	1464	1525	1586	1 3 m. 1/2 "V		
II	1240	1302	1364	1426	1488	1550		1		
II	1260	1323	1386	1449	1512			4 - 33-25	1000	
II	1280	1344	1408	1472	1536	1600			100	
11	1300	1365	1430	1495	1560	1625	1690	1755	10000	
11	1320	1386	1452	1518	1584	all the state of the state of			The Best of the	-
11	1340	1407	1474	1541	1608	1675		The second second	1 2 3	- 1
1	1360	1428	1496	1564	100 -11 -11	1 S		A CASA CASA	A PARTY	
1	1380	1449	1518	1587	and the same of			N. S.	10000	
				1610	1680	1750	1820	1890		

Number of		in	the A	Margi.	n are	to be	Deta	ch'd.		
Men to be detach'd.	30	31	32	33	34	35	36	37	38	39
2	601	62	641	66	68	701	72	74	76	78
3	90	93	96	99	102	101	108	111	114	117
4	120	124	128	132	136	140	144	148	152	156
5	150	155	160	165	170	17:	180	185	190	195
6	180	186	192	198	204	210	216	222	228	234
150 150 150	210	217	224	231	238	245	252	259	266	273
7 8	240	248	256	264	272	280	288	296	304	312
9	270	279	288	297	306	315	324	333	342	351
10	300	310	320	330	340	35C	360	370	380	390
11	330	341	352	363	374	385	396	407	418	429
12	360	372	384	396	408	420	432	444	456	468
13	390	403	416	429	442	455	468	481	494	507
14	420	434	448	462	476	490	504	518	532	546
15	450	465	480	495	510	525	540	555	570	585
16	480	496	512	528	544	560	576	592	608	624
17	510	527	544	561	578	595	612	629	646	663
18	540	558	576	594	612	630	648	666	684	702
19	570	589	608	627	646	665	684	703	722	741
20	600	620	640	660	680	700	720	740	760	780
21	630	651	672	693	714	735	756	777	798	819
22	660	682	704	726	748	770	792	814	836	858
23	690	713	736	759	782	805	828	851	874	897
24	720	744	768	792	816	840	864	888	912	936
25	750	775	800	825	850	875	900	925	950	975
26	780	806	832	858	884	910	936	962	988	1014
27	810	837	864	891	918	945	972	999	1026	1053
28	840	868	896	924	952	980	1008	1036	1064	1092
29	870	899	928	957	986	1015	1044	1 5 . 7 2 5	1102	
30	900	930	960	990	1020	S. A. Barrier	13.	1110	1140	
31	930	961	992	1023	1054		1116	1147	1178	
32	960	992	1 3745		1 2 30			0.5 / 5 -	1216	
33	990	1023	1056	1089	1122	1155	1188	1221	1254	1287
34	1020	1054	1088	1122	1156	1190	2000000	1258	1292	1326
35	1050	1085	1120	1155	1190	1 100	1260	1295	1330	1365
36	1080			1188	7 15 1	DECEMBER OF THE	10000		1368	A CONTRACT
30	1080	11116	11152	X		1200	1295	1332	1308	14

Number of	5,427	Be	attalio	ns fi	rom u	bich	the A	umbe	r	
Men to be detach'd.	30	31	32	33	34	35	36	37	1 38	39
37	1110	1147	1184	1221	1258	1295	1332	1369	1406	-
38	1140	1178	1216	1254	1292	1330	1368	1406	19-3 201	1482
39	1170	1209	1248	1287	1326	1365	1404	2443	1482	1521
40	1200	1240	1280	1320	1360	1400	1440	1480	1520	1560
41	1230	1271	1312	1353	1394	1435	1476	1517	1558	1599
42	1260	1302	1344	1386	1428	1470	1512	1554	1596	1638
43	1290	1333	1376	1419	1462	1505	1548	1591	1634	1677
44	1320	1364	1408	1452	1496	1540	1584	1628	1672	1716
45	1350	1395	1440	1480	1530	1575	1620	1665	1710	1755
46	1380	1426	1472	1518	1564	1610	1656	1702	1748	1794
47	1410	1457	1504	1551	1598	1645	1692	1739	1786	1833
48	1440	1488	1536	1584	CAN THE STATE OF	1680	1728	1776	1824	1872
49	1470	1519	1568	1617	1676		1764	1813	1862	1911
50	1500	1550	1600	1650		1750	1800	1850	1900	1950
51	1530	1581	1632	1683	1734	1785	1836	1887	1938	1989
52	1560	1612	1664	1716		1820	1872	1924	1976	2018
53	1590	1643	1696	1749	1802	11-11-11	1908	1961	2014	2067
54	1620	1674	1728	1782	1000000	24 10 - 11	1944		2052	2106
55	1650	1705	1760	1815	1870	1925	1980	2035	2090	2145
56	1680	1736	1792	1848	1000		2016	2072		2184
57	1710	1767	1824	1	1938		2052	2109	2166	2213
58	1740	1798	1856	1914	1		2088	2146	2204	2262
59	1770	1829	1888	1947	100	2065	2124		13.	2301
60	1800	1	1920	1980	The same		2160	2220	2280	
61	1830 1860	1 395	1952	1.00					2318	2379
62	1890	1922	2016	1000		2170		2294	1000	2418
63	1920	1953	2018	2079	1	2240	2268	2331	2394	2457
64	1950			2145	2176		2304	2368	2432	2496
66		2046	1 8 5 V			ACCO.		2405		180
The East of St.	2010	35 632	2144			2310	20.0			1. Yan
67 6 3	2040		6.00		1 1 304	4 4 75	13.5	1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1		0
69	2070	1	10-5-61		2312		2448		1.55	
70	2100	1 100	12.00		2380					
	2130	L. V		10 2 "	1	2450	w 12 " To	2590	property of	
71	,0	1201	1-1-1	543	2414	1 4405	2556	2627	12090	12/09

Nun Mer dera in the Margin are to be Detach'd.

Number of Men to be			ine 1							
letach'd.	40	41	42	43	44	451	46	47	48	49
2	801	821	84	861	881	90	921	94	961	98
3	120	123	126	129	132	135	138	141	144	147
4	160	164	168	172	176	180	184	188	192	196
5	200	205	210	215	220	225	230	235	240	245
6	240	246	252	258	264	270	276	282	288	294
7	280	287	294	301	308	315	322	329	336	343
8	320	328	336	344	352	360	368	376	384	392
. 9	360	369	378	387	396	405	414	423	432	44 T
10	400	410	420	430	410	450	460	470	480	490
11	449	451	462	473	484	495	506	517	528	539
12	480	492	504	516	520	540	552	564	576	588
13	520	533	546	559	572	585	598	611	624	637
14	560	574	588	602	616	630	644	658	672	686
15	600	615	630	645	660	675	690	705	720	735
16	640	656	672	688	704	720	736	752	768	784
17	680	697	714	731	748	765	782	799	816	833
18	720	738	756	774	792	816	828	846	864	882
19	760	779	798	817	836	855	874	893	912	931
20	800	820	840	860	880	900	920	940	960	980
23	840	861	882	903	924	945	966	987	1008	1029
22	880	902	924	946	968	990	1012	1034	1056	1078
23	920	943	966	989	1012	1035	1058	1081	1104	1127
24	960	984	1008	1032	1056	1080	1104	1128	1152	1176
25	1000	1025	1050	1075	1100	1125	1150	1175	1200	1225
26	1040	1066	1092	1118	1144	1170	1196	1222	1248	1274
37	1080	1107	1134	1161	1188	1215	1242	1269	1296	1323
48	1120	1148	1176	1204	1232	1260	1288	1316	1344	1372
49	116c	1189	Company of the	1247	1276	1305	1334	1353	1392	1421
30	1200	1230	1260	1290	The state of the	1350	1380	1410	1440	1470
31	1240	1271	1302	1333	1364	1395	1426	1457	1488	1519
32	128c	1312	1344	- 3	1000	1440	1472	1	1536	1568
33	1320	1353	1386	the state of the s	1452	1485	1518	1 1 30	10.100	
34	136c	1394	1428			1530	1564			1666
35	1400	1435	1470	1505	1540			A Company of		171
36	1440	1476	The state of	1548			1.0	170 5	1728	

Number of	Battalions from which the Number												
Men to be detach'd.	40	41	42	43	44	45	46	47	48	49	Number of Men to letach'd.		
37	1480	1517	1554	1591	1628	1665	1702	1739	1776	1813	2		
38	1520	1558	1596	1634	1672	1710	1748	1786	1824	1862	3		
39	1560	1599	1638	1677	1716	1755	1794	1833	1872	1911	4		
40	1600	1640	1680	1720	1760	1800	1840	1880	1920	1960	5		
41	1640	1681	1722	1763	1804	1845	1886	1927	1968	2009	6		
42	1680	1722	1764	1806	1848	1890	1932	1974	2016	2058	7		
43	1720	1763	1806	1849	1892	1935	1978	2021	2064	2107	8		
44	1760	1804	1848	1892	1936	1980	2024	2068	2112	2156	9		
45	1800	1845	1890	1935	1980	2025	2070	2115	2160	2205	10		
46	1840	1886	1932	1978	2024	2070	2116	2162	2208	2254	11		
47	1880	1927	1974	2021	2068	2115	2162	2209	2256	2303	12		
48	1920	1968	2016	2064	2132	2160	2208	2256	2304	2352	13		
49	1960	2009	2058	2107	2156	2205	2254	2303	2352	2401	14		
50	2000	2050	2100	2150	2200	2250	2300	2350	2400	2450	15		
51	2040	2091	2142	2193	2244	2295	2346	2397	2448	2499	16		
52	2080	2132	2184	2236	2288	2340	2392	2444	2496	2548	17		
53	2120	2173	2226	2279	2332	2385	2438	2491	2544	2597	1		
54	2160	2214	2268	2322		2430	2484	2538	2592	2646	30		
55	2200	2255	2310	2365	2420	2475	2530	2585	2640	2695	2		
56	2240	2296	2352	2408	100	2520	7576	2632	2688	2744	2		
57	2280	2337	2394	2451	2508	2565	2622	2679	2736	2793	3		
58	2320	2378	2436		2552	2610	2668	2726	2784	2842			
59	2360	2419	2478	3 12 34 15	1	2655	2714	2773	2832	2891			
60	2400	2460	2520		1000	1.3		2820	2880	2940			
61	2440	2501	2562	1 1 1 1 1 1 1	A STATE OF			2867	2928	2989			
62	2440	2542	2604	100			1 . 1 1 L V C	2914	2976	3038			
63	2520	2583	2646				The second second	2961	3024	3087			
64	2560	2624	2688		1.0.0	288c	2944	3008	3072	3136	5		
65	2600	1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1	2730		1	1979 6 3000		2 8 4		318	5		
66	2640	1 400	2772		1					323	4		
	2680		2814							18 18 18 18			
67			1000	1	1	10.000	3128	3196		150			
68	2720	100	2898			2000		1 25 77 5	15 15 1	1			
69	2800	2870	A CONTRACTOR	D. VATE OF		1 2 1/12 1		100000		1			
70	2840	-	2982	A STATE OF THE PARTY OF THE PAR	-10		100		-	347			
71	11 3040	1-911	12902	2033	124	13.33	1 3-00	3331					

in the Margin are to be Detach'd.

56

8 7

ıı		in	the A	Margi	n are	to be	Detac	h'd.		
of be	50 1	51 l	52 1	53 1	54 1	55 1	56	57 -1	58	59
-11-	100	102	1041	1061	108	1101	112	114	116	118
11	150	153	156	159	162	165	168	171	174	177
11	200	204	208	212	216	220	224	228	232	236
11	250	255	260	265	270	275	280	285	290	295
	300	306	312	318	324	330	336	342	348	354
1	350	357	364	371	378	385	392	399	406	413
١	400	408	416	424	432	440	448	456	464	472
1	450	459	468	477	486	495	504	513	522	53 T
	500	510	520	530	540	550	560	570	580	590
1	550	561	572	583	594	605	616	627	638	649
II	600	612	624	636	648	660	672	684	696	708
11	650	663	676	689	702	715	728	741	754	767
11	700	714	728	742	756	770	784	798	812	826
11	750	765	780	795	810	825	840	855	870	88
II	800	816	832	848	864	880	896	912	928	944
11	850	867	884	901	918	935	952	969	986	100
II	900	918	936	954	972	990	1008	1026	1044	106
II	950	969	988	1007	1026	1045	1064	1083	1102	112
II	1000	1020	1040	1060	1080	1100	1120	1140	1160	118
Ш	1050	1071	100	1113	1134	1155	1176	1197	1218	123
	1100	1122	1111111111		1188	1210	1232	1254	1276	129
1	1150	1173	1196	1219	1242	1265	1288	1311	1334	135
	1200			1272	1296	1320	1344	1368	1392	141
	1250			1325	1350	1375	1400	1425	1450	147
	1300			1378	1404	1430	1456	1482	1508	153
	1350			1431	1458	100	1	1539	1566	159
	1400		16	1484		1540	1568	1596	1624	16
			7.00			1100	34 (N. 17) N	and the second	1682	17
	1450	1 200			1 .	1000	74 - 6 3 3 3 4	4.3830.00		17
	1550	The Note of			1	4		176	1798	18
	1600		Water Control	100000		100	The state of the s		1 1856	18
				1		30.735		-	1 1914	119
	1650	THE RESERVE				3 3 6 3 5		100000000000000000000000000000000000000		
	1700			A 197 . 19-5	1			7.3		1
	1750	17 6. 7	7	100	11 11 11 11		2010		-	
-3 -70	1800	1836	1872	1 1908	1944				100	

Number of			<i></i>	J. J.	70/15 6			W/IIDE	1	Į.
Men to be detach'd.	50	51	52		54	55	56	57	-	4
37	185C	1887	1924	1961	1998	2035	2072	2109	2146	21
38	1900	1938	1976	2014	2052	2090	2128	2166	2204	224
39	1950	1989	2028	2067	2106	2145	2184	2223	2262	230
40	2000	2040	2080	2120	2160	2200	2240	2280	2320	236
41	2050	2091	2132	2173	2214	2255	2296	2337	2378	241
42	2100	2142	2184	2226	2268	2310	2352	2394	2436	247
43	2150	2193	2236	2279	2322	2365	2408	2451	2494	257
44	2200	2244	2288	2532	2376	2420	2464	2508	2552	2.59
45	2250	2295	2340	2385	2430	2475	2520	2565	2610	263
46	2300	2346	2392	2438	2484	2530	2576	2622	2668	271
47	2350	2397	2444	2491	2538	2585	2632	2679	2726	277
48	2400	2448	2496	2544	2592	2640	2688	2736	2784	283
49	2450	2499	2548	2597	2646	2695	2744	2793	2842	289
50	2500	2550	2600	2650	2700	2750	2800	2850	2900	295
51	2550	2601	2652	2703	2754	2805	2856	2907	2958	300
. 52	2600	2652	2704	2756	2808	2860	2912	2964	3016	3061
53	2650	2703	2756	2809	2862	2915	2968	3021	3074	3127
54	2700	2754	1808	2862	2916	2970	3024	3078	3132	3186
55	2750	2805	2860	2915	2970	3025	3080	3135	3190	3245
56	2800	2856	2912	2968	3024	3080	3136	3192	3248	3304
57	2850	2907	2964	3021	3078	3135	3192	3249	3306	3363
58	2900	2958	3016	3074	3132	3190	3248	3306	3364	3422
59	2950	3009	3068	3127	3.186	3245	3304	3363	3422	3481
60	3000	3060	3120	3180	3240	3300	3360	3420	3480	3549
61	3050	3111	3172	3233	3294	3355	3416	3477	3538	3599
62	3100	3162	3224	3286	3348	3410	3472	3534	3596	3658
63	3150	3213	3276	3339	3402	3465	3528	3591	3654	3717
64	3200	3264	3328	3392	3456	3520	3584	3648	3712	3776
65	3250	3315	3380	3445	3510	3575	3640	3705	3770	3835
66	3300	3366		3498	3564					3894
67	3350	1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1	3484	3551	3618				1 200	3953
68	3400	the state of the state of		3604	3672	3740	1.9		3944	4012
69	3450	3519	3588	3657	3726	3795	100	1.7		
70	3500		3640	3710	3780		10 10 11			4130
71	The second second	3621	3692	3766	3834				4118	4189

in the Margin are to be Detach'd.

umber of		•		in'g.			Derac			
ten to be	60	61 4	62	63	64	651	66 1	67 1	68 1	69
2	120	122	124	126	128	130	132	134	136	138
3	180	183	186	189	192	195	198	201	204	207
4	240	244	248	252	256	260	264	268	272	276
5	300	305	310	315	320	325	330	335	340	345
6	360	366	37	378	384	390	396	402	408	414
7	420	427	434	441	448	455	462	469	476	483
8	480	488	496	504	512	520	528	536	544	552
9	540	549	558	567	576	585	594	603	612	621
10	600	610	62c	630	640	650	660	670	680	690
11	660	671	682	693	704	715	726	737	748	759
12	720	732	744	756	768	780	792	804	816.	823
13	780	793	806	819	832	845	858	871	884	897
14	840	854	868	882	896	910	924	938	952	966
15	900	915	930	94	960	975	990	1005	1020	1039
16	960	976	992	1008	1024	1040	1056	1072	1088	1104
17 1	1020	1037	1054	1071	1088	1105	1122	1139	1156	117
18	1080	1098	1116	1134	1152	1170	1188	1206	1224	124
19	1140	1159	1178	1197	1216	1235	1254	1273	1292	131
20	1200	1220	1240	1260	1280	1300	1320	1340	1360	138
21	1260	1281	1302	1323	1344	1365	1386	1407	1428	144
22	1320	1342	1364	1386	1408	1430	1452	1474	1496	151
23	1380	1403	1426	1449	1472	1495	1518	1541	1564	158
24	1440	1464	1488	1512	1536	1560	1584	1608	1632	165
25	1500	1525	1550	1575		1625	1650	1675	1700	172
26	1560		1612	1638	The same of the last	100	1716	1742	1	179
27	1620	1 7	1674	1701	1728	112	1782	1809	1836	186
28	1680	1708	1736	1764		1820	1848	1876		193
29	1740			45 . 72		1885	1914		1	200
30	1800	100000					1980	11.00	1.81	207
31	1860	The second second				2015				1
32	1920	A STATE			2048	The state of		1 2-1	1 198	1250
33	1980			A	19		1 1			
34	2040	1000	Barrier Contract		1 100	3210				
35	2100	1	10 18 75	The second		2275	The state of the s	A ASSESSED		1 3 3 3
36		and the same of	100000	The same of the			2376		The state of	

f]		B	attalie	ns fr	om wi	bich ti	he Nu	mber	1	
e	60 l	611	62 1	63 1	64 1	651	66 1	67 1	68 1	69
1 2	2220	2257	2294	2331	2368	2405	2442	2479	251612	553
11:	2280	2318	2356	2394	2432	2470	2508	2546	2584 2	622
:	2340	2379	2818	2457	2496	2535	2574	2613	2652 3	2691
1	2400	2440	2480	2520	2560	2600	2640	2680	2720	2760
1	2460	2501	2542	2583	2624	2665	2706	2747	2788	2829
11	2520	2562	2604	2646	2688	2770	2732	2814	2856	2898
	2580	2623	2666	2709	2752	2795	2838	2881	2924	2967
11	2640	2684	2728	2772	2816	2860	2904	2948	2992	3036
	2700	2745	2790	2835	2880	2925	2970	3015	306c	3105
	2760	2806	2852	2898	2944	2990	3036	3032	3128	3174
	2820	2867	2914	2961	3008	3055	3102	3149	3196	3243
1	2380	2928	2976	3024	3072	3120	3168	3216	3264	
	2940	2989	3038	3087	3136	3185	3234	3283	3332	3381
	3000	3050	3100	3150	3200	3250	3300	3350	3400	3450
1	3060	3111	3162	3213	3264	3315	3366	3417	3468	3519
	3120	3172	3224	3276	3328	3380	3432	3484	3536	3588
	3180	3233	3286	3339	3392	3445	3498	3551	3604	3657
	3240	3294	3348	3402	3456	3510	3564	1 7 12 1 1 1		3726
	3300	3355	3410	3465	3520	3575	3630	3685	3740	3795
	3360	3416	3472	3528	3584	3640	3696	3752	3808	3864
	3420	3477	3534	3591	3648	3705	3762	3819	3876	393
	3480	3538	3596	3654	3712	3770	3828	3886	1	400
	3540	3599	3658	3717	3776	3835	3894	The second second		
	3600	3660	3720	3780	3840	3900	3960			
	3660			3843			4026	4087		
	3720	3782	3844	3906	3968	4030	4092	4154		
1	3780	3843	3906	3969	4032	4095	4158			434
	3840		1/4	4032			4224	4288		44
	3900					4225	1 1 1 1 1 1			44
1	3960					10 m	19 10 10			
	4020					1000			1. 1	
	4080	4148			1	100	40 11 15 14			
-	4140	4209	4275	1347	4416		1	and the same of	4692	
	4200	1000	434	1410		A Common			1 2 0	
1	4260	14331	14402	14473	4544	1 461	4686	475	7 4828	148

in the Margin are to be Detach'd.

Number of		*** *	DE 212	418.11					A spiritory	12
Men to be detach'd.	701	71	72	73	74 1	75 1	76	77		79
2	1401	142	1441	146	148	150	152	154	156	153
3	210	213	216	219	222	225	228	231	234	237
4	280	284	288	292	296	300	30;	308	312	316
5	350	355	360	365	370	375	38c	385	390	395
6	420	426	432	438	444	45C	45	462	468	474
7	490	497	504	511	518	525	532	539	546.	553
8	560	568	576	584	592	60.	658	616	624	632
9	630	639	648	657	666	67	68+	693	702	711
10	700	710	720	730	740	75C	760	770	780	790
11	770	781	792	803	814	825	836	847	858	869
12	840	852	864	876	333	900	912	924	936	948
13	910	923	936	949	962	975	988	1001	1014	1027
14	980	994	1008	1022	1036	1050	1064	1078	1092	1106
15	1050	1065	1080	1095	1110	1125	1140	1155	1170	1185
36	1120	1136	1152	1168	1184	1200	1216	1232	1248	1264
17	1190	1207	1224	1241	1258	1275	1292	1309	1326	1343
18	1260	1278	1296	1314	1332	1350	1368	1386	1404	1422
. 19	1330	1349	1368	1387	1406	1425	1441	1453	1482	1501
20	1400	1420	1440	1460	1480	1500	1520	1540	1560	1580
21	1470	1491	1512	1533	1554	1575	1596	1617	1638	1659
22	1540	1562	1584	1606	1628	165c	1672	1694	1716	1738
23	1610	1633	1656	1679	1702	1725	1748	1771	1794	1817
24	1680	1704	1728	1752	1776	1800	1824	1848	1872	1896
25	1750	1775	1800	1825	1850	1875	1900	1925	1950	1975
26	1820	1846	1872	1898	1924	1950	1976	2002	2028	2054
27	1890		1944	0.00	1998	2025	2052	2079	2106	2133
28	1960	A Comment of the Comm		2044	1000	2100	1127 11 11	2156	2184	2212
29	2030	2059				2175	2204	2233	2262	2291
30	2100	2.50				2250	100	2310	2340	2370
and the second of	2170			1	Vanil 1	1			The second second	
31	2240	1 1 10 10	1 1 1 1 1 1	1	915.34	10000	100 70 74		2496	1000
32	2310	1000	and the last	300.75	1 1 1 1			1000		
33		and the same		100000			1 1 1 1			190
34	2380		- 10 A TO STORE	4 30 4 6	100	2625	1000	1		
35	2450		2 520	2629					2868	A COLUMN
36	112520	12556	2592	7	7	, - , -	/,5	-,,-		1

41 2870 2911 2952 2993 3034 3075 3116 3157 3198 3 42 2940 2982 3024 3066 3108 3150 3192 3234 3276 3 43 3050 3053 3096 3139 3182 3225 3268 3311 3354 3 44 3150 3195 3240 3285 3330 3375 3420 3465 3510 3 3465 3510 3 3465 3510 3 3465 3510 3 3465 3500 3640 3486 3450 3496 3542 3588 3 3474 3450 3496 3542 3588 3 3600 3660 3650 3700 3648 3696 3744 3 3660 3650 3700 3750 3800 3850 3900 3 3900 3850 3900 3976 3927 3978 4 398	Number of	-	71 1 - 1		J's J'	ons a	,,,,,,,	19.00		7	100
38 2660 2698 2736 2774 2812 2850 2888 2926 2964 3003 3042 3 3042 3 3042 3 3042 3 3042 3 3042 3 3042 3 3042 3 3042 3	detach'd.										
39 2730 2769 2808 2847 2886 2925 2964 3003 3042 3 40 2800 2840 2880 2920 2960 3000 3040 3080 3120 3 41 2870 2911 2952 2993 3034 3075 3116 3157 3198 3 42 2940 2982 3024 3066 3108 3150 3192 3243 3276 3 43 3050 3124 3168 3212 3256 3300 3344 3383 3432 3 45 3150 3195 3240 3285 330 3375 3440 3465 3510 3 46 3220 3266 3312 3358 3404 3450 3496 3542 3588 3 47 3290 3337 3843 3431 3478 3525 3603 3648 3696 3744 3 49 3430 3479 3528 3577 3626 3675 </th <td>37</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td>2812</td> <td>2849</td> <td>12886</td> <td>1292</td>	37							2812	2849	12886	1292
2800 2840 2850 2920 2960 3000 3040 3080 3120 3816 2870 2911 2952 2993 3034 3075 3116 3157 3198 3108 3100 3053 3066 3138 3150 3192 3234 3276 3306 3139 3182 3225 3268 3311 3354 3383 3432 3266 33124 3168 3212 3256 3300 3344 3388 3432 325 3268 3311 3354 33150 3195 3240 3285 3330 3375 3440 3455 3510 3315 3240 3266 3312 3358 3404 3450 3496 3542 3588 347 3290 3337 3384 3431 3478 3525 3572 3619 3666 3312 3358 3404 3450 3496 3542 3588 340 3498 3456 3504 3552 3600 3648 3696 3744 39 3430 3479 3528 3577 3626 3675 3724 3773 3822 358 3570 3621 3672 3723 3774 3825 3876 3927 3978 458 3570 3621 3672 3723 3774 3825 3876 3927 3978 458 3710 3763 3816 3869 3922 3975 4028 4081 4134 458 3780 3834 3888 3942 3996 4050 4104 4158 4212 458 3780 3976 4032 4088 4144 4200 4256 4312 4368 457 3990 4047 4104 4161 4218 4275 4332 4389 4446 4500 4206 418 4176 4234 4292 4350 4408 4466 4524 459 4130 4473 4536 4526 4588 4650 4712 4774 4836 458 4544 4608 4672 4736 4800 4864 4928 4992 565 4550 4615 4609 4757 4824 4608 4672 4736 4800 4864 4928 4992 565 4550 4615 4609 4757 4824 4608 4672 4736 4800 4864 4928 4992 565 4550 4615 4609 4757 4824 4608 4672 4736 4800 4864 4928 4992 566 4620 4686 4752 4818 4884 4950 5016 5082 5148 567 4609 4757 4824 4891 4958 5025 5092 5159 5226 568 4760 4828 4896 4964 5032 5100 5168 5236 5304 568 4760 4828 4896 4964 5032 5100 5168 5236 5304 568 4760 4828 4896 4964 5032 5100 5168 5236 5304 5504 5504 5000 5168 5236 5304 5504 5000 5168 5236 5	38	2660				18,000					300
2870 2911 2952 2993 3034 3075 3116 3157 3198 3 2940 2982 3024 3066 3108 3150 3192 3234 3276 3 3010 3053 3096 3139 3182 3225 3268 3311 3354 3 3080 3124 3168 3212 3256 3300 3344 3388 3432 3 45 3150 3240 3285 3330 3375 3420 3465 3510 3 46 3220 3266 3312 3358 3404 3450 3496 3542 3588 3 47 3290 3337 3384 3431 3478 3525 3572 3619 3666 3 48 3360 3408 3456 3504 3552 3600 3648 3696 3744 3 49 3430 3479 3528 3577 3626 3675 3724 3773 3822 3 50 3500 3550 3600 3650 3700 3750 3800 3850 3900 3 51 3570 3621 3672 3723 3774 3825 3876 3927 3978 4 51 3640 3692 3744 3796 3848 3900 3952 4004 4056 4 53 3710 3763 3816 3869 3922 3975 4028 4081 4134 4 51 3850 3905 3960 4015 4070 4125 4180 4235 4290 4 51 3920 4047 4104 4161 4218 4270 4256 4312 4368 4 51 3990 4047 4104 4161 4218 4275 4332 4389 4446 4 51 4060 4118 4176 4234 4292 4350 4408 4466 4524 4 51 430 4402 3464 4526 4588 4650 4712 4774 4836 4 52 4340 4402 3464 4526 4588 4650 4712 4774 4836 4 53 4410 4473 4536 4599 4662 4725 4788 4851 4914 4 54 4480 4544 4608 4672 4736 4800 4864 4928 4992 5 56 4620 4686 4752 4818 4884 4950 5016 5082 5148 5 56 4620 4686 4752 4818 4884 4950 5016 5082 5148 5 57 4690 4757 4824 4891 4958 5025 5092 5159 5226 5 56 4680 4757 4824 4891 4958 5025 5092 5159 5226 5 56 4680 4757 4824 4891 4958 5025 5092 5159 5226 5 56 4760 4828 4896 4964 5032 5100 5168 5236 5304 5	39	2730				L. V. S.	2925	2964			308
42 2940 2982 3024 3066 3108 3150 3192 3234 3276 3 43 3010 3053 3096 3139 3182 3225 3268 3311 3354 3 3313 3344 3388 3432 3 3465 3311 3354 3 3344 3388 3432 3 3465 3510 3 3446 3450 3466 3220 3266 3312 3358 3404 3450 3496 3522 3588 3 3479 3528 3577 3626 3675 3724 3773 3842 3588 3696 3744 373 3846 3456 3504 3552 3600 3648 3696 3744 373 3872 3774 3773 3826 3675 3724 3773 3820 3850 3900 3350 3500 3650 3600 3650 3700 3750 3800 3850 3900 3372 3774 3825 3876 3927 3978 4 3780 3816 3869 </th <td>40</td> <td>2800</td> <td>2840</td> <td>2880</td> <td>1. 3. 3. 1</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td>3080</td> <td></td> <td>1,</td>	40	2800	2840	2880	1. 3. 3. 1				3080		1,
3010 3053 3096 3139 3182 3225 3268 3311 3354 3 44 3080 3124 3168 3212 3256 3300 3344 3388 3432 3 45 3150 3195 3240 3285 3330 3375 3420 3465 3510 3 46 3220 3266 3312 3358 3404 3450 3496 3542 3588 3 47 3290 3337 3384 3431 3478 3525 3572 3619 3666 3 48 3360 3408 3456 3504 3552 3600 3648 3696 3744 3 50 3500 3550 3600 3650 3700 3750 3800 3850 3900 3 51 3570 3621 3672 3723 3774 3825 3876 3927 3978 4 52 3640 3692 3744 3796 3848 3900 3952 4004 4056 4 53 3710 3763 3816 3869 3922 3975 4028 4081 4134 4 53 3850 3905 3960 4015 4070 4125 4180 4235 4291 4 56 3920 3976 4032 4088 4144 4200 4256 4312 4368 4 57 3990 4047 4104 4161 4218 4275 4332 4389 4446 4 58 4130 4189 4248 4307 4366 4425 4484 4543 4602 4 59 4104 4161 4218 4275 4332 4389 4446 4 50 4200 4260 4320 4380 4440 4500 4560 4620 4680 4 51 4270 4331 4392 4453 4514 4575 4636 4697 4758 4 51 430 4402 4464 4526 4588 4650 4712 4774 4836 4 52 4340 4402 4464 4526 4588 4650 4712 4774 4836 4 53 4410 4473 4536 4599 4662 4725 4788 4851 4914 4 56 4480 4544 4608 4672 4736 4800 4864 4928 4992 5 56 4620 4686 4752 4818 4884 4950 5016 5082 5148 5 56 463 4460 4757 4824 4891 4958 5025 5092 5159 5026 5 56 4690 4757 4824 4891 4958 5025 5092 5159 5226 5 56 4760 4828 4896 4964 5032 5100 5168 5236 5304 5	41	2870		1000	1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1	0-12-	3075	3116	3157	3198	323
44 3080 3124 3168 3212 3256 3300 3344 3388 3432 3 45 3150 3290 3266 3312 3285 3330 3375 3420 3465 3510 3 46 3220 3266 3312 3358 3404 3450 3496 3542 3588 3 47 3290 3337 3384 3431 3478 3525 3572 3619 3666 3 48 3360 3408 3456 3594 3552 3600 3648 3696 3744 3 3850 3850 3850 3850 3850 3850 3850 3850 3850 3900 3 3850 3900 3 3978 4056 4404 4158 4212 4404 4158 4212 4404 4158 4225 4004 4056 4414 4158 4225 4200 4256 4312 4368 4400 4466 4452 4488 4400 4466 4452 4488 4460	42	2940	2982	100 m	To be well		1. 1. 1. 1.	12 12 14		100	334
45 3150 3195 3240 3285 3330 3375 3420 3465 3510 3 46 3220 3266 3312 3358 3404 3450 3496 3542 3588 3 47 3290 3337 3384 3431 3478 3525 3572 3619 3666 3 48 3430 3479 3528 3577 3626 3675 3724 3773 3822 3 50 3500 3550 3600 3650 3700 3750 3800 3850 3900 3 51 3570 3621 3672 3723 3774 3825 3876 3927 3978 4 52 3640 3692 3744 3796 3848 3900 3952 4004 4056 4 53 3710 3763 3816 3869 3922 3975 4028 4081 4134 4 54 3780 3834 3888 3942 396 4050 4104 </th <td>43</td> <td></td> <td>3000</td> <td></td> <td>1 114</td> <td>1.00</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td>1100 100</td> <td></td> <td>339</td>	43		3000		1 114	1.00			1100 100		339
3220 3266 3312 3358 3404 3450 3496 3542 3588 3 3384 3431 3478 3525 3572 3619 3666 3 348 3430 3479 3528 3577 3626 3675 3724 3773 3822 3 50 3500 3550 3600 3650 3700 3750 3800 3850 3900 3 51 3570 3621 3672 3723 3774 3825 3876 3927 3978 4 52 3640 3692 3744 3796 3848 3900 3952 4004 4056 4 53 3710 3763 3816 3869 3922 3975 4028 4081 4134 4 54 3780 3834 3888 3942 3996 4050 4104 4158 4212 4 55 3850 3905 3960 4015 4070 4125 4180 4235 4290 4 56 3920 3976 4032 4088 4144 4200 4256 4312 4368 4 57 3990 4047 4104 4161 4218 4275 4332 4389 4446 4 58 4060 4118 4176 4234 4292 4350 4408 4466 4524 4 59 4130 4189 4248 4307 4366 4425 4484 4543 4602 4 50 4200 4260 4320 4380 4440 4500 4560 4620 4680 4 51 4270 4331 4392 4453 4514 4575 4636 4697 4758 4 53 4410 4473 4536 4599 4662 4725 4788 4851 4914 4 58 4480 4544 4608 4672 4736 4800 4864 4928 4992 5 56 4620 4686 4752 4818 4884 4950 5016 5082 5148 5 56 4620 4686 4752 4818 4884 4950 5016 5082 5148 5 56 4690 4757 4824 4891 4958 5025 5092 5159 5226 5 56 4690 4757 4824 4891 4958 5025 5092 5159 5226 5 56 4690 4757 4824 4891 4958 5025 5092 5159 5226 5 56 4690 4757 4824 4891 4958 5025 5092 5159 5226 5 56 4690 4757 4824 4891 4958 5025 5092 5159 5226 5	44	3080	3124	3168			3300				347
47 3290 3337 3384 3431 3478 3525 3572 3619 3666 3 48 3360 3408 3456 3504 3552 3600 3648 3696 3744 3 49 3430 3479 3528 3577 3626 3675 3724 3773 3822 3 50 3500 3550 3600 3650 3700 3750 3800 3850 3900 3 51 3570 3621 3672 3723 3774 3825 3876 3927 3978 4 52 3640 3692 3744 3796 3848 3900 3952 4004 4056 4 53 3710 3763 3816 3869 3922 3975 4028 4081 4134 4 4050 4 4014 4158 4212 4 4051 4158 4221 4 4368 4 4246 4235 4290 4 4466 4524 4466 4524 4466	45						3375			100	1000
48 3360 3408 3456 3594 3552 3600 3648 3696 3744 3 50 3500 3550 3600 3650 3700 3750 3800 3850 3900 3 51 3570 3621 3672 3723 3774 3825 3876 3927 3978 4 52 3640 3692 3744 3796 3848 3900 3952 4004 4056 4 53 3710 3763 3816 3869 3922 3975 4028 4081 4134 4 54 3780 3834 3888 3942 3996 4050 4104 4158 4212 4 55 3850 3905 3960 4015 4070 4125 4180 4235 4290 4 56 3920 3976 4032 4088 4144 4200 4256 4312 4368 4 57 3990 4047 4104 4161 4218 4275 4332<	46	3220	3266							3588	363
49 3430 3479 3528 3577 3626 3675 3724 3773 3822 3 50 3500 3550 3600 3650 3700 3750 3800 3850 3900 3 51 3570 3621 3672 3723 3774 3825 3876 3927 3978 4 52 3640 3692 3744 3796 3848 3900 3952 4004 4056 4 53 3710 3763 3816 3869 3922 3975 4028 4081 4134 4 54 3780 3834 3888 3942 3996 4050 4104 4158 4212 4 55 3850 3905 3960 4015 4070 4125 4180 4235 4290 4 56 3920 3976 4032 4088 4144 4200 4256 4312 4368 4 57 3990 4047 4104 4161 4218 4275 4332<	47			1000	3 3 3 3	40 Sept. 18		100	1 1 1 6		371
50 3500 3550 3600 3650 3700 3750 3800 3850 3900 3 51 3570 3621 3672 3723 3774 3825 3876 3927 3978 4 52 3640 3692 3744 3796 3848 3900 3952 4004 4056 4 53 3710 3763 3816 3869 3922 3975 4028 4081 4134 4 54 3780 3834 3888 3942 3996 4050 4104 4158 4212 4 55 3850 3905 3960 4015 4070 4125 4180 4235 4290 4 56 3920 3976 4032 4088 4144 4200 4256 4312 4368 4 57 3990 4047 4104 4161 4218 4275 4332 4389 4446 4543 4662 4524 4 4543 4662 4425 4484 4543 46	48	3360	13 W SW			2			3696	3744	379
51 3570 3621 3672 3723 3774 3825 3876 3927 3978 4 52 3640 3692 3744 3796 3848 3900 3952 4004 4056 4 53 3710 3763 3816 3869 3922 3975 4028 4081 4134 4 54 3780 3834 3888 3942 3996 4050 4104 4158 4212 4 55 3850 3905 3960 4015 4070 4125 4180 4235 4290 4 56 3920 3976 4032 4088 4144 4200 4256 4312 4368 4 57 3990 4047 4104 4161 4218 4275 4332 4389 4446 4524 58 4060 4118 4176 4234 4292 4350 4468 4543 4602 4 59 4130 4289 4248 4307 4366 4425 44	49	200000000000000000000000000000000000000	100	1	100 100 100 100		- 12		113		387
52 3640 3692 3744 3796 3848 3900 3952 4004 4056 4 53 3710 3763 3816 3869 3922 3975 4028 4081 4134 4 54 3780 3834 3888 3942 3996 4050 4104 4158 4212 4 55 3850 3905 3960 4015 4070 4125 4180 4235 4290 4 56 3920 3976 4032 4088 4144 4200 4256 4312 4368 4 57 3990 4047 4104 4161 4218 4275 4332 4389 4446 4 58 4060 4118 4176 4234 4292 4350 4408 4466 4524 4 59 4130 4189 4248 4307 4366 4425 4484 4543 4602 4 61 4270 4331 4392 4453 4514 4575 4636<	50	1000	. 1 4 7 7 8	12.7	4 2 4 7 1	45 30 4 4 3				100	
53 3710 3763 3816 3869 3922 3975 4028 4081 4134 4 54 3780 3834 3888 3942 3996 4050 4104 4158 4212 4 55 3850 3905 3960 4015 4070 4125 4180 4235 4290 4 56 3920 3976 4032 4088 4144 4200 4256 4312 4368 4 57 3990 4047 4104 4161 4218 4275 4332 4389 4446 4 58 4060 4118 4176 4234 4292 4350 4408 4466 4524 4 59 4130 4189 4248 4307 4366 4425 4484 4543 4602 4 60 4200 4260 4320 4380 4440 4500 4560 4620 4680 4 61 4270 4331 4392 4453 4514 4575 4636<	51	1000	17.4		7		1 100	15.			402
3780 3834 3888 3942 3996 4050 4104 4158 4212 4458 3850 3905 3960 4015 4070 4125 4180 4235 4290 4 3920 3976 4032 4088 4144 4200 4256 4312 4368 4 3990 4047 4104 4161 4218 4275 4332 4389 4466 4524 4 4 466 4524 4 466 4524 4 4 466 4524 4 4 466 4524 4 4 466 4524 4 4 466 4524 4 4 466 4524 4 4 466 4524 4 4 466 4524 4 4 466 4524 4 4 4660 4 4 4670 4680 4 4 4670 4680 4 4 4671 4774 4836 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4<	A TOTAL OF THE PARTY OF THE PAR	200		1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1						1.7.	410
35 3850 3905 3960 4015 4070 4125 4180 4235 4290 4 36 3920 3976 4032 4088 4144 4200 4256 4312 4368 4 57 3990 4047 4104 4161 4218 4275 4332 4389 4446 4 58 4060 4118 4176 4234 4292 4350 4408 4466 4524 4 59 4130 4189 4248 4307 4366 4425 4484 4543 4602 4 60 4200 4260 4320 4380 4440 4500 4560 4620 4680 4 61 4270 4331 4392 4453 4514 4575 4636 4697 4758 4 62 4340 4402 4464 4526 4588 4650 4712 4774 4836 4 63 4410 4473 4536 4672 4736 4800 4864<	53								1. 30 1 2 1	F 100	418
36 3920 3976 4032 4088 4144 4200 4256 4312 4368 4 37 3990 4047 4104 4161 4218 4275 4332 4389 4446 4 48 4060 4118 4176 4234 4292 4350 4408 4466 4524 4 4130 4189 4248 4307 4366 4425 4484 4543 4602 4 60 4200 4260 4320 4380 4440 4500 4560 4620 4680 4 61 4270 4331 4392 4453 4514 4575 4636 4697 4758 4 62 4340 4402 4464 4526 4588 4650 4712 4774 4836 4 63 4410 4473 4536 4599 4662 4725 4788 4851 4914 4 64 4480 4544 4608 4672 4736 4800 4864 492	A CONTRACTOR OF THE PARTY OF TH	a v					100	11	1000		1
3990 4047 4104 4161 4218 4275 4332 4389 4446 4 58 4060 4118 4176 4234 4292 4350 4408 4466 4524 4 59 4130 4189 4248 4307 4366 4425 4484 4543 4602 4 60 4200 4260 4320 4380 4440 4500 4560 4620 4680 4 61 4270 4331 4392 4453 4514 4575 4636 4697 4758 4 62 4340 4402 4464 4526 4588 4650 4712 4774 4836 4 63 4410 4473 4536 4599 4662 4725 4788 4851 4914 4 64 4480 4544 4608 4672 4736 4800 4864 4928 4992 5 65 4550 4613 4680 4745 4810 4875 4940 500	4	20 May 191			Market Committee		100	1000			
38 4060 4118 4176 4234 4292 4350 4408 4466 4524 4 59 4130 4189 4248 4307 4366 4425 4484 4543 4602 4 60 4200 4260 4320 4380 4440 4500 4560 4620 4680 4 61 4270 4331 4392 4453 4514 4575 4636 4697 4758 4 62 4340 4402 4464 4526 4588 4650 4712 4774 4836 4 63 4410 4473 4536 4599 4662 4725 4788 4851 4914 4 64 4480 4544 4608 4672 4736 4800 4864 4928 4992 5 65 4620 4686 4752 4818 4884 4950 5016 5082 5148 5 67 4690 4757 4824 4891 4958 5025 5092<	56		100	1	100			A CONTRACTOR OF	10	A Fred	4424
59 4130 4189 4248 4307 4366 4425 4484 4543 4602 4602 4680 4460 4500 4560 4620 4680 4 61 4270 4331 4392 4453 4514 4575 4636 4697 4758 4 62 4340 4402 4464 4526 4588 4650 4712 4774 4836 4 63 4410 4473 4536 4599 4662 4725 4788 4851 4914 4 64 4480 4544 4608 4672 4736 4800 4864 4928 4992 5 65 4550 4613 4680 4745 4810 4875 4940 5005 5070 5 66 4620 4686 4752 4818 4884 4950 5016 5082 5148 5 67 4690 4757 4824 4891 4958 5025 5092 5159 5226 5 68<	57			3 5 3 1	1000	2 42 23				1. 1	100
60 4200 4260 4320 4380 4440 4500 4560 4620 4680 4 61 4270 4331 4392 4453 4514 4575 4636 4697 4758 4 62 4340 4402 4464 4526 4588 4650 4712 4774 4836 4 63 4410 4473 4536 4599 4662 4725 4788 4851 4914 4 64 4480 4544 4608 4672 4736 4800 4864 4928 4992 5 65 4550 4613 4680 4745 4810 4875 4940 5005 5070 5 66 4620 4686 4752 4818 4884 4950 5016 5082 5148 5 67 4690 4757 4824 4891 4958 5025 5092 5159 5226 5 68 4760 4828 4896 4964 5032 5100 5168<	58		-		War to be	1	The state of	200		W. S. W. L.	
61	59	1 7.00			010000	1 St 4 C	13500 311		1		
62 4340 4402 4464 4526 4588 4650 4712 4774 4836 4 63 4410 4473 4536 4599 4662 4725 4788 4851 4914 4 64 4480 4544 4608 4672 4736 4800 4864 4928 4992 5 65 4550 4613 4680 4745 4810 4875 4940 5005 5070 5 66 4620 4686 4752 4818 4884 4950 5016 5082 5148 5 67 4690 4757 4824 4891 4958 5025 5092 5159 5226 5 68 4760 4828 4896 4964 5032 5100 5168 5236 5304 5			1 1 1 1						28 300	And the second	1.00
63	1							1 T 1	100000		1
64		150, 7	1 1		A Shirt	1000			100	100	489
65 4550 4613 4680 4745 4810 4875 4940 5005 5070 5 66 4620 4686 4752 4818 4884 4950 5016 5082 5148 5 67 4690 4757 4824 4891 4958 5025 5092 5159 5226 5 68 4760 4828 4896 4964 5032 5100 5168 5236 5304 5	The state of the s					1					
66 4620 4686 4752 4818 4884 4950 5016 5082 5148 567 4690 4757 4824 4891 4958 5025 5092 5159 5226 54760 4828 4896 4964 5032 5100 5168 5236 5304 5									4928	4992	505
67 4690 4757 4824 4891 4958 5025 5092 5159 5226 5 68 4760 4828 4896 4964 5032 5100 5168 5236 5304 5	100000000000000000000000000000000000000	100		160 00	100	The state of the s	11. 2	1	14 /11 17 1		513
68 4760 4828 4896 4964 5032 5100 5168 5236 5304 5		13.00	200.3		10.10	100 100	100	11. 11. 11. 11	5082	5148	521
											529
/. 11.0 1.0 160		Section 4	200	200 200		1.5	1.	5168	5236		
69 4830 4899 4968 5037 5106 5175 5244 5313 5382 5	69	4830	4899	4968	5037	5106	5175	5244	5313	5382	545
	70	3/1/4 1 1 1	134	A STATE OF THE PARTY OF THE PAR			-		5390	5460	553
71 14970 5041 5112 5183 5354 5325 5396 5467 5538 5	21	4970	5041	5112	5183	5354	5325	5396	5467	15538	\$560

Numit Men detach in the Margin are to be Detach'd.

Number of		2 0.3			3				S lead	
den to be	80	81	82	83	84	85	86	87	88	1 89
2	160	162	164	166	168	170	1 172	1 174	1 176	178
3	240	243	246	249	252	255	258	261	264	267
4	320	324	328	332	336	340	344	348	352	356
5	400	405	410	415	420	425	430	435	440	445
	480	486	492	498	504	510	516	522	528	534
	560	567	574	581	588	595	602	609	616	623
	640	648	656	664	672	680	688	696	704	712
	720	729	738	747	756	765	774	783	792	8oz
	800	810	820	830	840	850	860	870	880	890
	880	891	902	913	924	935	946	957	968	979
	960	972	984	996	1008	1020	1032	1044	1056	1068
	1040	1053	1066	1079	1092	1105	1118	1131	1144	1157
	1120	1134	1148	1162	1176	1190	1204	1218	1232	1246
	1200	1215	1230	1245	1260	1275	1290	1305	1320	1335
	1280	1296	1312	1328	1344	1360	1376	1392	1408	1424
	1360	1377	1394	1411	1428	1445	1462	1479	1496	1513
	1440	1458	1476	1494	1512	1530	1548	1566	1584	1603
	1520	1539	1558	1577	1596	1625	1634	1653	1672	1691
	1600	1620	1640	1660	1680	1700	1720	1740	1760	1780
1	1680	1701	1722	1743	1764	1785	1806	1827	1848	1869
1	1760	1782	1804	1826	1848	1870	1892	1914	1936	1958
1	1840	1863	1886	1909	1932	1955	1978	2001	2024	2047
	1920	1944	1968	1992	2016	2040	2064	2088	2112	2136
	2000	2025	2050	2075	2100	2125	2150	2175	2200	2225
	2080	2106	2132	2158	2184	2210	2236	2262	2288	3314
-	2160	2187	2214	2241	2268	2295	2322	2349	2376	2403
	2240	2268	2296	2324	2352	2380	2408	2436	2464	2492
	2320	2349	2378	2407	2436	2465	2494	2523		2582
-	24oc	2430		1 10 2 10 3	2520		2580	0.00	2640	
	2480	2511	2542		2604	2635	2666	2697	2798	2759
	2560	2592	2624	2656	2688	2720		2784	2816	2848
	264c	2673	2706	2739	2772	2805	F . C . S . S . S . S . S . S . S . S	2871	2904	2937
	2720	2754	2788	2822	2856	2890		2958	2992	3026
	2800	2835	2870	2905	2940	2975	3010	3045	3080	3115
		2916	3	1 25 - 1 FT	The state of the s	3060		1000	3168	
			-5 3- 1	-300	3-24	Y	2	3.34	7400	3204

Numb Men t detach

Number of	40.00			13 1/1						-
Men to be detach'd.	80	81	82	831	84	851	86	87		
37	2960	2997	3034	3071	3108	3145	1 7000 1000	3219	3256	3293
38	3040	3078	3116	3154	3192	3230	3268	3306	3344	100
39	3120	3159	3198	3237	3276	3315	3354	3393	3432	3471
40	3200	3240	3280	3320	3360	3400	3440	3480	3520	3560
41	3280	3321	3362	3403	3444	3485	3526	3567	3608	3649
42	3360	3402	3444	3486	3528	3570	3612	3654	3696	3738
43	3440	3483	3526	3569	3612	3655	3698	3741	3784	3827
44	3520	3564	3608	3652	3696	3740	3784	3828	3872	3916
45	3600	3645	3690	3735	3780	3825	3870	3915	3960	4005
46	3680	3726	3772	3818	3864	3910	3956	4002	4048	
47	3760	3807	3854	3901	3948	3995	4042	4089	4136	4183
48	3840	3888	3936	3984	4032	4080	4128	4176		
49	3920	3969	4018	4067	4116	4165	4214	4263	4312	4361
50	4000	4050	4100	4150	4200	4250	4386	4437	4488	
51	4080	4131	4182	4233	4368	4420	4472	4524	4576	
52	4160	4212	4264	4316		1915		4611	4664	
53	4240	4293	4346	4399	4452	4505	4644	4698		
54	4320	4374	4428	4482	4536	4590	4730	100	10000	
55	4480	4455	4510	4565	4704	4760			2.5	1 .
56	4560	4536	459 ² 4674	4731	4788	4845	4902	4959		100
57	4640	4698	4756	4814	4872	4930		5046		1 ,
58		1000	4838	4897	49 56	5015	100		13.00	
59	4720	4779 4860	4920	4980	1000		1000		13.0	1
60	4880	4941	5002	5063		5185	A COLUMN	1	200	
61	4960	5022	5084		1		100		12.3	
63	5040	5103	5166	5229		1 3 4 5 EC	32.54			1.0
64	5120	5184	5248	5312		5440			A STATE OF THE STA	
65	5200	5265	5330	1 1 1		7 232		10		
66	5280	5346	37.53		1			1 1	100	
***	5360		The state of the state of		5628	The same of the sa	30.5	10000		
67	the second	5508	The sales of		1				1. 10	
68	5440	5589	5658				- The Total Control of the Control o		2000	
69	5520			THE SECOND S.	1000	1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1				1.
70		5751	A STATE OF THE PARTY OF THE PAR				6016		100	
71	10000	13731	1 2022	. 2093	13904	10033	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •			

in the Margin are to be Detach'd.

193 182

e	90 1	91	92	93	94	95	96	97	98 1	99
11	180.	182	1841	186	188 1	190	192	194	196	198
1	270	273	276	279	282	285	288	291	294	297
	360	364	368	372	376	380	384	388	392	396
١	450	455	460	465	470	475	480.	485	490	495
1	540	546	552	558	564	570	576	582	588	594
	630	637	644	651	658	665	672	679	686	693
١	720	728	736	744	752	760	768	776	784	792
	810	819	288	837	846	855	864	873	882	891
ı	900	910	920	930	940	950	960	970	980	990
I	990	1001	1012	1023	1034	1045	1056	1067	1078	1089
11	1080	1092	1104	1116	1128	1140	1152	1164	1176	1188
II	1170	1183	1196	1209	1222	1235	1248	1261	1274	1287
П	1260	1274	1288	1302	1316	1330	1344	1358	1372	1386
11	1350	1365	1380	1107	1410	1425	1440	1455	13.30	1484
II	1440	1456	1472		1504	1520	1536	1552	1568	1584
II	1530	1547	1564	1581	1598	1615	1632	1649	1666	168
11	1620	1638	1656		7.7.	1710	1728	1746	1764	178
II	1710	1729	1748	900		1805	1824	1843	1862	188
II	1800	1820	1840			1900	1920	1940	1960	1980
II	1890	1911	1932	1953	1974	1995	2016	2037	2058	207
11	1980	2002	2024	2046		2090	100	2134	2156	217
II	2070	2093	2116	100	2162	2185	2208	2231	2254	227
1	2160	2184	2208		2256	2280	2304	2328	2352	237
Ш	2250	2275	2300	1.19		2375	2400	2425	2450	247
II	2340		- 1	1000	A Section	10000	2496	2522	2548	257
I	2430		2484		1000	2565	1 2.3		2646	
П	2520		2576	1	1		A PERSON		2744	
	2610		-660			4 6 7 7 3 6		1000	2842	
	2700			1		V-85		1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1		
	2790		a hour to		1 3 7 1	10000				
1	2880	A State of	150 150		-	1 - 2	1000		200	1
	10			1400	1 9 11 11	J38 - 11.	1		1	- 000
	2970	18.003.00		1 3			3264	H	The state of the s	1
	3060		- 10- 40- 10	1 . 7 3 1	The state of the state of	1000	1	N		
	3150	3185	E- 37 23	3255					3528	

Numi Meri detac

of]		Battai	ions J	rom v	uhich	ine IV	umbe	1	
be 90	91	92	93	94	951	96	97	98	99
3339	13367	13404	3441	3478	3515	3552	3589	3626	3663
3420		3496	3534	3572	3610	3648	3686	3724	3762
3510		3588	3627	3666	3705	3744	3783	3822	3861
3600	3640	3680	3720	3760	3800	3840	3880	3920	3960
3690	3731	3772	3813	3854	4895	3936	3977	4018	4059
3780	3822	3864	3906	3948	3990	4032	4074	4116	415
3870	3913	3956	3999	4042	4085	4128	4171	4214	425
3960	4004	4048	4092	4136	4180	4224	4268	4312	435
4050	4095	4140	4185	4230	4275	4320	4365	4410	445
4140	4186	4232	4278	4324	4370	4416	4462	4508	455
4230	4277	4324	437 I	4418	4465	4512	4559	4606	465
4320	4368	4416	4464	4512	4560	4608	4656	4704	475
4410		4508	4557	4606	4655	4704	4753	4802	485
4500	4550	4600	4650	4700	4750	4800	4850	4900	495
4590	4641	4692	4743	4794	4845	4896	4947	4998	504
4680	4732	4784	4836	4888	4940	5992	5044	5096	514
4779	4823	4876	4929	4982	5035	5088	5141	5194	524
4860	4914	4968	5022	5076	5130	5184	5238	5292	534
4950	5005	5060	5115	5170	5225	5280	5335	5390	544
5040	5096	5152	5208	5264	5320	5376	5432		554
5130	5187	5244	5301	5358	5415	5472	5529	5586	564
5220	5278	5336	5394	5452	5510	5568	5626	5684	574
5310	5369	5428	5487	5546	5605	5664	5723	5782	584
5400	5460	5520	5580	5640	5700	5760	5820	3880	594
5490	5551	5612	5673	5734	5795	5856	5917	5978	603
5580	5642	5704	5766	5828	5890	5952	6014	6076	613
5670		5796	5859	5922	5985	6048	6111	6174	623
5760	5824	5888	5952	6016	6080	6144	6208		63
5850	5915	5980	6045	6110	6175	6240	6305		
5940	6006	6072	6138	6204	6270	6336	6402		1
6030	6097	6164	6231	6298	6365	6432	6499	6566	1
6120	6188	6256	6324	6392	6460	6528			
621	6279	6348	6417	6486	1. 5. 5. 5. 5.	6624	6693	6762	68
630	6,370	6440	6510	6580					100
639	6461	6532	6603	6674	6745	6816	16887	16958	70

in the Margin are to be Detach'd.

Number of		•"•	100 1	74.6					In Vace	
Men to be detach'd.	100	101	102	103	104	105	166 1	107 1	108 1	109
2	2001	202	204	206	208	210	212	214	216	218
3	300	303	306	309	312	315	318	321	324	327
4	400	404	408	412	416	420	424	428	432	436
5	500	505	510	515	520	525	530	535	540	545
6	600	606	612	618	624	630	636	642	648	654
7	700	707	714	721	728	735	742	749	756	763
8	800	808	816	824	832	840	848	856	864	872
9	900	909	918	927	936	945	954	963	972	981
10	1000	1010	1020	1030	1040	1050	1060	1070	1080	1090
11	1100	1111	1122	1133	1144	1155	1166	1177	1188	1199
12	1200	1212	1224	1236	1248	1260	1272	1284	1296	1308
13	1300	1313	1326	1339	1352	1365	1378	1391	1404	1417
14	1400	1414	1428	1442	1456	1470	1484	1498	1512	1526
15	1500	1515	1530	1545	1560	1575	1590	1605	1620	1635
16	1600	1616	1632	1648	1664	1680	1696	1712	1728	1744
17	1700	1717	1734	1751	1768	1785	1802	1819	1836	1853
18	1800	1818	1836	1854			1908	1926	1944	1962
19	1900	1919	1938	1957	197€	4.500	2014	2033	2052	2071
20	2000	2020	2040	2060	2080	2100	2120	2140	2160	2180
21	2100	2121	2142	2163	2184	2205	2226	2247	2268	2289
22	2200	2222	2244	2266	2288		2332	2354	2376	2398
23	2300	2323	2346	2369	2392		2438	2461	2484	10125
24	2400	2424	21	2472	1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1	1000	2544	2568	2592	2616
25	2500	2525	2550	2575		1000	2650	2675	2700	2725
26	2600	No.	4 PM 50	2678		100000	2756	2782	1 1 1 1 1	2834
27	2700	2727	13000	Vivoletics.	the state of the		2862	2889	2916	2943
28	2800	2828	2856	2884	1 1 2 1 3 1	2940	2968	2996	3024	3052
29	2900	2929		2987			3074	3103	3132	3161
30	3000	0.7			1.00		3180		1	
31	3100	A STATE OF STREET	1 7 7 1		1	1 20 1 1 1 m	3286			
	3200	1 1 1 1	7	11000			3392	1 1 1 1 1 1	A Control of	
32	3300				A STATE OF		3498		Bear 15	
33		Talant 12				18 18 D. C. L.	3604		1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1	
34	3400					10 13 N 15	A Thinks			A. A. C. A. A.
35 36	3500				3640		3710			
20	13000	1 3030	3672	13708	3744	3780	1 3910	1 3852	1 3000	1 3924

Battalions from which the Number

Number of		Bu	ittalio	ns fro	om wi	oich ti	e ivu	inver		
Men to be	100	101	102	103 1	104 1	1051	106 1	107 1	1081	109
detach'd.	37001	3737	37741	3811.	38481	38851	39221	3959	3996,4	1071
37	3800	3838	TANK TO	the state of the s	3952		4028	4066		
38	3900	3939		7	4056	4095	4134			4251
39	4000	4040	12 12 1 18	4120	4160	4200	4240	4280		4360
40	4100	4141	4182	4223	4264	4305	4346	4387	4428	4469
41	4200	4242	4284	4326	4368	4410	4452	4494	4536	4578
42	4300	4343	4386	4429	4472	4515	4558	4601	4644	4687
43	4400	4444	4488	4532	4576	4620	4664	4708	4752	4796
44	4500	4545	4590	4635	4680	4725	4770	4815		4905
45 46	4600	4646	4692	4738	4784	4830	4876	4922	4968	5014
	4700	4747	4794	4841	4888	4935	4982	5029	5076	5123
47	4800	4848	4896	4944	4992	5040	5088	5136	5184	5232
49	4900	4949	4998	5947	5096	5145	5194	5243	5292	5341
50	5000	5050	5100	5150	5200	5250	5300	5350	54°C	5450
51	5100	5151	5202	5253	5304	5355	5406		5508	5559
52	5200	5252	5304	5356	5408	5460	5512	5564	5116	5668
53	5300	5353	5406	5459	5512	5 565	5618			7.7.5
54	5400	5454	5508	5562	5616	5670	5724		5832	5886
55	5500	5555	5610	5665	2 417		5830	1	5940	
56	5600	5656	5712	5768		1773.7	5936			
57	5700		5814	2 2 2 2		12000	5042		6156	
58	5800	2000	5916	1						1 1
59	5900	1000			1 2 2 6	The same of the same		1 2 2 1		1000
60	6000	A STATE OF THE STATE OF	A Property	Lastin T			De 173. 1			
61	6100	A COLOR	6222							
62	6200	TOWN TO						14 17 17 17 17		6758 6867
63	6300	PACE VIEW	10.00		1					
64	6400		1				100000		1000	1
65	6500		100000000000000000000000000000000000000		A CONTRACTOR OF THE PARTY OF TH	6825				1
66	6600		100		v A Call	N. SER.	6996			
67	6700			A Corp.	1 1 1 1 1 1 1	the barrier		- 1	10.35	
68	6800			the Court of			1000	100000000000000000000000000000000000000		
69	6900					S. S. V. A. C.		The second		
70	7000	The same of	1	and the same		A Contract of			- 1	
71	7100	7171	7242	17313	7384	745	752	7597	1700	773

3 AU71



CHAP. XX.

Manual Exercise and Evolutions of the Cavalry.

ARTICLE I.

Directions for the Forming of Squadrons, Posting the Officers, Sending for and Returning the Standards, &c.



708;

IS presumed that the Troopers are taught to ride, and the Horses dress'd, in order to perform the following Exercise.

The proper Arms for a Trooper are a Car-

bine, Piftols, and a Broad-Sword.

The Carbine is to be placed in a Bucket (which is fixt by Straps to the Right Side of the Saddle, fo as to hang below the Holster-pipe) and to be fastened about twelve Inches above the Lock, by a Strap that comes from the Bur, or Fore-part of the Saddle, the Barrel upward, and running between the Man's Right-arm and Side.

The Sword is to be placed on the Man's Left Thigh, the Point fomething lower than the Hilt. As to the placing of the Pistols, and other Accourrements, it is so generally known, that it will be unnecessary to mention it. If they link with Collars (as is customary at present) the End is to be fasten'd to the Right Side of the Saddle, above the Holster-pipe, by a

running Knot.

When the Regiment is order'd to draw out to Exercise, the Troopers are to Parade at their Captain's Quarters, or Place appointed by him, compleatly arm'd and accourred. The Lieutenant, Cornet, and Quarter-Master are to be there likewise at the Time appointed; from which Place the Captain or Officer commanding the Troop is to march them to the general Place of Parade, where they are to Form in Squadron.

A Re-

Cha

Op

draw

half

Squa

Mov

may

Pofit

V

that

take

fice

thei

deft

Eld

and

car

tak

to M

> ori Le

> > up R

th

01

1

d

t

01

CI

A Regiment confisling of nine Troops is form'd into three Squadrons, three Troops in each. The first Squadron is compos'd of the Colonel's, first and fourth Captains Troops. The second Squadron of the Lieutenant-Colonel's, second and fisth Captains Troops. The third Squadron of the Major's, third and fixth Captains Troops.

A Regiment of fix Troops is form'd into two Squadrons, The first Squadron is compos'd of the Colonel's, Major's, and second Captain's Troops. The second Squadron is compos'd of the Lieutenant-Colonel's, first and third Captains

Troops.

When the Troops are come to the general Place of Parade, and Form in Squadron, they are to draw up in three Ranks (which is called three deep) and to complete their Files. The Officers are to remain at the Head of their Troops, the Captain in the Center, the Lieutenant on the Right, and the Cornet on the Lest, and the Quarter-Master in the Rear of the Troop. Care is to be taken that the Troops are well fiz'd, that is, the tallest Men and Horses are to be in the Front and Rear-Ranks, and the lowest in the Center.

The Troops that compose the several squadrons are to draw up in the sollowing manner in Squadron. The eldest Troop of each Squadron is to be on the Right, the second on the Lest, and the youngest in the Center; except the Lieutenant-Colonel's Squadron, which is on the Lest of the Regiment, and is to draw up the Reverse; the Lieutenant-Colonel's Troop is to be on the Lest, the next eldest on the Right, and the youngest in the Center.

If a Regiment be compos'd of more than two Squadrons, the others are to be drawn up in the same Manner as the first; but in case the Lieutenant-Colonel's Squadron be separated from the Colonel's, the Lieutenant-Colonel's Troop is

then to take the Right.

A Regiment confifting of three Squadrons is to be drawn up as follows; the eldest Squadron on the Right, the second on the Lest, and the youngest in the Center. The Interval or Distance between each Squadron, is to be equal to the Ground one Squadron stands on. The Distance between the Ranks, when drawn up in Squadron, is to be at Open Order; which is explained in the following Article.

The several Distances between the Ranks are, Open Order,

Order, Close Order, and Close to the Croop.

Open Order, is the Distance between each Rank when drawn up into Squadron, which Distance must be equal to half the Front of the Squadron.

Order, is the Distance the Ranks are to be at, when the Squadrons March, which is equal to a Third of the Front.

Close Order, is the Distance the Ranks are to be at, when Moving up to an Enemy, which Distance is, that four Men may just wheel round.

Close to the Croop, is as close as they can be; in which

Polition they are to Charge.

ree

m-

The

ifth

hird

ons.

r's,

m-

lins

Pa-

ree

eir

eir

the

ler

he

fes

he

to

eft

nd

he

he

ıt-

he

18,

he

a-

is

n nd

al

he

r;

r,

en

When the Squadrons are Form'd, the Major or Officer that is to Exercise the Regiment, is to order the Officers to take their Posts, by saying, Officers to your Posts. The Officers of each Squadron are to take their Posts at the Head of their Squadrons by Seniority of Commission, that is, the eldeft Captain on the Right, the Second on the Left, the next Eldest on the Right, and the next Eldest Officer on the Lest, and fo on 'till the Youngest comes in the Center; taking care to divide the Ground equally between them, so as to cover the Front of the Squadron. When the Officers have taken their Posts, they are to dress in the same Rank, and to be advanc'd a Horse's Length before the Front-Rank of The Quarter-Masters are to post themselves by Seniority in the Rear of their respective Squadrons, a Horse's Length behind the Rear-Rank. The Trumpets are to draw up on the Right of their Squadrons even with the Front-Rank of Men, leaving a small Interval between them and the Squadron. The Kettle-Drummer is to place himself on the Right of the Trumpets of the Colonel's Squadron. This Rule does not extend to the Lieutenant-Colonel's Squadron, when the Colonel's is present, but the Officers are to take their Posts from the Lest to the Right, and the Quarter-Mafters of that Squadron are to do the fame, and the Trumpets are to place themselves on the Lest, as the others do on the Right.

As foon as the Officers are posted in the Manner aforesaid, the Standards are to be sent for in the following Manner. The Trumpets and Kettle-Drummer are to be order'd to the Center Squadron, where they are to be form'd into Ranks according to their Number, and the Kettle-Drummer advanced before them, all facing outward. This being done, the Major is to order the eldest Cornet of that Squadron to march for the Standards, with a Quarter-Master, and sour, five or more Files from the Center of that Squadron, since or more Files from the Center of that Squadron.

Z 2

dron

Cha

W

orde

the !

in th

Tru

then

Mer

Cen

whe

mai

befo

droi

mai

four

his

and

and

pet.

dro

Sw

the

fro

rei

dr

VI

E

th

60

di

C

1

2

I

When

dron, the Cornet marching at the Head of the faid Detach. ment, the Trumpets and Kettle-Drummer before him, and the Quarter-Master in the Rear of the whole. When the Cornet comes to the Place where the Standards are lodg'd (which is always at the Colonel or Commanding Officer's of the Regiment's Quarters) he is to Form his Detachment into a Rank entire, facing the House, by saying, To the Right or Left, (according as it stands) Form a Rank entire, March. The Kettle-Drummer and Trumpets are to form into a Rank entire with the Detachment. When this is done, the Cornet is to order the Detachment (the Men that are to carry the Standards excepted) to draw their Swords, (it being the Custom of the Cavalry to go for the Standards without Sound of Trumpet or drawn Swords) which being done, and the Standards receiv'd, which must be by those of the Front-Rank, he is to form his Detachment by these Words of Command, To the Right, (or Left) Form your Ranks, March. At which the Trumpets are likewife to form as before. The Cornet is then to march back to the Regiment with the Standards, the Trumpets founding a March; but instead of marching along the Front of the Regiment, as they do in the Foot, he is to march along the Rear, 'till he comes to the Interval, which was made by their Marching out, and then he is to wheel and march his Men into their former Places. As foon as the Standards are come near the Regiment, the Major is to order the Men to draw their Swords; which is a Ceremony always to be paid the Standards, both in bringing them to, and carrying them from the Regiment. When the Standards are come, the Eldest Cornets of the Right and Left Squadrons are to march with three Men from the Center of the Front-Rank, along the Front, and when they come opposite to the Standards, they are to Halt, and to order those Men that are to carry the Standards to return their Swords, and take their feveral Standards. The Cornets are then to march back with their Standards, taking with them their Respective Trumpets, who are to found a March, and as foon as they have got to the Center of the Intervals between the Squadrons, they are to wheel to the Rear, and march 'till they come opposite to the Intervals of the Front and Center Ranks, and then to wheel to their Squadrons and march between those Ranks, 'till they come to their Places, and then to wheel up. The Trumpets are then to go to their Posts, and the Regiment to return their Swords.

When the Standards are to be return'd, the Major is to order the Cornets of the Right and Left Squadrons to carry the Standards to the Center Squadron, which they are to do in the fame manner they brought 'em from thence, the Trumpets founding a March; and when they have deliver'd them to that Squadron, the Cornets are to return with the Men to their Squadrons, marching between the Front and Center Ranks, 'till they come to their own Places, and then The Kettle-Drummer and Trumpets are to remain with the Standards, and form their Ranks as they did before. This being done, and the Cornets of the other Squadrons return'd, the Cornet that brought the Standards is to march back with the same Number of Files (the Trumpets founding a March) and lodge the Standards, drawing up his Men in a Rank entire as he did when he receiv'd them. and then to return the Swords, form them into Ranks, and march back to the Regiment without found of Trum-

Note, Before the Standards are carried to the Center Squadron, the Major is to order the Regiment to draw their Swords, and as foon as the Standards are gone, to return

them.

ch-

ind

the

g'd

r's

ent

the

re,

m

·is

nat

ds,

ds

ng

of

ele

ur

to he

2

e-

ne

IIS

re

to

id

m

ne

h

g

al

ir

10

e

0

el

ts

n

n

A Regiment of two Squadrons must fend a Detachment from the first Squadron for the Standards. All the other Ce-

remonies are to be observ'd as before-mention'd.

The Standards being brought to their respective Squadrons, the next thing to be done is, the Telling off, or Dividing the several Squadrons into proper Divisions for the Exercise. First, each Squadron is to be told off by Files, then Ranks by Fours; Quarter-Ranks; Ranks by three Divisions; and Half-Ranks.

Telling off by Files. You begin at the Right of each Squadron, and fay to the Right-hand File, You stand; to the Second File, You move; the Third, You stand; the Fourth,

You move; and fo on thro' the Squadrons.

Ranks by Fours. You begin at the Right of each Rank, and fay to the First Man, You are the Right-hand Man of Ranks by Fours; to the Fourth Man, You are the Left-hand Man of Ranks by Fours; to the Fifth Man, You are the Right-hand Man, &c. to the Eighth Man, You are the Left-hand Man, &c. to the Ninth, You are the Right, &c. to the Twelfth, You are the Left, &c. and so on thro' each Squadron.

Ch

ferve

you

Left

and

are

that

thof

cum

to C

thei

but

Ma

froi

Rig

Rig

lar

W

alfo

Le

Ex

fic

at

R

dr

of

I

p

Quarter-Ranks. Each Squadron is to be divided into four equal Parts, which are to be call'd, First, Second, Third and Fourth Quarter-Ranks, beginning at the Right, by saying to the Right-Hand Man, You are the Right-Hand Man of the First Quarter-Rank; and to the Lest-Hand Man of that Quarter-Rank, You are the Lest; and so on to the rest in the same manner.

Ranks by three Divisions. Each Squadron is to be divided into three equal Parts. The Right and Left-Hand Men are

to be told in the fame manner as the others.

Ranks by two Divisions. Each Squadron is to be divided into two equal Parts. The Right and Left-Hand Men are to be told as above.

As the Telling off, or dividing each Squadron into the above-mention'd Divisions, will prove tedious by doing it distinctly thro' every Rank, I will lay down a shorter Method

of performing it.

The Major is to order the Center and Rear Ranks to close to the Croop, at which Time the Officers are to advance so far, that the Major or Adjutant may go with Ease between them and the Front-Rank. By the Ranks being clos'd, the telling off in the Front will serve for the other Ranks. When they are told off, the Ranks are to be open'd backward to Open Order, and the Officers, at the same time, are to Rein back to their former Distance.

For the better understanding the several Wheelings, it will be proper to give an Explanation. The Circle is divided into four Parts. Wheeling to the Right or Lest is a Quarter of the Circle; to the Right or Lest-about is one Half; the Circle entire is quite round 'till you come on the former

Ground.

Rules for Wheeling.

When you wheel to the Right, you are to close to the Right, and look to the Left; and when you wheel to the Left, you are to close to the Left, and look to the Right. This Rule will ferve for all Wheeling by Ranks; but when you wheel in Squadron, or by Divisions, the following Rules must be observed.

When you wheel by Squadron, or by Divisions, the three Ranks wheel together, the Center and Rear-Ranks wheeling directly in the Rear of the Front-Rank, keeping their proper

Distance, and each Man covering his File-Leader.

The

The first Rank of each Squadron or Division is to observe the same Rules as are already given; that is, when
you wheel to the Right to close the Right, and look to the
Lest; and when you wheel to the Lest, to close the Lest,
and look to the Right: but the Center and Rear-Ranks
are to close to the Lest, when they wheel to the Right,
that the Men may keep opposite to their File-Leaders, and
those Ranks are to move quicker than the Front, the Circumserence they take being larger.

The Center and Rear-Ranks are to take particular Care, not to close their Ranks in wheeling, but to keep directly behind their File-Leaders. All Wheelings are to be done briskly, but no Man to exceed a large Trot. The Motion of each Man is quicker or flower according to the Distance he is from the Right or Lest; Thus, when you wheel to the Right, each Man from the Right moves quicker than his Right-Hand Man, the Circle that every Man wheels being larger according to the Distance he is from the Right. When you wheel to the Lest, the Motion of every Man is also different, according to the Distance he is from the

Left.

TUO

and

to

the

hat

in

ded

are

led

are

the

di-

od

to

ıd-

afe

ng

er

'd

ne

ill

ed

11-

lf;

ıer

he

he

nt. out w-

ng er

he

All things being thus dispos'd, they may proceed to the Exercise; unless they are to perform it before a General Officer; for the Reception of whom I will give some Directions at the End of this Chapter; as also the Manner of passing in Review, and Officers Saluting.

The Major, or Officer that is to exercise the Regiment, is to place himself opposite to the Center of the Center-Squadron, if the Regiment consists of three Squadrons; but if only of two, he is to place himself opposite to the Center of the

Interval between them.

Those who think the following Exercise too long to be perform'd at one Time, (as, no doubt, most People will) may very easily shorten it, by leaving out those things which they do not approve of, which, in my Opinion, is a sufficient Answer to an Objection of that Kind.

Ch

Hol

[No

Ari

wit

and

you

you Ha

you Ca

the

Ba

the

of

it

th

R

lit

W

The Manual Exercise on Horse-back.

ARTICLE II.

I. Center and Rear-Ranks, move forward to close Order. March.

[Note, that no Movement is to be made 'till the Word March is given.]

The two Rear-Ranks of each Squadron march forward and close so near, that only four Men may just wheel round between each Rank. The Quarter-Masters are to be on the Right of their respective Squadrons, to give the Ranks their proper Distance, and to dress them, and then repair to their Posts in the Rear. This Movement is to be done at a Walk, and the Men are to observe their Right and Lest-hand Men, that the Rank may be even in Marching.

II. Officers rein back into the Front-Rank.

At this Word of Command, the Front-Rank of each Squadron is to open a little to the Right and Left, to make proper Intervals for the Officers to fall into, and the Officers are to wait for the following Word of Command.

III. March.

At this the Commission Officers rein back in a direct Line into the Front-Rank of Men and dress with them, and the Cornets are to take the Standards from the Men.

IV. Shorten your Bridles. 5 Motions.

First, seize the upper End of the Reins of the Bridle, which is to lie on the Right Side of the Horse, with the Right Hand. 2, Bring it up as high as your Chin, keeping your Right Elbow on a Level with the Shoulder, which is called Square. 3, Slip your Lest Hand along the Reins of the Bridle, and take hold of the Loop or Button, which is near the upper End of the Reins. 4, Slip the Loop down with the Lest Hand as low as the Pummel of the Saddle; and 5thly, bring the Right Hand down with Life on the Right Holster.

Holster-Cap, quitting the Reins of the Bridle with both Hands. [Note, every Motion is to be done briskly, and the Time between each is to be the same as is practised in the Foot Exercise, of telling One, Two.]

The Officers are not to perform these Motions.

V. Make ready your Carbines.

Unfasten the Strap that holds the Carbine, then bring your Arm under the Carbine, and take hold of it about the middle with the Right Hand, letting it lie between the Fore-Finger and Thumb, and raising it a little, that the Muzzle may run up by the Point of the Right Shoulder.

VI. Advance your Carbines. 3 Motions.

First, Raise the Carbine upright in the Bucket, slipping your Right Hand at the same Time up the Barrel as high as your Shoulder, with the Elbow Square. 2, Slip the Right Hand down the Barrel as low as you can without inclining your Body, and grasp it with a full Hand. 3, Bring up the Carbine with the Right Hand, and place the Butt-end on the upper Part of the Right Thigh near the Body, turning the Barrel towards you at the same time, the Muzzle sloping to the Front.

VII. Handle your Swivels. 2 Motions.

First, seize the Swivel with your Lest Hand, placing the Thumb on the Spring. 2, Bring the Swivel to the Lest Side of the Carbine opposite to the Ring which you are to Spring it to, raising your Elbow as high as your Hand.

VIII. Spring your Carbines. 3 Motions.

First, open the Swivel, by pressing your Lest Thumb, and put it into the Ring of the Carbine, and then ease your Thumb that the Spring may close. 2, Quit the Carbine with the Right Hand, and take hold of the small Part of the Butt a little below the Lock with a sull hand. 3, Quit the Swivel with the Lest Hand, and bring it to its proper Place.

Cha

and Plac

B

on

Rig

Rig

the

Ho

Le

th

th

be

th

B

ag fo

IX. Drop your Carbines. 1 Motion.

Drop the Carbine on the Right Side, hanging by the Swivel, and the Muzzle lying cross the middle of the Right Toe; at the same time taking hold of the Bridle with the Left Hand, and quitting the Carbine with the Right.

X. Join your Right Hands to your Swords. 1 Motion.

Bring your Right Hand over your Left Arm, which Arm you are to press close to your Left Side, and seize the Handle of the Sword with a full Hand.

The Officers are to do the fame.

XI. Draw your Swords. 2 Motions.

First, Draw your Sword quite out of the Scabbard, by raifing up the Right Hand as high as your Arm will permit, and keep the Point of the Sword a little higher than the Hilt. Second, Bring your Right Hand to your Right Side, placing the Inside of the Hilt on the Outside of your Right Thigh, the Wrist bending a little out, raising the Point pretty high, and running in a Line with the Right Ear of the Horse with the Edge from you. The Officers do the same.

XII. Place your Swords in the Bridle Hands.

2 Motions.

First, Bring up the Sword opposite to the Center of the Body, resting the Pummel on the fore-part of the Saddle, the broad Part of the Blade toward you, and the Point upright; at the same time you are to slip up your Lest Hand along the Reins of the Bridle as high as your Shoulder, and seize the Blade with the Lest Hand, keeping the Reins between the Palm and it, and squaring your Lest Elbow. Second, Quit the Sword with the Right Hand, and bring it to its proper Place.

XIII. Handle your Carbines. 1 Motion.

Seize the round or small Part of the Butt with your Right Hand, by raising your Right Hand as high as your Shoulder, and :

1.

e

and bringing it immediately down to the aforemention'd Place.

XIV. Advance your Carbines. 1 Motion.

Bring up your Carbine with your Right Hand, placing it on your Right Thigh, as in Explan. 6.

XV. Cock your Carlines. 2 Motions.

First, Bring forward the Right Elbow, and place your Right Thumb on the Cock. Second, Bring down your Right Elbow to your Body or Side, cocking the Carbine at the same time, and slipping the Thumb off the Cock.

XVI. Present. 1. Motion.

Bring up the Carbine, and place the Butt-end firm to the Hollow of the Right Shoulder, dropping the Muzzle to a Level on the Right Side of the Sword, and support it with the Fingers of the Lest Hand, which you are to extend for that purpose, and place the Fore-finger of the Right Hand before the Tricker, (yet without touching it) and the other three on the Guard, and the Thumb in the Hollow of the Butt, your Body inclining a little forward only to press against the Carbine, keeping your Head up, and looking strait forward.

XVII. Fire. 1 Motion,

At this Word of Command you draw the Tricker, with that Finger that was plac'd before it, quick and strong; but if it should not go off with the first Drawing, you are not to draw it a second time.

XVIII. Drop your Carbines. 1 Motion.

Drop your Carbines on the Right Side, as in Explan. 9.

XIX. Handle your Right Pistols. 1 Motion.

Bring your Right Hand round, turning the back towards you, and seize the Butt of the Right Pistol with a full Hand.

XX. Draw

Cha

XXX

Fi

grafp

Swor time at th

> B in th

over you

T

F

.

the

the

the

X

ba

ing

A:

T

you

XX. Draw your Right Pistols. 1 Motion.

Draw your Pistol out of the Holster, and bring it to the Right Side of the Sword, extending your Arm directly before you, with the Muzzle upright.

XXI. Cock your Pistols. 2 Motions.

First, Bring the Pistol close to your Breast, keeping the Muzzle up, and place your Thumb on the Cock. Second, Throw off the Pistol to its former Place, cocking it at the same time, and slip your Thumb off the Cock.

XXII. Present. 1 Motion.

Drop the Muzzle to a level, the Barrel upward, and place the Fore-finger on the Tricker, as in Explan. 16.

XXIII. Fire. 1 Motion.

Draw the Tricker, as in Explan. 17.

XXIV. Return your Pistols. 3 Motions.

First, Place the Muzzle of the Pistol in the Holster, the back of your Hand turn'd towards you. Second, Thrust it quite down. Third, quit the Pistol, and bring your Right Hand to its proper Place.

XXV. Handle your Left Pistols. 1 Motion.

Do this as in Explan. 19. only the Back of the Hand from you.

XXVI. Draw your Pistols. 1 Motion. As in Explan. 20.

XXVII. Cock your Piftols. 2 Motions. As in Explan. 21.

XXVIII. Present. 1 Motion. As in Explan. 22.

XXIX. Fire. 1 Motion. As in Explan. 17.

XXX. Return

ie

000

XXX. Return your Pistols. 3 Motions. As in Explan. 24.

XXXI. Recover your Swords. 2 Motions.

First, Seize the Handle of the Sword with the Right Hand, grasping it with the Thumb upward. Second, Bring the Sword to your Right Thigh, as in Explan. 11. at the same time slip down your Lest Hand, and take hold of the Bridle at the proper Place.

XXXII. Point your Swords. 1 Motion.

Bring the Sword over the Left Arm, and enter the Point in the Scabbard, and thrust it in so far, that you may look over the Right Arm. For the easier Performance of which, you must close your Left Arm to your Side.

The Officers to perform this Motion with the Men.

XXXIII. Return your Swords. 2 Motions.

First, Thrust your Sword up to the Hilt. Second, Bring your Hand back to its proper place.

The Officers to do the same.

XXXIV. Officers, move into the Front, March.

The Commission-Officers are to march out of the Ranks, the Cornets bringing the Standards with them, and place themselves at the Head of the Squadrons. As soon as the Officers are clear of the Men, the Front Ranks are to close the Intervals, made by the Officers, to the Center.

XXXV. Center and Rear Ranks, rein back to Open Order, March.

The Center and Rear Ranks of each Squadron are to rein back very flow in a direct Line to their former Ground, keeping their Ranks and Files even; of which the Quarter-Masters are to take particular Care, as also that there be a due Distance between the Ranks, according to the Directions in Article the 8th, Of Rules and Observations, &c.

Note, As my Intentions at first were only to treat of those Things that relate properly to the Exercise of the Horse, I

Chap

I.

TI

carry

Care

abou

and abou

Left

which

the '

III.

The

Ran

Lef

the

Th

resp

Dif

I

juft

T the (

will proceed on that Scheme; but that this Work may not be defective, I will set down at the End of the Evolutions, the proper Words of Command, with an Explanation for Diffmounting, Linking the Horses, and Forming into Battalion, with the Exercise on Foot, which is to be done immediately after the above 35th Article; but if the Foot Exercise is not to be perform'd, the above 34th and 35th Words of Command are not to be given 'till the Carbines are return'd.

XXXVI. Handle your Carbines. 1 Motion.

This is to be done as in Explan. 13.

XXXVII. Advance your Carbines. 1 Motion.

As in Explan. 14.

XXXVIII. Unspring your Carbines. 1 Motion.

Quit the Reins of your Bridle, and take hold of the Swivel with the Left Hand, placing the Thumb on the Spring, and opening it, at the same time take it out of the Ring.

XXXIX. Return your Swivels. 2 Motions.

First, Place the Swivel on your Right Side, by thrusting your Lest Hand under your Right Arm. Second, Bring your Lest Hand back to its proper place.

XL. Return your Carbines. 4 Motions.

First, Throw the Carbine to the Right with the Right Hand, turning the Barrel to the Front, finking it as low as you can without inclining your Body, seizing the Barrel at the same time with the Lest Hand, and keeping the Muzzle upright.

2. Quit the Right Hand, and bring the Carbine with the Lest under your Right Arm, sinking it near the Buckett, and at the same time seize the Barrel with the Right Hand a little above the Lest.

3. Place the Butt-End of the Carbine in the Buckett, and quit it with the Lest Hand.

4. Fasten the Carbine with the Strap, and place your Bridle in your Lest Hand.

The End of the Manual Exercise on Horseback.

Evolutions.

f-

ly

ot

1-

el

d

Iľ

ne

ıt.

he

nd le

he

r-d.

119

Evolutions of the Horse.

ARTICLE III.

1. Officers, take your Posts in the Front, March.

[Note, That no Movement be made 'till the Word, March, is given.]

The Commission-Officers march strait forward, the Cornets carrying the Standards, 'till they pass the Major, or Officer that exercises the Regiment eight or ten Paces, and then stand; taking Care both then and in the marching that their Ranks be even.

II. Halt.

The Officers of the right Squadron are to face to the Left-about, the Officers of the left Squadron to the Right-about, and those of the Center Squadron to the Right and Lest-about, that is, Half the Officers on the Right to face to the Lest-about, and the Half on the Lest to the Right-about, in which Posture they are to remain 'till order'd to the Front.

The Kettle-Drummer and Trumpets are to march with the Officers, and draw up in the Rear of them, as foon as the Word Halt is given, where they are to remain.

III. Center and Rear Ranks, move forward to Order, March.

The two Rear Ranks of each Squadron move up, and leave the Distance between the Ranks equal to a third of one Rank. They are to perform this and the following Movements only at a Walk, taking care to look to the Right and Lest, but chiefly to the Right, that they may march even in the Ranks and keep directly in a Line with their File-Leaders. The Quarter-Masters are to be on the Right Flanks of their respective Squadrons, to see that the Ranks keep their proper Distance, and to make them dress.

IV. Center and Rear Ranks, move forward to Close Order, March.

The asoresaid Ranks close so much, that sour Men can just wheel round. Observe the other Rules above in Explan. 3.

V. Genter

V. Center and Rear Ranks, Close to the Croop, March.

The foresaid Ranks move up so close that the Horse Heads are to touch the Croops of their File-Leaders Horses.

VI. Center and Rear Ranks, rein back to Close Order, March.

The Ranks that mov'd up are to rein back very flow, to the Ground from whence they last came, in a direct Line, casting their Eyes to the Right and Lest to keep their Ranks strait.

VII. Center and Rear Ranks, rein back to Order, March.

The same Ranks rein back, 'till the Distance between the Ranks is equal to a Third of the Front Rank of one Squadron; observe the other Directions as in Explan. 6.

VIII. Center and Rear Ranks, rein back to Open Order, March.

The same Ranks rein back to the Ground they first steed on, and immediately straiten their Ranks and Files.

Note, That during these Movements the Front Rank of each Squadron stands still.

- IX. Front and Center Ranks, rein back to Order, March.
- X. Front and Center Ranks, rein back to Close Order, March.
- XI. Front and Center Ranks, rein back to the Croop, March.

The Rear Rank of each Squadron stands still, the Front and Center rein back to the several Distances, as are explain'd in the foregoing Articles, and to observe the Rules as in Explan. 6.

XII. Front

D

X

R

fr

th

pa

th a

th

L

V

to

V

-

X.

rch.

eads

er,

to

ne,

nks

,

the

112-

7,

od

of

1,

p,

nt n'd

in

ont

XII. Front and Center Ranks, move forward to Close Order, March.

XIII. Front and Center Ranks, move forward to Order, March.

XIV. Front and Center Ranks, move forward to Open Order, March.

The Front and Center Ranks are to move up to the several Distances, and to observe the Rules as in Explan. 3.

XV. Center and Rear Ranks, move forward to Order, March.

The fame as in Explan. 3.

XVI. Squadrons, to the Right open your Files, March.

The Right-hand File of each Squadron is to passage to the Right very slow, and as soon as it is got to such a Distance from the second File that a Horse can come between 'em, the Second is to move the same Way, and so on till the whole is open'd. The Men of the Front-Rank are to take particular Care in opening, to keep the above Distance, and those of the Center and Rear-Ranks are to keep directly in a Line with their File-Leaders, and the whole to take Care that they don't advance or rein back, but passage in a strait Line to the Right.

XVII. Halt.

As foon as the Whole is open'd, the Major is to give the Word Halt, at which the Men are to stop their Horses, and to straiten their Ranks and Files.

XVIII. To the Left close your Files, March.

The Left-hand File of each Squadron stands fast, all the rest passage at the same time to the Left very slow; but they are not to close their Files, 'till the File on their Lest stands; which will prevent the Horses treading upon each other, and make the Movement more regular and beautiful.

XIX. To the Left open your Files, March.

The Left-hand File of each Squadron passages to the Left, and the rest are to sollow, as in Explan. 16.

Aa

XX. Halt.

Ch

but giv

Le

Lin

wh

the

tog

W

to

th

or

m

21

tl

t

a

hIf

XX. Halt.

The Men are to stop the Horses, and to observe further as in Explan. 17.

XXI. To the Right close your Files, March.

The Right-hand File of each Squadron stands, the rest are to close by passage to the Right, and to observe the Rules as in Explan. 18.

XXII. From the Center, to the Right and Left open your Files, March.

The Right and Left-hand File of each Squadron passage to the Right and Left at the same time, keeping an equal, but slow, Pace, (observing the Rules already given in opening) 'till the two Files in the Center are opened, and then the Major proceeds to the next Word of Command.

XXIII. Halt. As in Explan. 17.

XXIV. Close your Files to the Center, March.

All the Files are to move at the same time, and close by passage to the Center of their Squadrons, and observe surther as in Explan. 18.

XXV. Ranks Countermarch to the Left, March.

The Right-hand File of each Squadron moves directly forward about a Horse Length, before the Rank they stood in, that is, the Man in the Front-Rank a Horse Length before that Rank, the Center Rank Man a Horse Length before the Center Rank, and the Rear Man a Horse Length before the Rear Rank, and then they passage in a direct Line to the Lest; and as soon as that File begins to move, all the rest are to passage to the Right, and when the second File comes to the Ground where the first File stood, it is to move up as the first did and passage to the Lest, and so on, 'till the Whole is come up into the same Ranks, and then they all stand a little while and Rein back to the Ground the Ranks stood on before.

As

As Countermarching is a Movement extremely difficult, but if well perform'd, very beautiful, it will be necessary to

give fome further Rules for the doing it.

Countermarching by Ranks, is to bring the Right to the Left, and the Left to the Right; for the Performance of which, the Passage is to be done very slow, and to move in a direct Line, and each File to move up and passage together; and when the File that mov'd out first comes opposite to the Place where the Left Flank of the Squadron stood, it is to halt 'till the whole is done, and then the Squadrons are to rein back together to the Ground the Ranks stood on before. The File that leads (of each Squadron) should move in such a Manner as to come to the Ground where they are to stand, just as the Whole have done, that they may all halt together.

Note, That the Quarter-Masters are to be on the Flanks to mark out the Ground, which will be a great Help; but they are not to speak to the Men, only to place themselves on the Right and Lest of the Front Rank, to direct them to move in a strait Line, and the Distance they are to move up

and rein back to.

1

es

re

re

ft

es

ip ne

Is

XXVI. Ranks Countermarch to the Right, March.

The Left-hand File of each Squadron (which are those that mov'd out before from the Right) move strait forward a Horse Length before the Ranks they stood in, and passage to the Right; the rest at the same time passage to the Lest; and when each File comes to the Ground where the Lest-hand File stood, they move forward and then passage to the Right, 'till the whole have done, and then rein back to their former Ground; and to observe surther as explain'd in the foregoing Article. This brings the Squadrons to their former Position.

XXVII. Ranks Countermarch to the Right, March.

The Left-hand File moves out, as already explain'd, and passages to the Right. Observe further in the foregoing Article.

XXVIII. Ranks Countermarch to the Left, March.

The Files that mov'd out from the Left, being now on the Right, move out again, and passage to the Left. The rest

X

int

an

tl

to be observ'd as already explain'd in the 25th Article. This reduces the Men to their first Position.

XXIX. Ranks from the Right and Left, Countermarch to the Center, March.

The Right and Lest-hand Files of each Squadron move out, as before explain'd, and passage to the Right and Lest inward; the rest divide in the Center, and passage to the Right and Lest outward, and when they come to the Ground where the Flank Men stood, to move and passage to the Center, 'till the whole is done, and then the Squadrons rein back as is before explain'd. This brings the Flank Men into the Center, and the Center Men on the Flanks.

Note, The Flank Men that lead are to move very flow and observe each other, that they may keep an equal Pace, in order to join exactly in the Center; but not, if possible, 'till the Center Men are come to the Flanks, that they may

all stop together.

XXX. Ranks from the Center, Countermarch to the Right and Left, March.

The two Files in the Center of each Squadron move out to their proper Distance, and divide by passage to the Right and Lest outward; the rest close to the Center, and as they close, the next two Files move out together and passage to the Right and Lest outward, 'till the whole are come to their former Places, and then rein back to their former Ground. The Files that lead are to move very slow, and not go beyond the Ground the Flank-Men stood on.

XXXI. Files to the Right double, March.

The Second, Fourth, Sixth, and every Even File of each Squadron, are to rein back in a strait Line, till they come to the Center of the Interval between each Rank, then to passage a little to the Right and cover the Men that stood on their Right. This Movement brings each Squadron into six Ranks, or six deep, with their Files open.

Note, The Files are to rein back together very flow, looking to the Right and Left to keep a strait Rank, and then to passage to the Right together, taking care to be directly

in a Line with their File-Leaders.

XXXII.

ch

ve ft

nt re III XXXII. Files that doubled, to the Left form as you were, March.

The Files that doubled, passage a little to the Lest, to bring them opposite to their former Places, and then move into them pretty briskly; but all at the same time.

XXXIII. Files to the Left double, March.

The First, Third, Fifth, and every Odd File, rein back, and cover the Men that stood on their Left. See Expl. 31.

XXXIV. Files that doubled, to the Right form as you were, March.

The Files that doubled, passage a little to the Right, and then move into their former Places.

XXXV. Second and Fourth Quarter-Ranks, to the Right double your Files, March.

The Second and Fourth Quarter-Ranks of each Squadron rein back to the Center of the Intervals between the Ranks, and then paffage to the Right, 'till the Right-hand File of the fecond Quarter-Rank comes opposite to the Right-hand File of the first Quarter-Rank; and the Right-hand File of the fourth Quarter-Rank comes opposite to the Right-hand File of the third Quarter-Rank, and then Halt, taking care to dress their Ranks and Files. This Movement must be done together, they all may begin and finish at the same time. In the Passage they are not to open their Files, but keep as close as they can without treading on one another. This forms each Squadron into two Divisions, and each Division six deep.

XXXVI. Quarter-Ranks that doubled, to the Left form as you were, March.

The Quarter-Ranks that doubled, passage to the Lest very slow, in a direct Line, and when they come opposite to their former Ground, or Intervals, they are to move up into their Places. Observe further as in the foregoing Article.

XXXVII.

Ch

X

Qu'il

the

X

ft

XXXVII. First and Third Quarter-Ranks, to the Left double your Files, March.

The First and Third Quarter-Ranks of each Squadron rein back and passage to the Lest, and double the Second and Fourth Quarter-Ranks; observe further as in Explan. 35.

XXXVIII. Quarter-Ranks that doubled, to the Right form as you were, March.

The Quarter-Ranks that doubled, passage to the Right, and move up into their former Places, as in Explan. 36.

XXXIX. Flank Quarter-Ranks, double your Files to the Center, March.

The Flank Quarter-Ranks, or the First and Fourth of each Squadron, rein back (as in Expl. 35.) and passage to the Right and Left, inward, and join in the Center of the Squadron.

XL. Quarter-Ranks that doubled, to the Right and Left form as you were, March.

The Quarter-Ranks that doubled, passage to the Right and Lest outward, 'till they are clear of the Center Quarter-Ranks, and then move into their former Places.

XLI. Center Quarter-Ranks, to the Right and Left double your Files, March.

The Center or Second and Third Quarter-Ranks of each Squadron rein back, and passage to the Right and Lest outward, and double the First and Fourth Quarter-Ranks.

XLII. Quarter-Ranks that doubled, form in the Center as you were, March.

The Quarter-Ranks that doubled, passage to the Right and Lest inward, and join in the Center of the Intervals, and then move up into their Places.

XLIII,

XLIII. Half-Ranks, to the Right double your Files, March.

The Left Half-ranks of each Squadron rein back, as the Quarter-ranks did, and passage to the Right in a strait Line, 'till they come to the Right Flank of those that stand, and then halt and cover their File-Leaders.

The fame Rules that are given for the Quarter-ranks will

ferve for Half-ranks.

nd

bt

ıd

t

XLIV. Half-Ranks that doubled, to the Left Form as you were, March.

The Half-ranks that doubled, Passage to the Lest, 'till the Right-hand File comes opposite to the Lest of those that stood, and then move up into their Places.

XLV. Half-Ranks, to the Left double your Files, March.

The Half-ranks on the Right of each Squadron, rein Back and Passage to the Lest, 'till the Lest-hand File comes to the Lest of those that Stand, and then Halt, taking care to cover their File-Leaders, and straiten their Ranks.

XLVI. Half-Ranks that doubled, to the Right Form as you were, March.

The Half-ranks that doubled, Passage to the Right, 'till the Left-hand File comes to the Right of those that stood, and move into their Places.

XLVII. Center and Rear-Ranks, move forward to Close Order, March.

The Front-Rank of each Squadron Stands. The Center and Rear-Ranks March forward, and leave an Interval between the Ranks that only four Men can just wheel round.

XLVIII.

Cha

I

1

the

Inte

L

I

Ma give in

L

I

XLVIII. Ranks, to the Right wheel by Fours, March.

The Right-hand Man of each Division, or Rank of Fours, is to keep his Horse's Fore-seet, as much as possible, on the same Ground he stood on; and as he finds the other three Men come about, he is to throw the Flank of his Horse to the Lest.

Observe further, as in Article the 13th of Rules and Observations.

This Wheel is only a Quarter of the Circle.

XLIX. Wheel to the Right, March. L. Wheel to the Right, March. LI. Wheel to the Right, March.

Each of these is a Quarter of the Circle, and the Rules already given in Explanation 48, are to be observed in these and all other Wheelings to the Right by Ranks.

LII. Wheel to the Right-about, March. LIII. Wheel to the Right-about, March.

Each of these is half the Circle, and observe as in Explanation 48.

LIV. Ranks, to the Left Wheel by Fours, March.

The Lest-hand Man of each Division or Rank of Fours, is to observe the same Rules as in Explanation 48, with this Disserence only, that he is to throw his Horse's Flank to the Right, as the other did to the Lest; and the whole to observe the General Rules in Wheeling as explain'd in Article 13.

LV. Wheel to the Left, March. LVI. Wheel to the Left, March. LVII. Wheel to the Left, March.

Each Movement is a Quarter of the Circle.

LVIII. Wheel to the Left-about, March, LIX. Wheel to the Left-about, March.

Each Movement is half the Circle.

LX. Center and Rear Ranks, rein back to Order, March.

The Center and Rear Ranks of each Squadron rein back to the Ground, from whence they mov'd up last, leaving the Interval between the Ranks equal to the third of one Rank.

LXI. Ranks by three Divisions, Wheel to the Right, March.

Each Rank wheels by three Divisions, and the Right-hand Man of each Division is to observe the same Directions as are given in Explanation 48, and the Whole to observe surther as in Article 13 of Rules and Observations.

This is a Quarter of the Circle.

LXII. Wheel to the Right, March. LXIII. Wheel to the Right, March. LXIV. Wheel to the Right, March.

Each Movement is a Quarter of the Circle.

LXV. Wheel to the Right-about, March. LXVI. Wheel to the Right-about, March.

Each of these is half the Circle.

LXVII. Ranks by three Divisions, wheel to the Left, March.

Each Rank wheels by three Divisions to the Lest, a Quarter of the Circle, and the Lest-hand Man of each Division is to observe the same Directions as are given in Explanation 54, and the Whole to observe the Rules in Wheeling as set forth in Article 13 of Rules, &c.

LXVIII. Wheel to the Left, March. LXIX. Wheel to the Left, March. LXX. Wheel to the Left, March.

Each Movement is a Quarter of the Circle.

LXXI. Wheel

Ch

Cir

L

ter

L

b

1

LXXI. Wheel to the Left-about, March. LXXII.
Wheel to the Left-about, March.

Each of these is half the Circle.

LXXIII. Center and Rear Ranks, rein back to Open Order, March.

The Center and Rear Ranks of each Squadron rein back to open Order. The Intervals between the Ranks are to be equal to half the Front of one Squadron that half of each Rank may just wheel round.

LXXIV. Ranks by two Divisions, wheel to the Right and Left Outward, March.

Each Rank divides in the Center, and wheels to the Right and Left outward, by which each Squadron is brought into two Ranks, facing from one another.

The Flank Men of each Rank are to observe the Rules as in Explanation 48, and the Whole to look to the Right and

Left, as in Article 13 of Rules and Observations.

The two Center Men of each Rank (being those that lead, or govern the Wheeling) are to move flow at first, 'till the whole is in Motion, and to increase it by degrees, 'till they come to a large Trot, but never to exceed. This is a Quarter of the Circle.

LXXV. Wheel to the Right and Left, March.

By this Movement each Squadron is brought into two Divisions, facing to the Rear.

LXXVI. Wheel to the Right and Left Inward, March.

This brings each Squadron into two Ranks, facing one another.

X.

ck be

ch

bt

ht

15

d

LXXVII. Wheel to your proper Front, March.

This brings them again into Squadron, and finishes the Circle.

LXXVIII. Wheel to the Right and Left-about, March.

Each Squadron is brought into two Divisions, with an Interval between them, facing to the Rear.

LXXIX. Wheel to the Right and Left-about, March.

This brings them into Squadron as before.

LXXX. To the Right and Left wheel the Circle entire, March.

As wheeling the Circle entire at one Wheel is difficult to be perform'd as it should, so the Men are to take care to close to the Hand they wheel to and to look to the Contrary, that each Rank may come about strait into the Ground it stood on before.

LXXXI. Rear Ranks by four Divisions, to the Right and Left double your Front, March.

The Rear Rank of each Squadron divides in four equal Parts or Divisions. The two on the Right wheel to the Right, and the two on the Lest wheel to the Lest, which forms them into two Divisions of two Ranks each, facing to the Right and Lest Outward.

The first Rank of each Division, as soon as they have made the first Wheel, is to wheel again to the Front, and march directly forward and join on the Right and Lest, of the Front Rank; and at the same time that the Front Ranks of the said Divisions make the second Wheel, the Rear Ranks are to march directly Forward, 'till they come to the Ground where the Front Ranks wheel'd, and then they are to wheel towards the Front, and march forward, and form on the Right and Lest of the Center Ranks.

Ch

the

to t

'till

File

forn

L

to 1

did

D

th

V

fi

This enlarges the Front of each Squadron one half, and

forms them into two Ranks, or two Deep.

Care must be taken that they all wheel at the same time, and move up, and form on the Right and Left of each Squa. dron together.

This Wheeling must not be perform'd so quick as the other

Wheelings, but yet with a briskness.

LXXXII. Rear Ranks that doubled, wheel to the Right and Left-about, and form as you were, March.

The Rear Ranks that doubled, wheel to the Right and Left-about, and march directly to the Rear, only at a Walk, 'till they come even with the Ground they stood on before, and the two Ranks that lead, (which are those that were drawn up on the Right and Left of the Center Rank) wheel to the Right and Left inward, and march 'till the Flank Men come opposite to their File Leaders. The other two Ranks, when they come to the fame Ground, wheel the fame way, and march forward 'till they come even with the Flanks of the Squadrons, and then the Whole is to wheel up and form in a Rank entire, as before.

LXXXIII. Rear Ranks by two Divisions, to the Right double your Front, March.

The Rear Rank of each Squadron divides into two equal Parts, and wheels to the Right, which forms them into one Division of two Ranks each, facing to the Right. Rank of each Division wheels again to the Left, and marches forward and joins on the Right of the Front Rank: And the second Rank of each Division, as soon as the Front Ranks begin their second Wheel, marches strait forward, and wheels upon the same Ground the others did, and then marches up and forms on the Right of the Center Rank.

Both Ranks of each Division are to march and wheel in fuch a manner, that they form on the Right of their respective

Squadrons at the fame time.

LXXXIV. Rear Ranks that doubled, wheel to the Rightabout, and form as you were, March.

The Rear Ranks that doubled wheel to the Right-about, and march directly to the Rear, 'till they come even with the

and

ne.

ua-

her

bt

nd k,

e,

eel

s,

of

t

ıl

e

the Right of the Ground they flood on before, and then wheel to the Right, and march towards the Left of the Squadrons, 'till the Right-hand Man of each Rank comes opposite to his File-Leader, and then they are all to wheel to the Right, and form in a Rank, as before.

LXXXV. Rear Ranks by two Divisions, to the Left double your Front, March.

The Rear Rank of each Squadron wheels by two Divisions to the Left, and forms on the Left of each Squadron, as they did before on the Right.

LXXXVI. Rear Ranks that doubled, wheel to the Leftabout and form as you were, March.

The Rear Ranks that doubled, wheel to the Left-about, and form on their own Ground, as in Explan. 84. with this Difference only, that all their Wheelings are to the Left, as the others are to the Right.

LXXXVII. Rear Ranks by two Divisions, double your Front in the Center, March.

The Division on the Right of the Rear Rank of each Squadron is to move forward a Horse Length before the Division on the Lest, and then Passage to the Lest; the Divisions on the Lest that stood, are at the same time to Passage to the Right, 'till their Lest Flanks come opposite to each other, and then Halt 'till they can move up in the Center of each Squadron.

As foon as the Rear Ranks begin to move, each Squadron is to divide in the Center, and Passage to the Right and Lest outward, and when the Interval in the Center is large enough to contain the Rear Rank, they are to Halt, and the Rear Ranks are to move up, and join the Front and Center Ranks.

All the above Movements are to be perform'd together, for by the time that the Squadrons have open'd from the Center, the Rear Ranks of each will be form'd two Deep, and ready to move up, which they are to do, as soon as the Intervals will allow of it.

Cha

to fa

Squa

Cent A befo

upor

four by t

into

vide

XC

Di

Bo

di

LXXXVIII. Rear Ranks that doubled, rein back and form as you were, March.

The Rear Ranks that doubled, are to rein back to the Ground from whence they mov'd up, and then Passage to the Right and Lest outward. As soon as the Divisions on the Lest come to the Ground they stood on at first, they are to Halt, and when the Right-hand Men of the Divisions on the Right come opposite to their File-Leaders, they are to make a small Halt, and then all the Divisions on the Right are to rein back and dress in a Line with those on the Lest. As soon as the Rear Ranks have rein'd back, the Squadrons are to Passage to, and close in the Center.

LXXXIX. Officers, take your Posts on the Front of your Squadrons, March.

The Officers are to march in a direct Line, 'till they come within a Horse Length of the Front Rank of Men, and then stand. The Kettle Drummer and Trumpets march likewise, and when they come to the Ground they stood on before, they stand also.

XC. Halt.

At this Word of Command, the Officers of the Squadron on the Right, face to the Right-about, and those of the Squadron on the Lest to the Lest-about; the Officers of the Center Squadron face to the Right and Lest-about inward thus: half on the Right, to the Right-about, and the half on the Lest, to the Lest-about.

The Trumpets of the Right and Center Squadrons face to the Right-about, and those of the Lest Squadron to the Lest-

about.

XCI. Center and Rear Ranks, close to the Croop, March.

The Center and Rear Ranks of each Squadron close forward as close as they can, and the Commission Officers at the same time rein back close to the Front Rank, and the Quarter-Masters move up close to the Rear. The Cornets that carry the Standards are, if a General Officer be present,

X.

and

the

to

on

are

on

to ght

ft.

and

ne

en e,

1-

S

to fall in between the Center Men of the Front Rank of each Squadron, but if not, they are to give the Standards to the Center Man of the Front Rank of each Squadron.

As the next Word of Command is to wheel by Division. before you proceed to it, the Officers are to be divided equally upon the several Divisions you intend to wheel by, thus; if by four Divisions, they are to be divided into four equal Parts; if by three Divisions, into three Parts; and if by two Divisions. into two Parts. The Quarter-Masters are likewise to be divided on the Rear of the several Divisions.

XCII. Squadrons by three Divisions wheel to the Right, March.

As wheeling by Divisions is already explain'd in the 13th Article of Rules and Observations, I will refer you to that.

The Officers are to wheel on the Front of their feveral Divisions, and a Quarter-Master in the Rear of each.

This Movement brings each Squadron into three diffinat Bodies, or Divisions, all facing to the Right.

XCIII. Wheel to the Right, March.

This brings them into Squadron, all facing to the Rear.

XCIV. Wheel to the Right, March.

Each Squadron by this Movement is brought into three diffinct Bodies, or Divisions, facing to the Left.

XCV. Wheel to the Right, March.

This compleats the Circle to the Right, and brings each Squadron into its first Position.

XCVI. Wheel to the Right-about, March. XCVII. Wheel to the Right-about, March.

This compleats the Circle to the Right at twice, each being half.

XCVIII. Squadrons by three Divisions, wheel to the Left, March. XCIX. Wheel to the Left, March. C. Wheel to the Left, March. CI. Wheel to the Left, March.

Each of these is a Quarter of the Circle.

Observe the Rules as are already given in Explan. 92. and in the 13th Article of Rules and Observations.

CII. Wheel to the Left-about, March. CIII. Wheel to the Left-about, March.

Each of these is half the Circle.

CIV. Center and Rear Ranks, rein back to Order, March.

At this Word of Command the Commission Officers are to move forward to their proper Distance, and the Center and Rear Ranks are to rein back to Order. The Quarter-Massers are also to rein back to their proper Distance.

If the Cornets carry the Standards as before mention'd they are to remain in the Center of the Front Rank of Men; but if they do not, they are to move up, and dress in the

Rank of Officers.

CV. Squadrons, move to the Right, March.

The Squadrons are to Passage to the Right without opening their Files, and the Officers are to Passage with them, taking care to keep their Distances equally divided between them; and when the Left of each Squadron comes to the Ground where the Right stood, the following Word of Command is to be given.

CVI. Halt.

They are then to fland.

CVII. Squadrons, move to the Left, March.

The Squadrons are to Passage to the Lest, without opening their Files, until ther come to their former Ground, and then the Major proceeds to the next Word of Command.

CVIII. Halt.

al

n

N

a

n

ti

CVIII. Halt:

They all stand.

XX.

eft,

eft,

and

beel

,

to

ers

n'd

n; he

nn,

he n-

n

t.

CIX. Squadrons, to the Right wheel, March.

As the wheeling in Squadron is more difficult (particularly when the Ranks are open'd to Order) than by Division, the Men must observe with great Exactness the Directions that are given in the 13th Article of Rules and Observations.

The Beauty of wheeling confifts in keeping the Ranks even, neither to close nor open the Distances between 'em, and the Men to keep opposite to their File-Leaders. For this end the Front Rank must move at an easy Trot, that the Center and Rear Ranks may not gallop, the Circumserence they make being larger than that of the Front. The Officers are to wheel with the Squadrons.

This is a Quarter of the Circle.

CX. To the Right wheel, March. CXI. To the Right wheel, March. CXII. To the Right wheel, March.

These three Movements bring them to their former Ground.

CXIII. Wheel to the Right-about, March. CXIV. Wheel to the Right-about, March.

Each of these is half the Circle.

CXV. Squadrons, to the Left wheel, March. CXVI. To the Left wheel, March. CXVII. To the Left wheel, March. CXVIII. To the Left wheel, March. March.

Each is a Quarter of the Circle.

CXIX. Wheel to the Left-about, March. CXX. Wheel to the Left-about, March.

Each is half the Circle.

Bb

CXXI.

C

T

1

CXXI. Squadrons, to the Right wheel the Circle entire, March.

The Squadrons are to wheel to the Right quite round, 'till they come to their proper Front.

CXXII. Squadrons, to the Left wheel the Circle entire, March.

They are to wheel to the Left quite round, 'till they come to their former Ground.

CXXIII. Center and Rear Ranks, rein back to Open Order, March.

As in Explan. 8. of the Evolutions.

CXXIV. Join your Right Hands to your Swords.

As in Explan. 10. of the Manual on Horfeback.

CXXV. Draw your Swords.

As in Explan. 11. of the Manual on Horfeback.

The End of the Evolutions.

ARTICLE II.

The Words of Command for Dismounting, Linking the Horses, Forming into Battalion, and Exercising on Foot; as also Reducing them into their several Squadrons, returning to, and unlinking their Horses, mounting, and returning their Carbines, with an Explanation of those things that have not yet been treated of, or appear'd in Print.

When the Regiment is to dismount and exercise on Foot, you are to proceed in the following Manner, immediately after the 35th Word of Command in the Manual on Horseback.

I. Files to the Right double, March.

This is to be perform'd as in Explanation 31 of the Evolutions on Horseback.

II. Make ready your Links.

As there are several Sorts of Links, there cannot be one Method prescrib'd for the whole; but as most Regiments link with Collars, I will proceed on that way, and give Directions accordingly.

The Collar being fasten'd by a running Knot to a Ring in the Saddle, a little above the Right Holster, the Men are to undo the Knot with the Right Hand, taking the Rein of the Collar out of the Ring, and laying it cross the Horse's Neck.

III. Handle your Carbines.

This is done as in Explanation 13 of the Manual Exercise on Horseback.

IV. Advance your Carbines.

As in Explanation 14 of the Manual on Horseback.

V. Poize your Carbines.

This is perform'd as in the Foot Exercise; only with this Difference, that you bring it with the Right Hand at once to the Poize from the afore-mentioned Position.

VI. Hang your Carbines over your Left Shoulders. 2 Motions.

First, place the Carbine on the Left Shoulder, holding it between the Guard and Butt-End with the Right Hand, the Batrel upward, and the Butt higher than the Muzzle. Second, quit your Carbine, and bring your Right-Hand down to its proper Place.

VII. Quit your Right Stirrups. 3 Motions.

First, take your Right Foot out of the Stirrup, at the same time thrusting forward your Bridle-Hand, and keeping the Reins sast. 2, Take a Lock of the Horse's Mane with the Right Hand, and place it in the Lest, over the Bridle, and grasp it sast with the Lest Hand. 3, Take hold with the Right Hand of the Right Burr of the Saddle, placing your Fingers on the Inside and your Thumb on the Out. The Officers are to do the same.

VIII. Dismount. 3 Motions.

As this is part of what the Men are taught in Riding, it will not be necessary to mention all the Particulars; only as it is to be done at three Motions, the Men must perform each of them distinctly. First, by raising themselves with the Right Hand above the Saddle, and bringing the Right Leg over to the Near, or Lest Side of the Horse, with an upright Body, and looking sull to the Right. 2, They come to the Ground with the Right Foot, facing sull to the Rear, and then quit the Stirrup with the Lest, bringing it down to the Ground, and placing it even with the other. 3, They are to quit the Bridle and Mane with the Lest Hand, turning at the same time to the Lest-about on the Right Heel, and taking hold of the Lest Cheek of the Bridle with the Right Hand.

The Officers are to do the same, and their Servants are to take their Horses from the Front of the Squadrons.

IX. Files that doubled, move into your Places. March.

This is done as in Explanation 32 of the Evolutions, by the Men leading their Horses into their former Places.

X. Link your Horses to the Right.

The Men face to the Right-about on the Left Heel, and give the Reins of their Collars to their Right-hand Men, who are to fasten them to the Left Cheek of their Horses Bridles, and remain facing to the Rear 'till the following Word of Command.

Note, That three Men of each Rank, which are commonly those of the Flanks and Center, are to remain with the Horses, to take care of them during the Time the rest are exercising; as also one Quarter-Master of a Squadron. And though those Men remain'd formerly on Horseback, yet it is evident they are more useful on Foot; but this may be done either way, as the Commanding Officer shall think sit. One Trumpet of a Squadron must remain on Horseback, to hold the Horses of the other two Trumpets.

XI. Face to the Left-about.

All the Men, except those that are appointed to remain with the Horses, face to the Lest-about upon the Right Heel; and the Officers at the same time, unless they have Fuzees, are to draw their Swords and rest them on their Lest Arms, dividing themselves equally on the Front of their Squadrons, in the same manner as they did on Horse-back, the Cornets carrying the Standards.

Note, The Cornets are to carry the Standards in the fame manner as the Enfigns of Foot do the Colours, by advancing them in marching by the General, or other Forms and Ceremonies, faluting as they do, and planting them on their Right, during the Exercise, &c.

XII. March.

The Officers and Men (the Cornets advancing the Standards) march strait forward, and when they have march'd B b 3 four

CI

X

wa

Ra

four Paces, the following Word of Command is to be given.

Note, That in all Marching to the Front, the Men begin

with their Left Feet.

350

XIII. Halt.

They are to stand, and immediately straiten their Ranks.

XIV. Shoulder your Carbines. 2 Motions.

First, seize the Carbine on the upper Part of the Butt with the Lest Hand. 2. Bring it to your Shoulder, as is explain'd in the Foot-Exercise.

XV. Unspring your Carbines. 1 Motion.

Take hold of the Swivel with your Right Hand, placing your Thumb on the Spring, and pressing it down at the same time, take it out of the Ring, and keep your Elbow square.

XVI. Return your Swivels. 1 Motion.

Bring down the Swivel briskly with the Right Hand to the Right Side, and quit it.

XVII. Squadrons, face to the Right.

The Officers and Men face to the Right on the Lest Heel.

XVIII. March.

They all begin their March at the same Time with the Left Feet, moving very flow; and when the Left of each Squadron is two Paces beyond the Right of their Horses, the following Word of Command is to be given.

XIX. Halt.

They all face to the Left on the Left Heel, and immediately straiten their Ranks.

XX. Center

XX. Center and Rear-Ranks, close forward to your proper Distance, March.

The Center and Rear-Ranks of each Squadron march forward, 'till they come within four Paces of each other, and then halt. After this the Files are to be compleated, and the Ranks dress'd. Then the Major proceeds.

Squadrons have a care to March forward.

At this the Cornets advance the Standards.

XXI. March.

The three Squadrons march strait forward, keeping in a Line, taking care not to open or close their Ranks and Files and covering their File-Leaders; and when they are advanc'd to a proper Distance from the Horses, the following Word of Command is to be given.

XXII. Halt.

At this they all fland, and immediately flraiten their Ranks and Files. The Cornets plant their Standards on their Right, as the Enfigns do the Colours.

XXIII. To the Left, open your Files.

All Face to the Left, on the Right Heel, and the Cornets advance the Standards.

XXIV. March.

The Left-hand File of each Squadron begins at the same time with the Right Feet, and marches very flow. The rest of the Files are to move as soon as the Files before them are at a proper Distance; and when the whole is open'd, and the three Squadrons join'd in Battalion, the next Word of Command is to be given.

The Particular Directions for this will be feen more at

large in the Foot-Exercise.

B b 4

XXV. Halt.

Ch

cife

wit

fix Lie

fice

pet wh

th

R

XXV. Halt.

They are to face to the Right on the Right Heel. The Men of the Front-Rank are immediately to divide their Ground equally between them; and those of the Center and Rear are to govern themselves by the Front, and cover their File-Leaders, and the whole to straiten their Ranks, which the Adjutant and Quarter-Masters are to see perform'd, and then return to their Posts.

XXVI. Officers, take your Posts on the Front of the Battalion.

Until the Word of Command is given, the Officers are to remain with their respective Squadrons; but then they are to take their Posts on the Head of the Battalion by Seniority of Commission, as they do in the Foot, the eldest on the Right, the next on the Lest, and so on 'till the Cornets with the Standards come in the Center.

They are then to divide the Ground equally between them.

and to dress in one Rank.

The Quarter-Masters are to take their Posts in the Rear,

in the same Manner.

The Trumpets are to be divided on the Right, Left, and Center, as the Drummers are in the Foot, but the Kettle-Drummer remains on Horseback with the Squadrons.

XXVII. Officers, take your Posts of Exercise in the Rear of the Battalion.

The Officers face to the Right-about on the Right Heel, and the Cornets advance the Standards. Half the Quarter-Masters on the Right, face to the Right on the Right Heel, and the other half face to the Left on the Left Heel, and all remain in this Position 'till the next Word of Command.

Note, The Colonel, or Officer commanding the Regiment in his Absence, is not to face with the Officers, but remain facing to the Front; as also the Trumpets in the Center;

but those on the Flanks face with the Officers.

XXVIII. March.

The Colonel, or Commanding Officer, marches firait forward, and places himself by the General during the Exercise;

cife; the other Officers march through the Ranks, beginning with the Right Feet, and keeping in a Line, 'till they get fix Paces beyond the Rear-Rank, and then ftand; but the Lieutenant-Colonel is to march two Paces beyond the Officers.

The Quarter-Masters are to march pretty quick, and place themselves on the Right and Lest of each Rank. The Trumpets on the Right and Lest are to march to the Rear, and when they come two Paces beyond the Rear-Rank, they are to stand. Those in the Center are to march strait forward, and place themselves in the Rear of the Major, or Officer that exercises the Regiment.

XXIX. Halt.

The Lieutenant-Colonel, and the rest of the Officers in the Rear, as also the Trumpets of the Right and Lest, face to the Right-about on the Right-Heel, and remain in that Position during the Exercise, the Cornets planting the Standards on the Right.

XXX. Have a Care. 2 Motions.

First, Bring your Right Hand briskly to your Hat, turning the Palm outward 2, Bring it down on the Cartridge Box or Pouch with Life.

Note, The Foot-Exercise being already explain'd, it will be unnecessary to insert it here; I therefore refer you to the Account of it, both for the Manner of performing each Motion, and the proper Time between them.

XXXI. Join your Right Hands to your Carbines. 1 Motion.

XXXII. Poize your Carbines. 1 Motion.

XXXIII. Join your Left Hands to your Carbines. I Motion.

XXXIV. Cock your Carbines. 3 Motions.

XXXV. Present. 1 Motion.

XXXVI. Fire. 1 Motion.

XXXVII. Recover your Carbines. 1 Motion.

XXXVIII. Half-cock your Carbines. 3 Motions.

XXXIX. Handle your Primers. 3 Motions.

XL. Prime. 3 Motions.

XLI. Shut your Pans. 3 Motions.

XLII. Cast about to charge. 2 Motions.

XLIII. Handle your Cartridges. 3 Motions.

XLIV. Open your Cartridges. 2 Motions.

XLV. Charge with Cartridge. 2 Motions.

XLVI. Draw your Rammers. 4 Motions.

XLVII. Shorten your Rammers. 3 Motions.

XLVIII. Put them in the Barrels. 6 Motions.

XLIX. Ram down your Charge. 2 Motions.

L. Withdraw your Rammers. 3 Motions.

LI. Shorten your Rammers. 3 Motions.

LII. Return your Rammers. 6 Motions.

J.III. Your Right Hands under the Locks. 5 Motions.

LIV. Poize your Carbines. 1 Motion.

LV. Shoulder your Carbines. 3 Motions.

LVI. Rest your Carbines. 3 Motions.

LVII. Order your Carbines. 3 Motions.

LVIII. Lay down your Carbines. 4 Motions.

LIX. Take up your Carbines. 4 Motions.

LX. Rest your Carbines. 3 Motions.

LXI. Club your Carbines. 4 Motions.

LXII. Rest your Carbines. 4 Motions.

LXIII. Shoulder your Carbines. 4 Motions.

Extraordinary Words of Command.

LXIV. Rest your Carbines. 3 Motions.

LXV. Reverse your Carbines. 4 Motions.

LXVI. Rest your Carbines. 4 Motions.

LXVII. Rest your Carbines on your Left Arms. 2 Motions,

LXVIII. Recover your Carbines. 2 Motions.

LXIX. Rest on your Carbines. 4 Motions.

LXX. Poize your Carbines. 3 Motions.

LXXI. Secure your Carbines. 2 Motions.

LXXII. Poize your Carbines. 2 Motions.

LXXIII. Shoulder your Carbines. 3 Motions.

LXXIV. Officers, take your Posts in the Front.

At this the Cornets advance the Standards, and the Quarter-Masters on the Flanks face to the Right and Lest-about. Those on the Right to the Right-about, and those on the Lest to the Lest about, and all wait for the following Word of Command.

LXXV. March.

The Commission-Officers march strait forward and place themselves on the Front of the Battalion as before; and the Ouarter-Masters Post themselves in the Rear.

The Trumpets remain in the Rear and Front, 'till the Of-

ficers are order'd to their feveral Squadrons.

LXXVI. To the Front present your Arms. 3 Motions.

LXXVII. Face to the Right. 3 Motions.

This is perform'd at three Motions as in the Foot, viz. Recover the Arms, Face a Quarter of the Circle to the Right, and then come to the Rest. The Commission-Officers, Quarter-Masters, and Trumpets in the Rear, face with the Battalion, and are to perform it at the second Motion, which is when the Men Face.

LXXVIII. Face to the Right. 3 Motions.

LXXIX. Face to the Right. 3 Motions.

LXXX. Face to the Right. 3 Motions.

LXXXI. Face to the Right-about. 3 Motions.

LXXXII. To the Left-about as you were. 3 Motions.

LXXXIII. Face to the Left. 3 Motions.

LXXXIV. Face to the Left. 3 Motions.

LXXXV. Face to the Left. 3 Motions.

LXXXVI. Face

of

LXXXVI. Face to the Left. 3 Motions.

LXXXVII. Face to the Left-about. 3 Motions.

LXXXVIII. To the Right-about as you were. 3 Motions,

LXXXIX. Shoulder your Carbines. 4 Motions.

XC. Officers to your several Squadrons.

The Commission-Officers and Quarter-Masters face to the Right and Lest, as the Squadrons they belong to are posted, and remain so 'till the following Word of Command. The Cornets are to advance the Standards.

XCI. March.

The Commission-Officers and Quarter-Masters march to their several Squadrons, and post themselves on the Front and

Rear, as before by Seniority.

The Trumpets also march to their respective Squadrons; the Trumpets of the Right Squadron post themselves on the Right of it in a Line with the Front-Rank; those of the Lest Squadron on the Lest; and those of the Center Squadron are to post themselves in the Rear of the Cornet with the Standard.

XCII. To the Right close your Files.

All face to the Right on the Left Heel.

XCIII. March.

They all begin at the same time with the Left Feet, Marching very slow, and when the Right-hand File of each Squadron comes to the Ground they stood on before they open'd, they are to stand, and the rest are to march on and close to them; by which each Squadron will be opposite to the Interval on the Right of their Horses.

XCIV. Halt.

They all face to the Left on the Left Heel, and the Trumpets of the Center Squadron post themselves on the Right of it.

XCV. Squadrons, face to the Right-about.

They all face to the Right-about on the Left Heel.

XCVI. March.

They all begin with the Left Feet, and march very flow, 'till each Rank comes within four Paces of the Right of their Horses, and then stand facing to the Rear.

XCVII. Squadrons, face to the Right.

They all face to the Right on the Right Heel.

XCVIII. March.

They all begin at the same time with the Right Feet, and march in a strait Line, 'till every Man comes opposite to his own Horse, and then stand, facing to the Lest of the Squadrons.

XCIX. Squadrons face to the Right.

They face to the Right on the Right Heel.

C. Handle your Swivels. 2 Motions.

This is done as in Explan. 7. of the Manual on Horse-back, only with this Difference, that this is to be perform'd with the Right Hand as that is with the Lest, and the Right Elbow kept Square.

CI. Spring your Carbines. 2 Motions.

This is done as is explain'd by the first and third Motions of Explan. 8. of the Manual on Horseback.

CII. Face

Ch

7

Lef

thei

and

Rea

Ho

of

the

CII. Face to the Right-about.

The Officers and Men face to the Right-about on the Lest Heel.

CIII. Quit your Carbines. 2 Motions.

First, thrust your Carbine back with the Left Hand, 'till the Guard is behind the Shoulder, and raise the Butt higher than the Muzzle. 2, Quit your Carbine with your Lest Hand, letting it hang over the Lest Shoulder by the Swivel, and bring your Hand to its proper Place.

At this Word of Command the Officers return their Swords, and their Servants bring their Horses to the Head of the Squa-

drons.

CIV. March to your Horses.

The Men march to their Horses, placing themselves on the Near or Lest Side, and facing full to the Rear.

CV. Unlink your Horses.

The Men unfasten their Collars, and throw them over the Right Side of the Horse's Neck, and take hold of the Lest Cheek of their Horse's Bridle with the Lest Hand, still facing to the Rear.

CVI. Files to the Right double, March.

Every even File reins back, as in Explan. 31. of the Evolutions.

CVII. Face to the Left-about.

They all face to the Lest-about on the Right Heel, taking hold of the Lest Cheek of the Bridle with the Right Hand, and the Officers to place themselves on the near Side of their Horses.

The Colonel, or Commanding Officer, at this quits the General and returns to the Regiment, in order to Mount when they do.

CVIII. Shorten

CVIII. Shorten your Bridles.

The Officers and Men face to the Right-about on the Left Heel, taking hold of the Reins of their Bridles with their Left Hands, and shortning them to a proper Length, and with the Right Hand they take part of the Horse's Mane and place it in the Left upon the Bridle, facing full to the Rear.

CIX. Your Left Feet in the Stirrups. 2 Motions.

First take hold of the Stirrup with the Right Hand, and place the Lest Foot in it. 2, Come to the Lest Side of the Horse with a Hop, and take hold of the Cantle or hind Part of the Saddle with the Right Hand, the Lest Knee touching the Horse's Side, and looking full to the Right of the Squadron.

The Officers are to do the fame.

CX. Mount. 2 Mctions.

As this is part of Riding I will not explain it at large, only first, the Men raise themselves upright in the Stirrups. 2, They bring the Right Leg over the Horse, placing themselves in the Saddle, and putting the Foot in the Stirrup. Then dress their Ranks and Files.

CXI. Shoulder your Carbines.

As is explain'd in Explan. 14.

CXII. Unspring your Carbines.

As in Explan. 15.

CXIII. Return your Swivels.

As in Explan. 16.

CXIV. Poize your Carbines.

This is done as in the Foot Exercise, by joining your Right Hand to your Carbine, and poizing it CXV. Return

Char

the O lion to

and v of the

the R expla

turne are to

proce

Rul

to Lei the

> Co Bu

jor

the

da

W

fo

d

C

As clos'd

CXV. Return your Carbines.

As in Explan. 40, of the Manual on Horse.

CXVI. Return your Links.

They are to take the Reins of the Collars and fasten them by a running Knot to the Ring above the right Holfter.

CXVII. Files that doubled, move into your Places. March.

This is done as in Explan. 32. of the Evolutions.

The Cornets with the Standards are to rein back into the Front-Rank, and the Kettle-Drummer and Trumpets to post themselves as before.

The End of the Exercise.

ARTICLE V.

As this Exercise is calculated for the Dismounting and Forming into Battalion a Regiment confifting of three Squadrons, it will be proper to give fome Directions, how a Regiment of two Squadrons is to perform it.

Before you proceed to the Necessary Motions for Dismounting, the two Squadrons are to be open'd to a greater Distance than Usual, that the Interval between them may be sufficient to contain the Men of the two Squadrons when Difmounted,

at Close Order.

When the Men are dismounted, the Carbines shoulder'd, and the Swivels return'd, they are to face to the Right and Left Inward, and then march and join in the Center of the Interval, and to face to their proper Front. After which, the Center and Rear-Ranks are to be clos'd forward to their proper Distance, the Files compleated, and the Officers to take their Pofts by Seniority at the Head of the Battalion. This being done, the Regiment is to march forward, to a proper Diffance from the Horses, and Halt. Then the Files to be open'd from the Center, the Officers to take their Posts in the Rear, and proceed to the Foot-Exercise.

As

As foon as the Foot Exercise is over, the Files are to be clos'd to the Center, and then faced to their proper Front; the Officers order'd to their several Squadrons, and the Battalion to face to the Right-about and march to the Interval; and when each Rank comes within sour Paces of the Heads of their Horses, they are to stand; then they are to sace to the Right and Lest outward and march to their Horses, as is explain'd in the foregoing Exercise.

When the Men are mounted, the Carbines and Links returned, and the Files moved into their Places, the Squadrons are to close the Interval to its proper Distance, and then to

proceed to the Evolutions.

ARTICLE VI.

Rules for the Reception of a General Officer, who comes to Review the Regiment, or see the Exercise perform'd.

When the General comes in View, the Field Officers are to post themselves on the Front of their Squadrons, a Horse Length before the Rank of Officers, in a direct Line with the Standards. The Colonel on the Right, the Lieutenant-Colonel on the Lest Squadron, and the Major on the Center: But if the Regiment consists only of two Squadrons, the Major is to post himself a little to the Lest of the Colonel on the First Squadron, and about Half a Horse Length surther back. The Cornets are at the same time to take the Standards and to fall into the Center of the Front Rank and dress with the Men, unless they are to Salute, and then they are to be Half a Horse Length before them, for the easier performing it.

As foon as the General comes near the Right Flank of the First Squadron, the Colonel is to order the Swords to be drawn, at which time the Trumpets are to found a March, and as the General passes along the Front, the Officers are to salute him with their Swords. If he is to be saluted with the Standard, the Cornet is to do it, when the Colonel or Commanding Officer of the Squadron salutes, and to keep

it down 'till he is past him.

When he approaches the Center Squadron, it is to do the fame as the First, and so with the Lest Squadron, they being not to draw their Swords or sound a March 'till he comes near them, each Squadron being then a distinct Body.

C c When

When the General has review'd them Standing, it is usual, if Time permits, to see the Exercise perform'd; after which to review them Marching, either by entire Squadrons, single Troops by Fours, or by Ranking off singly, as he shall be

pleas'd to order.

If by entire Squadron (as foon as the General has taken his Place) the Center and Rear Ranks are to move up to Order, and the Kettle-Drummer and Trumpets are to place themselves in the Front of the Colonel, or Officer commanding the Squadron, and to march in that Order by the General, leaving but two or three Paces between the Right Flank of the Squadron and him. When the Commanding Officer comes within a proper Distance of the General, he is to salute him; and when the Rank of Officers comes upon the same Ground they are to salute together; as is also the Cornet with the Standard (if order'd to salute) when he comes to the same Place. When the Squadrons have passed the General, they are to wheel and march back and draw up on their former Ground.

If by fingle Troops, the Ranks are to close to Order, the Officers and Trumpets order'd to their Troops, and the Standards to the Center of the Front Rank of the eldest Troop in each Squadron. When this is done, they are to march in Squadron, 'till they come within twenty or thirty Paces of the General, and then the Troops on the Left and Center halt, but the Troop on the Right marches on, and the other Troops (as foon as it is pass'd them) passage to the Right, 'till they come to the same Ground, and then march forward, keeping directly in the Rear of one another. In this Position the Captain is to be in the Center, the Lieutenant on his Right and the Cornet on his Left; but the Captain Halfa Horse Length before them. In those Troops that have the Standards, the Cornets are to remain in the Front Rank of Men and march and dress with them, unless they are to falute, and then they are to be Half a Horse Length advanc'd before them, for the Conveniency of performing it. In this Case the Lieutenant is to be on the Left of the Captain, but not fo far advanc'd. The Trumpets are to march before the Captains, and the Quarter-Masters in the Rear of the Troops.

If they are to march thus by the General, the Officers are to falute together; but as it is more usual when they are in fingle Troops, to rank off fingly, I will set down the Di-

rections accordingly.

The

Fi

ha

lo

ca

'ti

th

th

M

th

an

m

th

'ti

T

th L

F

The Squadrons being reduc'd into Troops, as foon as the First Troop comes within ten Paces of the General, it is to halt, but the Trumpets keep moving on, and the Captain follows, then the Lieutenant and next the Cornet (unless he carries the Standard, and then he remains in the Front Rank, 'till the Men on his Right are march'd off before him) then the Right-hand Man of the Front Rank follows him, and the rest of that Rank passages to the Right, and when the Men come upon the Ground where the Right-hand Man stood. they are to move out and march directly in the Rear of one another. When the Front Rank is march'd off, the Center moves up into their Ground and marches off fingly as the First did, and the Rear Rank moves up at the same time to the Ground on which the Center Rank stood, and then halt, 'till that Rank is march'd off, and then it moves up and Ranks off fingly, as the others.

The other Troops are to pass by the General in the same Manner, and not rank off 'till they come upon the same

Ground.

When the Men have got about twenty Paces beyond the General, they are to Rank up, and the Troop is to march about twenty Paces more, when it is to halt, 'till the other Troops join; and when the Squadron is again form'd, it is to march and draw up on the former Ground.

The other Squadrons are to follow the same Directions.

When the Squadrons are to march by Fours, the Ranks are to be clos'd to Order, and the Officers order'd to the Front of the first four Men on the Right, the Captains placing themfelves by Seniority in one Rank, the Lieutenants in another in the Rear of the Captains, and the Cornets in the Rear of the Lieutenants, (except the Cornet that carries the Standard, who remains in the Front Rank of Men, and is to march in the Center of the Rank of Fours he is then plac'd in) and the Quarter-Masters to march in the Rear of their respective Squadrons. The Commanding Officer of each Squadron is to march before the Captains, and the Kettle-Drummer and Trumpets before him. All things being thus dispos'd, the Commanding Officer is to give the Word, March, at which the Officers and first four Men on the Right of the Front Rank are to march strait forward, and the rest of the Front Rank are to wheel to the Right by Fours, and March 'till they come to the Ground where the first Rank of Fours flood, and then wheel to the Left, taking care to keep their proper Distance and to cover the Rank before them.

As

As foon as the last four Men of the Front Rank are come to the Ground where the Right stood. the Center Rank is to move up to the Ground of the Front Rank, and the Rear Rank up to the Ground of the Center, and then halt 'till the Center Rank is march'd off, which they are to do in the same Manner as the Front Rank did. The same Rule is to be observed by the Rear Rank as soon as the Center is march'd off.

Each Rank of Officers is to falute as they come on the

Ground, where the Commanding-Officer faluted.

When they are got to a proper Distance beyond the General they should then form into Squadron, either by ranking up, or each Rank forming at once a Rank entire to the Lest.

Ranking up, is when the Second Rank of Fours draws up on the Left of the First, the Third on the Left of the Second, and so on through those of the Front Rank. The First Rank of Fours of the Center Rank draws up in the Rear of the Right of the Front Rank, leaving a proper Interval between them, and the rest of that Rank draws up on their Left, as those of the Front Rank did. The Rear Rank observes the same Rules in drawing up in the Rear of the Center, as the Center did in regard to the Front Rank. As they are drawing up, the Officers are to divide themselves on the Front of the Squadron.

If you would form each Rank into a Rank entire at once, you must order all the Ranks of Fours of the Front Rank to wheel at once to the Lest, which sorms them into a Rank entire, and consequently forms the Front of the Squadron. As soon as that is done, the Officers are immediately to divide themselves on the Front, and to march forward; that the Center Rank may march in the Rear of the Front and form a Rank entire, which it is to do when the first Four come near the Right of the Front Rank, without any Word of Command, and then march sorward that the Rear Rank may do the same. After this the Squadrons are to draw up on their former Ground with their Ranks at Open Order, and to keep their Swords drawn 'till the General quits the Field.



